

4/2  
1170



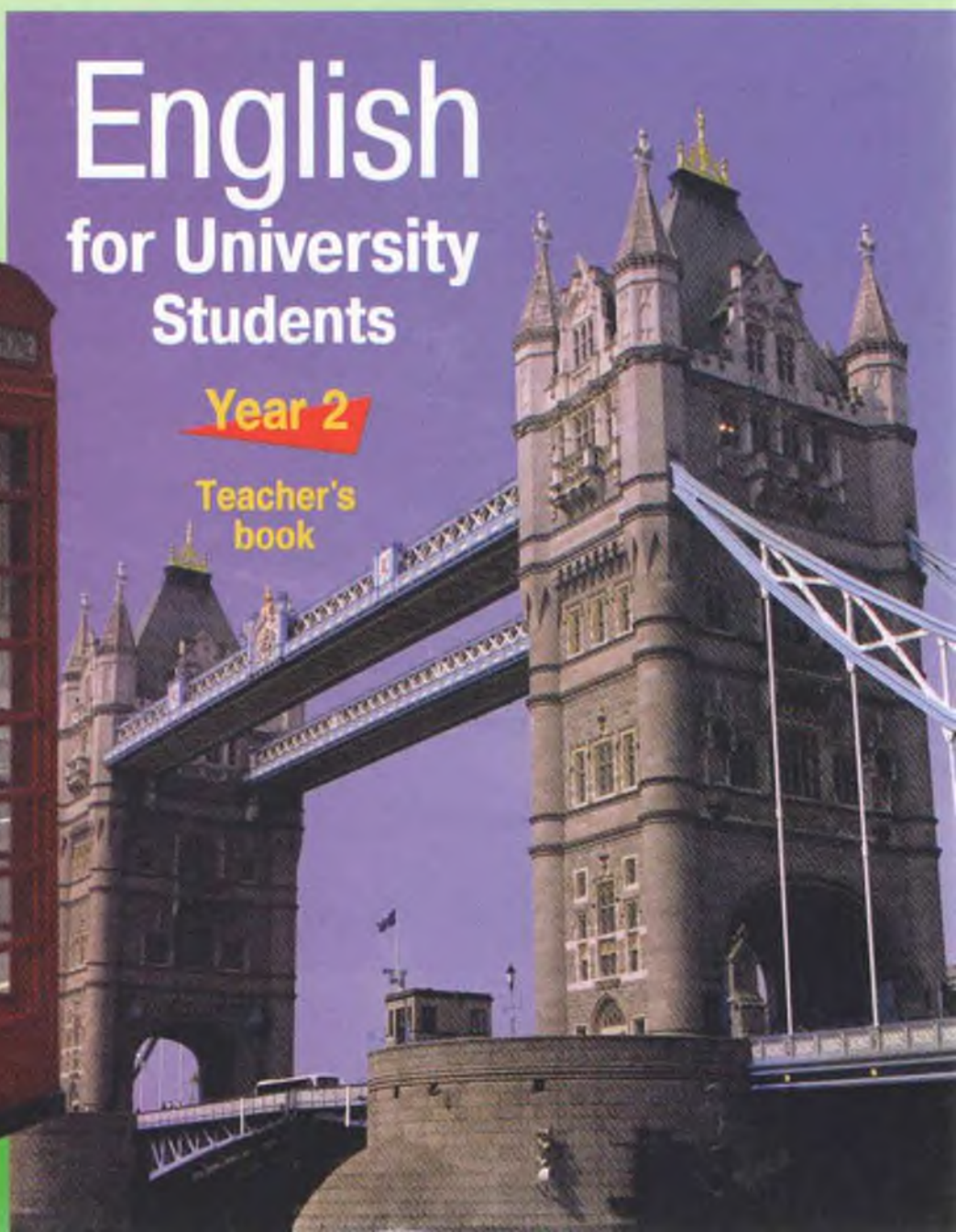
# A WAY TO SUCCESS

Базовий підручник  
для студентів  
вищих навчальних закладів

## English for University Students

Year 2

Teacher's  
book



81.432.1-923

УДК 811.111  
ББК 81.2 Англ  
Т 92

Рецензенти:

*Гончар О. В.*, завідувач кафедри іноземних мов  
Харківської державної академії дизайну і мистецтв,  
доктор педагогічних наук, професор

*Борова Т. А.*, завідувач кафедри іноземних мов  
Харківського національного економічного університету,  
доктор педагогічних наук, професор

Художник-оформлювач

*Г. В. Кісель*

534704

**A Way to Success: English for University Students. Year 2  
(Teacher's Book)** / Н. В. Тучина, І. В. Жарковська, Н. О. Зайцева  
та ін.; худож.-оформлювач Г. В. Кісель. — Харків: Фоліо,  
2014. — 320 с.; іл.

ISBN 978-966-03-7005-0.

Підручник складається з 14 уроків (units), які за тематико-ситуативним змістом і мовним матеріалом відповідають програмі другого курсу мовного ВНЗ, віковим особливостям студентів і сферам їх пізнавальних інтересів. За рахунок особистісно зорієнтованих вправ і завдань, викладу змісту на основі концентричності і циклічності планування, опори на багатий ілюстративний матеріал створюється сприятливе в афективному відношенні мовне довкілля. Рівень складності звукових і друкованих матеріалів і завдань до них відповідає рівню B2 за шкалою Рекомендацій Ради Європи і забезпечує реалізацію принципу наступності порівняно з підручником "A Way to Success" для студентів I курсу. Наприкінці підручника подано ключі до вправ і завдань.

Київський національний  
лінгвістичний університет  
Ідентифікаційний код 02125289  
**БІБЛІОТЕКА**

УДК 811.111  
ББК 81.2 Англ

© Н. В. Тучина, І. В. Жарковська,  
Н. О. Зайцева, І. М. Каминін,  
М. В. Колеснік, Л. С. Красовицька,  
Г. Ф. Кривчикова, Т. К. Меркулова, 2014  
© Г. В. Кісель, художнє оформлення,  
2014

Навчальне видання

**ТУЧИНА**  
Наталія Василівна  
**ЖАРКОВСЬКА**  
Інна Валеріївна  
**ЗАЙЦЕВА**  
Ніна Олександрівна  
**КАМИНІН**  
Ігор Миколайович  
**КОЛЕСНІК**  
Марина Володимирівна  
**КРАСОВИЦЬКА**  
Лада Євгенівна  
**КРІВЧИКОВА**  
Галина Федорівна  
**МЕРКУЛОВА**  
Тетяна Костянтинівна

**A WAY TO SUCCESS**  
English for University Students.  
Year 2  
(Teacher's Book)

Головний редактор *К. В. Васильцова*  
Технічний редактор *Г. С. Туран*  
Художній редактор і комп'ютерна верстка  
*В. А. Мурашкін*  
Коректор *Л. В. Дмитрієва*

Підписано до друку 04.08.14.  
Формат 84×108/16.  
Умов. друк. арк. 33,60.  
Обл.-вил. арк. 39,98.  
Тираж 300 прим.  
Замовлення № 10091

ТОВ «Видвицтво Фоліо»  
Свідцтво про внесення суб'єкта видавничої справи  
до Державного реєстру видавців, виготовників  
і розповсюджувачів видавничої продукції  
ДК № 3194 від 22.05.2008

61057, Харків, вул. Ринкова, 21А  
Електронна адреса: [www.folio.com.ua](http://www.folio.com.ua)  
E-mail: [realization@folio.com.ua](mailto:realization@folio.com.ua)  
Інтернет-магазин: [www.bookpost.com.ua](http://www.bookpost.com.ua)

Надруковано в друкарні ТОВ «Діса плюс».  
61010, Харків, Ващенківський п'їзд, буд. 16.  
Тел. (057) 768-03-15, e-mail [disa\\_plus@mail.ru](mailto:disa_plus@mail.ru)  
Свідцтво суб'єкта видавничої справи  
серія ДК № 4047 від 15.04.2011

ISBN 978-966-03-7005-0

# Contents

4.....	<b>Unit 1</b> EVERY MAN TO HIS TRADE
23.....	<b>Unit 2</b> THIS AMAZING PLACE WE LIVE IN
35.....	<b>Unit 3</b> A CITY IS MORE THAN A PLACE IN SPACE
47.....	<b>Unit 4</b> GEOGRAPHY BEING DESTINY
62.....	<b>Unit 5</b> GOD MADE THE COUNTRY AND MAN MADE THE TOWN
78.....	<b>Unit 6</b> CROSSING BORDERS
97.....	<b>Unit 7</b> OUT AND ABOUT
120.....	<b>Unit 8</b> ON THE MOVE
140.....	<b>Unit 9</b> DESTINATION: HOLIDAY
159.....	<b>Unit 10</b> HEALTH IS THE GREATEST WEALTH
174.....	<b>Unit 11</b> MEDICINES CURE DISEASES, DOCTORS CURE PATIENTS
196.....	<b>Unit 12</b> ALL SPORTS FOR ALL PEOPLE
211.....	<b>Unit 13</b> SWIFTER, HIGHER, STRONGER
232.....	<b>Unit 14</b> ALL THE WORLD'S A STAGE
257.....	<b>Tapescripts and answer key section</b>



# Unit 1

## EVERY MAN TO HIS TRADE

### I. LEAD-IN

1 Read the quotation on the right and answer the questions below.

A) People work because they need money to live on. What are other reasons that make people work?

B) There is a saying, "Some work to live, some others live to work." Which is true in reference to your parents, relatives, friends?

There are three types of work:

First, there's the **job** — where the goal is simply to earn a living and support your family.

Then there's the **career** — where you trace your progress through various appointments and achievements.

Finally, there's the **calling** — the ideal blending of activity and character that makes work inseparable from life.

*Robert Bella*

### II. VOCABULARY

#### JOBS AND PROFESSIONS

2 Match the professions on the left with the correct definitions on the right.

- 1) an ambassador
- 2) a bookmaker
- 3) a butcher
- 4) a coach
- 5) an estate agent
- 6) an interpreter
- 7) a judge
- 8) a notary
- 9) a priest
- 10) a plumber
- 11) a porter



- a) a person whose job is carrying people's luggage and loads at railway stations, airports, hotels, markets etc
- b) a public officer with authority to decide cases in a law court
- c) a diplomat sent from one country to another either as a permanent representative or on a special mission
- d) a person appointed to perform religious duties and ceremonies in the Christian Church
- e) a person whose job is taking bets on horse races
- f) a person whose job is cutting up and selling meat
- g) a person who gives a simultaneous translation of words spoken in another language
- h) a person whose job is to fit and repair water pipes, water-tanks, cisterns etc in a building
- i) a person who trains sportsmen
- j) a person who buys and sells houses for others
- k) a person with official authority to witness the signing of legal documents and perform some other legal functions

3 Match each occupation on the left with the most appropriate tools or pieces of equipment on the right.

- |                   |                                                |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| 1) a dairymaid    | a) needles, threads, sewing-machines           |
| 2) a tailor       | b) chisel, wax, clay                           |
| 3) an optician    | c) filing cabinet, a computer, paper           |
| 4) a roofer       | d) tank for sterilized milk, a cream separator |
| 5) an electrician | e) tiles, hammer, nails                        |
| 6) a clerk        | f) lenses, spectacles, binoculars              |
| 7) a sculptor     | g) a wall socket, wire                         |
| 8) a conductor    | h) a baton, a music-stand, a score             |

4 Work in pairs. Find out about a person's job or profession. Use the phrases in the box. Follow the example.

A: What do you do for a living?  
 B: I write programmes for the computer.  
 A: So, you're a programmer.

- B: 1) I study the latest developments in mathematics.  
 2) We examine chemical properties of metals.  
 3) Mr White is an expert on stars.  
 4) My friend's involved in the medical treatment of cancer.  
 5) I'm working in the field of nuclear physics.  
 6) They study the mind and how it influences people's behaviour.  
 7) His wife's an expert in the history of French revolution.  
 8) My brother studied drama and went on the stage.  
 9) Mr Burton edits a daily newspaper.  
 10) Mrs Hudson's a member of an orchestra.

5 Decide which is the odd one out and give reasons.

- a) doctor, surgeon, dentist, vet;  
 b) police officer, nurse, teacher, army officer;  
 c) carpenter, plumber, bricklayer, lawyer;  
 d) professor, lecturer, secretary, teacher;  
 e) taxi-driver, pilot, chauffeur, bus conductor;  
 f) journalist, bank-teller, accountant, auditor.

8 What are some common ways of forming nouns denoting jobs and professions? How many ways can you suggest? Give examples from the tasks above and add some more, which are not mentioned. Fill in the table. The first example is given to you.

6 Look through the list of jobs. Divide them into professions, trades and unskilled jobs.

*Note: Traditionally, professions are occupations that involve mainly intellectual work and require a higher education. Trades are occupations that demand a high level of manual skill and an extended period of training.*

Professions	Trades	Unskilled jobs

- |                    |               |                      |
|--------------------|---------------|----------------------|
| • a blacksmith     | • a guard     | • a refuse collector |
| • a bricklayer     | • a miner     | • a receptionist     |
| • a draftsman      | • a lawyer    | • a shepherd         |
| • an engine driver | • a locksmith | • a traffic warden   |
| • a florist        | • a loader    | • a typist           |
| • a forester       | • a miller    | • a web designer     |
| • a goldsmith      | • a midwife   |                      |
|                    | • a broker    |                      |

7 Match the jobs to the categories below:

- |                |                           |
|----------------|---------------------------|
| 1) media       | 5) sciences               |
| 2) tourism     | 6) arts and entertainment |
| 3) counselling | 7) health care            |
| 4) finance     |                           |

- |                    |                   |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| • an accountant    | • a psychoanalyst |
| • an actor         | • a physician     |
| • an auditor       | • a physicist     |
| • an astronomer    | • a playwright    |
| • an archaeologist | • a publisher     |
| • a bank teller    | • a social worker |
| • a DJ             | • a surgeon       |
| • an editor        | • a travel agent  |
| • a journalist     | • a guide         |
| • a newsreader     |                   |

Word-building elements	Examples
Suffix -er	driver

## Unit 1. Every man to his trade

- 9 Today there are almost no jobs that can be done by a man or a woman only. So it has become unpopular to use words which contain parts like “-man,” “male” or “lady,” or suffix -ess. Fill in the table with politically correct words.

OUTDATED USAGE	CURRENT USAGE
1) an air-hostess	_____
2) ambulance men	_____
3) a chairman	_____
4) a cleaning lady	_____
5) a fireman	_____
6) a foreman	_____
7) a male nurse	_____
8) a policeman/ a policewoman	_____
9) a salesman	_____
10) a spokesman	_____

- 10 Read the following descriptions and guess which jobs are described.
- They help people who need legal advice. Sometimes they have to go to court.
  - They work in the fields growing crops and also breed animals such as cows, sheep, pigs, and geese.
  - They treat animals that are sick.
  - These people take your order and serve you in restaurants. If the service is good it is customary to leave a tip for them.
  - These people may ask to look inside your case when you cross the border. They look for drugs or objects which people try to bring into the country illegally.
  - They are usually very attractive people and their job is to appear in photographs advertising new clothes and beauty products.
  - These people design new buildings. They have to draw up clear plans so that the builders know exactly what to do.
  - If you want a new suit or dress specially made to fit you, you need their service.

## III. SPEAKING

- 11 Name at least 3 jobs for each item on the list below using *Useful Language box*. Give reasons to explain your choice.

- are the best paid in your country;
- need a lot of training;
- you find the least pleasant;
- require wearing special clothes;
- demand the fastest actions;
- involve dealing with people's problems;
- you find most boring;
- give an opportunity to travel;
- require the knowledge of a foreign language;
- often give a chance to get tips;
- involve a lot of stress;
- can be a challenge for you;
- require lots of imagination;
- can negatively affect family life;

### USEFUL LANGUAGE

#### INTRODUCING ANOTHER IDEA

- |                              |              |
|------------------------------|--------------|
| • to begin with              | • lastly     |
| • firstly, secondly, thirdly | • moreover   |
| • furthermore                | • then       |
| • in addition                | • then again |
| • besides                    | • after that |
| • in the first place         | • also       |
|                              | • another    |

- 12 Name at least three jobs that would probably be impossible for someone who:
- has very bad hearing;
  - is always seasick/ airsick;
  - is bad at maths;
  - understands nothing about children;
  - is afraid of animals;
  - is afraid of heights;
  - can't stand the sight of blood.

- 13 Say who you would turn to in the following situations using the words from the box.

an astrologist, a dustman/ a refuse collector,  
a receptionist, an optician, an estate agent,  
a florist, an electrician, a hairdresser,  
a publisher, a dentist

*E.g.: If I want to read some old historic documents, I would go to an archivist.*

- 1) You want your horoscope to be made up for you.
- 2) You want to buy a bunch of flowers.
- 3) You think your eyes need testing.
- 4) You have a lot of rubbish you want to get rid of.
- 5) There is a power cut in your house.
- 6) You have decided to sell your house.
- 7) You have written a book and you want the world to see it.
- 8) You are going to check in at a hotel to stay for a few days.
- 9) A filling has come out of your tooth.
- 10) You need to have your hair cut and done.

- 14 Translate into English.

- 1) Робота шкільного вчителя має свої переваги та недоліки, але вона дійсно цікава, якщо тільки ви любите дітей.
- 2) Офіціанти та стюардеси повинні бути уважними та дуже ввічливими, обслуговуючи клієнтів.
- 3) Ведення домашнього господарства — така ж робота, як і будь-яка інша. Ніхто не може сказати напевне, скільки триває робочий день домогосподарки.
- 4) Праця шахтарів дуже важка. Вони працюють глибоко під землею у тяжких умовах. Саме через це вони рано виходять на пенсію.
- 5) Я завжди мріяв стати військовим і служити в армії.
- 6) Цей досвідчений перукар робить чудові зачіски своїм клієнтам. Не дивно, що до нього завжди черга.
- 7) У надзвичайній ситуації люди часто викликають пожежну бригаду і швидку. Пожежники і лікарі швидкої (paramedics) намагаються якнайшвидше врятувати людей.
- 8) Найкращі архітектори світу були запрошені на будівництво цього міста.
- 9) Законів у нашій державі настільки багато, що лише найкваліфікованіші юристи і судді досконало знаються на них.
- 10) Кожна п'єса цього надзвичайно талановитого драматурга відображає сучасне життя.



## IV. VOCABULARY

### BOX A

- to get the sack
- to be hired
- to be a workaholic

- to be laid off
- to be fired
- to be dismissed
- to recruit
- to be made redundant
- to be unemployed

- to be out of work
- to take on
- to work like a dog
- to get promoted
- to be employed
- to climb a career ladder

15 In box A find expressions that are similar in meaning.

16 Paraphrase the sentences using the expressions from boxes A and B.

### BOX B

- to work (in) shifts
- to work first/second shift
- to be on flexitime
- to work flexitime/flexi hours
- to work nine-to-five

- to work regular hours/ long hours
- to work part-time
- to work fulltime
- to work overtime
- to take early retirement
- to retire
- to be on the dole

- 1) My mother starts work at 9 am and finishes at 5 pm.
- 2) They've made him Executive Manager after only six months with this company.
- 3) I lost my job. They had to make cutbacks.
- 4) He is out of work and gets money from the government.
- 5) My father works at a factory. One week he works in the daytime, another week he works at night.
- 6) The trouble is that you are too obsessed with your work.
- 7) He didn't do his job well, he was very often late, and the manager didn't want him to work any longer.
- 8) He stopped working though he is only 54.
- 9) I don't want to work regular hours, I prefer to start and finish work at different times each day, so I can spend more time with my daughters.
- 10) Brian is a student, he has to find means to support himself, and so he has found a job in a cafeteria and works three hours a day there.



17 Fill in the gaps choosing a suitable word from the box below. You can use some words in the plural.

job, occupation, profession, post/position, vacancy, career, calling

- 1) Please, state your age, address, and \_\_\_\_\_ in the space below.
- 2) My brother made a brilliant \_\_\_\_\_ in journalism.
- 3) My aunt holds a key \_\_\_\_\_ in this department.
- 4) There was a great demand for engineers in the 1960s, and many graduates entered the \_\_\_\_\_ at the time.
- 5) She was the first woman ever to take up the \_\_\_\_\_ of President.
- 6) You may leave your letter of application and CV, we have three \_\_\_\_\_ for typists.
- 7) My first \_\_\_\_\_ a record shop and I'll remember those times forever!
- 8) There are now much more women in the medical \_\_\_\_\_.
- 9) He applied for the \_\_\_\_\_ of assistant manager in a big company.
- 10) You can read want ads to learn about \_\_\_\_\_ available and then you can apply for any of them.
- 11) She chose a political \_\_\_\_\_.
- 12) Laura has a well-paid \_\_\_\_\_ in the tax department.
- 13) It is in Sarah's nature to help others, so her work is inseparable from life. Being a doctor isn't just her job, it's her \_\_\_\_\_.
- 14) Gardening is a nice \_\_\_\_\_ for bright spring days.



18 Collocate the verbs and nouns in the table.

to get (2), to earn, to do (2), to find (2), to do for, to look for (2), to take on, to offer (2), to have (2), to make

WORK	A JOB	A LIVING
	to look for a job	

19 Complete the information in the table. Describe three more jobs.

	Job	Work place	Responsibilities	Special qualities required
1	pilot			perfect eyesight, quick reaction
2		farm		physical strength, love of nature
3		art studio	creates works of art in stone, metal, wood etc.	
4		restaurant		knowledge of different countries' cuisines
5			treats sick animals	

20 Fill in the gaps choosing a suitable word or expression from the box.

- perks
- qualifications
- ambitious
- job security
- a salary
- references
- promotion
- a commission

- 1) His \_\_\_\_\_ is not very high right now but there is a good chance of \_\_\_\_\_. It will mean more money and more responsibility.
- 2) Her \_\_\_\_\_ make Nora the most suitable candidate for the advertised post.
- 3) When a person's job is selling some product, it usually means getting a percentage of the value of what has been sold. It is called \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4) Most employers prefer the applicants who can submit good \_\_\_\_\_ from their teachers and previous employers.
- 5) Some jobs have extra benefits called \_\_\_\_\_: free meals, health insurance, use of the company car, longer vacations.
- 6) \_\_\_\_\_ means being sure of one's future in their working place.
- 7) A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ person prefers having a challenging job to the one that demands little of them.



## V. READING

- 21 Read a biographical sketch and think of an appropriate title to the text.

Driving home in the early morning after a 12-hour shift in the emergency room, Dr John Mullen is alone with his thoughts. That stops the moment a two-way radio on his dashboard gives him a message: there has been a hit-and-run accident a couple of miles away, and the suspect is driving a **Camaro (1)**. Mullen spots the car and follows; when the suspect pulls into his driveway and steps out, the doc — with a badge in one hand and pistol on his hip — immediately places him under arrest.

An **ER (2)** doc who is also a small-town **lawman (3)** — is in fact the chosen lifestyle of Dr Mullen, 52, who is both a physician at the Titus Regional Medical Center in Mount Pleasant, Texas, and a local deputy sheriff. Exotic as his career combination might seem, it's even more noteworthy when one considers what Mullen gave up for it. Before moving to the woods of East Texas, he had been a nationally **renowned (4)** neurosurgeon in Dallas, earning about three times his current salary.

Indeed, Mullen has been on something of a dual career path since his college days. After graduating from the University of Vermont at Burlington with a B.S. in chemistry in 1970, he went to work for the state medical examiner, assisting in more than one thousand autopsies. Three years later his boss urged him to try medical school. Mullen attended Southern Illinois and went on to do his internship and **residency (5)** at Duke before beginning his high-powered neurosurgery career in Dallas.

By the late '80s, Mullen had a **sterling (6)** reputation, the financial **trappings (7)** his profession made possible — and a lot of anxiety. "All I did was work and think about work," he recalls. In January 1991 the surgeon, a lieutenant colonel in the Army Reserves, was called up for Operation Desert Storm. In the Saudi Arabian desert, he did a lot of thinking about his career, his third failing marriage — and resolved to **shake up (8)** his life.

Within six months he had. By then the doctor — who had begun taking **forensics (9)** courses while still a full-time neurosurgeon — had completed the Northeast Texas Police Academy's yearlong course with honors. He had also purchased a home on picturesque Lake Cypress Springs — and, most importantly, persuaded Franklin County Sheriff Charles J. White to use him as an unpaid deputy. "I can't say I immediately took him seriously," says White, 42. "But we're very fortunate to have someone with his **expertise (10)**. Having a medical doctor working at the scene of crime is a big plus in this business."

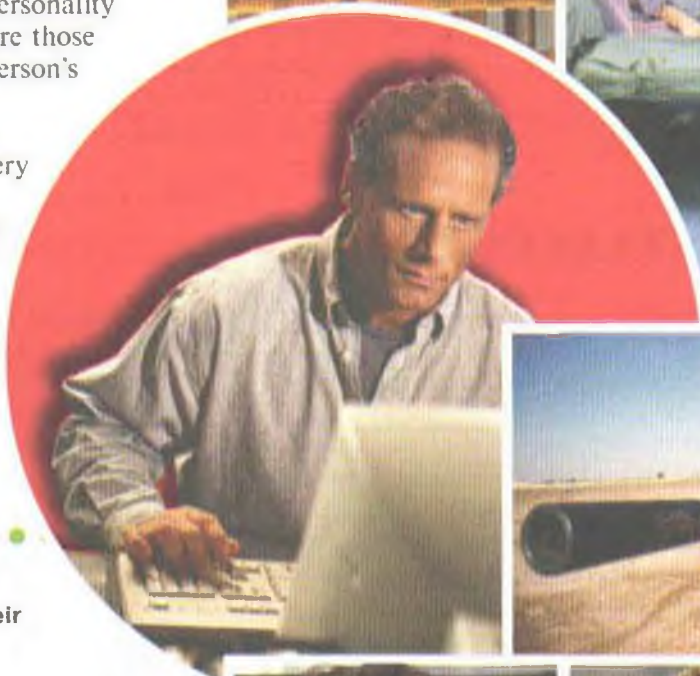
During his eight years on the job, Mullen has **made a mark (11)**. Now an instructor at the police academy, he has become the go-to guy to investigate all major crime scenes in his jurisdiction. (Although the sheriff's office has offered to put him on salary, he says he's happy with the current arrangement; it has allowed the department to hire an additional deputy.) Some criminal investigations began while Mullen was on the job in the ER. Once, a mother brought in a child she claimed had recently stopped breathing. Mullen quickly realized the boy had been beaten to death. His careful documentation of the injuries helped make the murder case against the mother and her boyfriend. And it's not unusual for fellow lawmen to drop by while Mullen is in the ER, hoping to discuss a particular case of theirs.

The doctor married the fourth time in January 1998. Mullen **struck up (12)** a conversation with Martha one night at Titus Regional. She was then working as an oncology nurse, reading former FBI agent John Douglas's book *Mind-hunter*. Now retired from nursing, Martha is taking correspondence courses in forensics — and looking forward to one day working with Mullen at crime scenes as a husband-and-wife consulting team.

22 A) Say which facts from J. Mullen's life the pictures show.

B) Answer the questions to the text.

- 1) When was this person born? In what major period of time does the person live?
- 2) In what city or country does this person live?
- 3) What were the important periods in this person's life?
- 4) What were this person's major achievements? What did this person do that affected the lives of other people?
- 5) What are the outstanding personality traits of this person? How are those personality traits and this person's accomplishments related?
- 6) How does the author try to interest his readers at the very beginning?
- 7) What is the author's attitude toward this person? What does he want his audience to think of this person?
- 8) Is the sketch organized in chronological order?
- 9) What details make the sketch especially interesting?



23 Match the highlighted words and phrases in the text with their meaning.

- a) a sheriff;
- b) the possessions that are connected with a job;
- c) connected with scientific tests used by the police when trying to solve a crime;
- d) to make big changes;
- e) a make of the car;
- f) famous and respected;
- g) a period of time when a doctor working in a hospital receives special advanced training;
- h) of excellent quality;
- i) expert knowledge or skill in a particular subject, activity or job;
- j) to become famous and successful in a particular area;
- k) began;
- l) an emergency room;



## VI. VOCABULARY

24 Fill in the gaps with the words from the box.

- 1) pay
- 2) sick pay
- 3) holiday pay
- 4) overtime pay
- 5) wages
- 6) salary
- 7) fee
- 8) royalty
- 9) grant
- 10) bonus
- 11) commission

- 1) What are the average \_\_\_\_\_ of skilled workers in your country?
- 2) His consultant \_\_\_\_\_ for the design work came to more than \$200,000.
- 3) You get a 10% \_\_\_\_\_ on everything you sell.
- 4) You can get a \_\_\_\_\_ to go to college.
- 5) The publisher offered him a \_\_\_\_\_ of 10% of the price of the book on all copies sold.
- 6) He doesn't like the job, but the \_\_\_\_\_ is good.
- 7) Most full-time employees receive \_\_\_\_\_ for two weeks of holiday and \_\_\_\_\_ if they are ill.
- 8) The company employees got a \$25 Christmas \_\_\_\_\_.
- 9) Brian is an engineer and recently he has been offered a more interesting job but at a slightly lower \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10) My father often worked on Saturdays and Sundays and received \_\_\_\_\_.

## VII. SPEAKING

25 Discuss the following situations.

- 1) There are some jobs that women should not do.
- 2) However well you do your job, you don't get on in any company unless you are a friend of the manager's.
- 3) Which is better: to work non-stop for the company for 40 years or to try different places of work?
- 4) Would you rather have a boring but well-paid job or an interesting but poorly paid one?
- 5) What would you most value in the workplace?
- 6) What are some important qualities of a good supervisor (boss)? Explain why these qualities are important.
- 7) We all work or will work in our jobs with many different kinds of people. In your opinion, what are some important characteristics of a co-worker (someone you work closely with)?
- 8) In some countries, teenagers have jobs while they are still students. Do you think this is a good idea?

26 Think of an occupation. Don't tell it to your class. Let the class ask you 10 "yes-no" questions. The student who guesses the occupation correctly will be "it" the next time. The other students will try to guess his / her occupation in the same way.



27 There are many proverbs to do with work.

A) Match the beginnings and endings of the proverbs below. Explain their meaning and try to find Ukrainian equivalents.

a) A bad workman...	1) ...while the sun shines.
b) If a job is worth doing...	2) ...make light work.
c) Make hay...	3) ...what you can do today.
d) Many hands...	4) ...for idle hands.
e) Too many cooks...	5) ...makes you healthy, wealthy and wise.
f) Early to bed, early to rise...	6) ...blames his tools.
g) Never put off until tomorrow...	7) ...it's worth doing well.
h) The devil makes work...	8) ...catches the worm.
i) All work and no play...	9) ...spoil the broth.
j) The early bird...	10) ...makes Jack a dull boy.

B) Choose one of the proverbs to describe your own experience.

## VIII. READING

28 A) Read the text and find the synonymous pairs.

- to keep up with the changes;
- to have a craving for doing something;
- to keep informed; to thoroughly select;
- to be very much into something;
- to explore different cultures; to perform on the spot;
- to have two sides of the coin; to update one's knowledge; to choose the most suitable means;
- to think on one's feet; to keep track of something; to get acquainted with peoples and their heritage;
- to have advantages and disadvantages.

### The Advantages and Disadvantages of the Interpreter's Profession

Some violinist once said, "A good interpreter can take a piece of bad music and make it sound pretty decent." To my mind, being an interpreter means being an artist. The same as the painter thoroughly selects colours for his masterpieces, the interpreter chooses the most suitable words and expressions in his speech but only in his case this time-consuming process is completed on the spot. As many other artistic professions, interpreting also has two sides of the coin which are advantages and disadvantages.

But before that, what qualities apply to this profession? The interpreter is a person of great enterprise. He has got a craving for widening his scope, learning by experience and, thus, perfecting his skills. Of course, he needs to be competent, self-confident, and motivated and be ready to face up to immense responsibilities and think on his feet in case of any misunderstandings in this challenging and tough profession. Besides, it's vitally essential for him to keep track of everything: historic events, places of interest, latest news and of course keep up with the changes in the language. Although one cannot know absolutely everything, the interpreter is an extremely curious person who pays special attention to updating his knowledge by any means and as long as he lives.

Therefore, we've come to the greatest advantage of interpreting: it's the opportunity to travel. If you asked me, I'd give my right arm for being an explorer of different cultures, minds and opinions. I'm very much into travelling and in several years to come I cannot imagine myself just sitting behind a desk and doing some clerical work, which is so tedious and routine that it bores me to death. I have every intention of getting acquainted with people from faraway lands, their habits, customs and ways of behavior. I find it so amazing to try to look at things from a different angle. I suppose such enjoyable experiences make a good influence on your all-round development.

B) What qualities in the author's opinion apply to the profession of an interpreter?

## IX. LISTENING

29 Listen to a high school teacher speaking about what makes his job satisfying and fill in the gaps with words and phrases you hear.



The two factors which make my job as a high school teacher satisfying are (1) \_\_\_\_\_ a sense of trust with the students and (2) \_\_\_\_\_ their progress. First of all, it is necessary to develop a sense of trust between my students and myself. I have always felt that it is indispensable for the teacher to build a good relation with students, including developing (3) \_\_\_\_\_ parents, too. A good relationship with the students makes the atmosphere in class (4) \_\_\_\_\_ and the students find themselves eager to learn. For example, last year a student of mine, Juan, told me that he was very (5) \_\_\_\_\_ to do mathematics because he had been transferred from a school that had a poor maths department. To help him (6) \_\_\_\_\_, I worked with him during the lunch period and helped him catch up with the class. At the end of the semester, he was (7) \_\_\_\_\_, and he said to me, "You trusted me and helped me learn to trust myself. Thank you."

The second factor that makes my job as a teacher satisfying is (8) \_\_\_\_\_ of my students. Of course, it is part of my job to encourage students to get good results on their examinations; yet, it gives me a sense of personal satisfaction when they (9) \_\_\_\_\_ by the university of their choice or get a summer job based on some of the skills they have been taught. Their success (10) \_\_\_\_\_ to work harder so that their dreams, and those of their parents, will come true. While it is true that I am often evaluated by whether or not my students succeed, it is the (11) \_\_\_\_\_ in their future that makes me feel satisfied with my job. If I had to choose a career all over again, I would definitely choose teaching.

30 A) Rank the factors that can contribute to job satisfaction in order of their importance. Explain your choice. Add more factors if you can.

- receive training
- have an inspirational boss
- have job security
- have a pleasant working environment
- have lots of perks
- have good promotion prospects/ opportunity to progress
- have a challenging job



B) What factors make the job of a teacher and an interpreter/ a translator satisfying? What are your expectations?

# X. READING AND SPEAKING

## WHAT MAKES A GOOD TEACHER?

31 A) Put the beginnings and ends together to make up statements about what a good teacher should know how to do.

1. to present lessons in	a. and caring
2. to be warm, accessible, enthusiastic	b. to learn more on their own
3. to be concerned with	c. developing their students' critical-thinking skills
4. to display enthusiasm	d. their teaching strategies according to the particular students
5. not to give up	e. lose face
6. to be consistent in grading and	f. the subjects they are teaching
7. to exhibit expertise in	g. return work in a timely manner
8. to try to engage	h. on underachievers
9. to know how to modify	i. as a road map
10. to instill a hunger in their students	j. for their subject
11. not to be a slave to the text but to use it	k. a clear and structured way
12. not to make students	l. the whole class



B) Choose 5 characteristics you think are the most important for a teacher and range them in order of importance. Explain your choice.

C) Speak about a good teacher you had at school/ university using the phrases from the box. Add your own ideas.



32 Read the text and discuss the questions.

- 1) Why do you think Roald Dahl chose the names Trunchbull and Honey for his characters?
- 2) How old is Matilda when she goes to school? Why does she start school later than other children?
- 3) Is Matilda's experience of starting school similar to yours? Think about the age of pupils, size of school, number of pupils in class.
- 4) What was your first teacher like? How much did she have in common with Miss Honey?
- 5) How does Miss Honey describe Miss Trunchbull? Why does she warn the children about her?
- 6) Are the children in Matilda's class happy to be at school? How do you know it?

## Miss Honey

(From *Matilda* by Roald Dahl)

Matilda was a little late in starting school. Most children begin Primary School at five or even just before, but Matilda's parents, who weren't very concerned one way or the other about their daughter's education, had forgotten to make the proper arrangements in advance. She was five and a half when she entered school for the first time.

The village school for younger children was a bleak brick building called Crunchem Hall Primary School. It had about two hundred and fifty pupils aged from five to just under twelve years old.

The head teacher, the boss, the supreme commander of this establishment was a middle-aged lady whose name was Miss Trunchbull.

Naturally, Matilda was put in the bottom class, where there were eighteen other small boys and girls about the same age as her. Their teacher was called Miss Honey, and she could not have been more than twenty-three or twenty-four. She had a lovely pale oval madonna face with blue eyes and her hair was light-brown. Her body was so slim and fragile one got the feeling that if she fell over, she would smash into a thousand pieces, like a porcelain figure.

Miss Jennifer Honey was a mild and quiet person who never raised her voice and was seldom seen to smile, but there is no doubt she possessed that rare gift for being adored by every small child under her care. She seemed to understand

totally the bewilderment and fear that so often overwhelms young children who for the first time in their lives are herded into a classroom and told to obey orders. Some curious warmth that was almost tangible shone out of Miss Honey's face when she spoke to a confused and homesick newcomer to the class.

Miss Trunchbull, the Headmistress, was something else altogether. She was a gigantic holy terror, a fierce tyrannical monster who frightened the life out of the pupils and teachers alike. There was an aura of menace about her even at a distance, and when she came up close, you could almost feel the dangerous heat radiating from her as from a red-hot rod of metal. When she marched — Miss Trunchbull never walked, she always marched like a storm-trooper with long strides and arms aswinging — when she marched along a corridor, you could actually hear her snorting as she went, and if a group of children happened to be in her path, she ploughed right on through them like a tank, with small people bouncing off her to left and right. Thank goodness we don't meet many people like her in this world, although they do exist and all of us are likely to come across at least one of them in a lifetime. If you ever do, you should behave as you would if you met an enraged rhinoceros out in the bush — climb up the nearest tree and stay there until it has gone away. This woman, in all her





eccentricities and in her appearance, is almost impossible to describe, but I shall make some attempt to do so a little later on. Let us leave her for the moment and go back to Matilda and her first day in Miss Honey's class.

After the usual business of going through all the names of the children, Miss Honey handed out a brand-new exercise-book to each pupil.

"You have all brought your own pencils, I hope," she said.

"Yes, Miss Honey," they chanted.

"Good. Now this is the very first day of school for each one of you. It is the beginning of at least eleven long years of schooling that all of you are going to have to go through. And six of those years will be spent right here at Crunchem Hall where, as you know, your Headmistress is Miss Trunchbull. Let me for your own good tell you something about

Miss Trunchbull. She insists upon strict discipline throughout the school, and if you take my advice, you will do your very best to behave yourselves in her presence. Never argue with her. Never answer her back. Always do as she says. If you get on the wrong side of Miss Trunchbull she can liquidise you like a carrot in a kitchen blender. It's nothing to laugh about, Lavender. Take that grin off your face. All of you will be wise to remember that Miss Trunchbull deals very severely with anyone who gets out of line in this school. Have you got the message?"

"Yes, Miss Honey," chirruped eighteen eager little voices.

"I myself," Miss Honey went on, "want to help you to learn as much as possible while you are in this class. That is because I know it will make things easier for you later on."

**33** Look at the words/ phrases from the text and complete their definitions by underlining the correct option.

- **strict discipline:** making people *follow rules/ have fun*;
- **to behave yourselves:** to act like *good/ bad* children;
- **to get the message:** to understand *the idea/ the meaning of a text message*;
- **to get out of line:** to behave *appropriately/ inappropriately*;
- **to take sb's advice:** to do what *sb suggests/ make a suggestion*;
- **to deal very severely with sb:** to *punish strictly/ to reward generously*;
- **to take the grin off one's face:** to stop *smiling/ frowning*;
- **to answer sb back:** to reply *politely/ rudely*;
- **to get on the wrong side of sb:** to make somebody *pleased with you/ annoyed with you*.



— **Unit 1. Every man to his trade** —



**34** Complete the sentences using some of the words/ phrases from exercise 33.

1. Students usually \_\_\_\_\_ on how to prepare for an exam.
2. Paul was very rude. He was always \_\_\_\_\_ his mother's \_\_\_\_\_.
3. When my hosts started looking at the clock, I \_\_\_\_\_ and left.
4. Jim's parents strictly told him to \_\_\_\_\_ every time they left him at his Grandma's for the weekend.
5. Matilda's school headmistress had a reputation for \_\_\_\_\_ with pupils who \_\_\_\_\_ of her.
6. The teacher didn't find the April Fool's Day joke that pupils played on him funny, and firmly told them to \_\_\_\_\_ their faces.
7. When addressing a teacher at a Japanese school, you should be very careful not to \_\_\_\_\_, so don't use their first name.
8. Lack of \_\_\_\_\_ at home means that many pupils find it difficult to settle in to the ordered environment of the school.

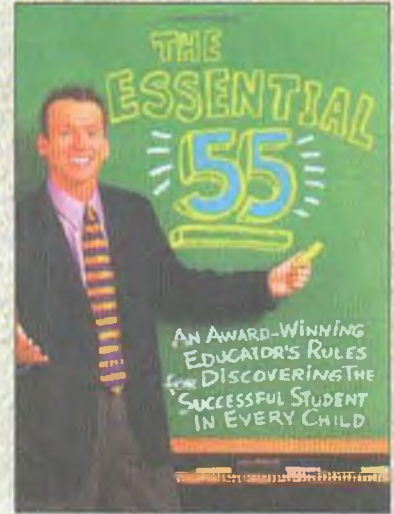
**35** Find English equivalents to the following Ukrainian phrases in the text.

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• начальниця і головнокомандувач цього закладу;</li> <li>• ніколи не кричати;</li> <li>• до смерті лякати когось;</li> <li>• дебела жінка середніх років;</li> <li>• не дуже перейматися освітою своєї дитини;</li> <li>• мати рідкісний хист;</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• збентеження і страх, що охоплюють малу дитину;</li> <li>• випадково зустріти схожу на когось людину;</li> <li>• розлючений носоріг;</li> <li>• ексцентричні витівки;</li> <li>• роздати учням новенькі підручники;</li> <li>• заздалегідь про щось домовитись.</li> </ul> |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**36** Find words and phrases used in the text to describe Miss Honey and Miss Trunchbull and fill in the table. Describe Miss Honey and Miss Trunchbull using your notes.

<i>Miss Honey</i>	<i>Miss Trunchbull</i>
	
<hr/> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/>	<hr/> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/>

37 You will hear an interview with Ron Clark, who is called “America’s Educator” and is the author of “The 55 Essentials: An Award-winning Educator’s Rules for Discovering the Successful Student in Every Child,” a national best-seller. Ron Clark has made it his specialty to go into classes filled with the “most difficult” students in the school and turn the class around. Fill in the gaps with the information about him.



1. Ron Clark comes from \_\_\_\_\_.
2. London was the first place to travel after he saved up \_\_\_\_\_.
3. He had to finish travelling after he \_\_\_\_\_ in Romania.
4. His mother insisted that he should apply to the local \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The principal tried to persuade him to take the place of a teacher telling him that the class was \_\_\_\_\_.
6. When he walked into the classroom he saw that the substitute teacher could not \_\_\_\_\_.
7. After he started working in that class he found out the children did not have 3 things what he had growing up: \_\_\_\_\_.
8. The first year he had a list of \_\_\_\_\_, and added more the following years.
9. Ron taught his pupils life, respect, to be a family, and \_\_\_\_\_ totally changed.
10. As at the end of the year the pupils’ test scores were \_\_\_\_\_ his methods were spread to other classrooms.
11. Ron is convinced that a teacher should tell exactly to his students what he \_\_\_\_\_.
12. When a teacher, according to Ron, puts his whole heart and all of his passion into a group of kids, he can really \_\_\_\_\_.



**38** Two friends have met after summer holidays. Student A studies at a pedagogical university. Student B studies to become an interpreter. Make up a dialogue following the instructions.

### STUDENT A

1. Greet Student B. Ask what he/ she thinks about the new courses at the university.
2. Express your view that teachers play an important role in shaping students' attitude to the subjects they teach. Speak about the qualities you have to develop to become a good teacher.
3. Agree. Say that any profession has its disadvantages and as about the disadvantages in the profession of an interpreter.
4. Express some doubt since in your opinion working part-time or freelance is good mainly for students and explain why.
5. Agree. Think of your own example.
6. Say what, in your opinion, you have to do now to realize this hope.

### STUDENT B

1. Greet Student A. Speak about the new courses which are important for you to become an interpreter.
2. Express regret that teacher's job is not always rewarded properly. Give other reasons why few young people want to become teachers.
3. Point out to some disadvantages and highlight the advantages. Among others mention the possibility of finding a part-time job or working freelance.
4. Partially agree and say that sometimes full-time jobs with perks do not always guarantee a stable future. Give an example.
5. Express hope that both of you will find exciting and rewarding jobs in the future.
6. Agree and support the idea.

## XII. REVISION TRANSLATION

39 Translate into English.

- 1) **Задоволення роботою** дуже важливе, але в мене є родина, і тому я повинен думати про гроші теж. **За професією** я архітектор, але нещодавно потрапив під скорочення. Зараз я зайнятий пошуками роботи; мене цікавить, які перспективи в мене будуть, яка буде платня, чи буде збільшення платні, просування по службі, пільги, наприклад безкоштовні обіди і проїзд. Я також хочу знати, чи буде в мене оплачувана відпустка, лікарняні, в якому віці я зможу піти на пенсію. Мене не можна назвати **трудоголіком**, але я не збираюся обіймати одну й ту ж посаду все життя і хочу підніматися по службових сходах.
- 2) Майкл вирішив змінити роботу — його посада клерка в бухгалтерському відділі здавалася йому нудною й **одноманітною**, йому не платили премій, він часто працював надурочно. Через пару місяців йому вдалося **знайти роботу** в міжнародній туристичній компанії. Він подав заяву про прийом на роботу і був прийнятий. Але через рік його звільнили. Зараз Майкл безробітний і отримує допомогу, якої ледь вистачає, щоб вижити.
- 3) Багато молодих людей вступають до вузів і хочуть стати вчителями. Я вважаю професію вчителя дуже **шляхетною і корисною**. Учитель постійно спілкується з багатьма людьми, особливо дітьми. Він повинен добре зна-

ти свій предмет і бути творчою людиною, увесь час придумувати щось нове, що може зацікавити його учнів. Як і будь-яка інша, професія вчителя має свої «за» і «проти». Звичайно, вона не вважається однією з найбільш високооплачуваних, зате у вчителів тривала відпустка і завжди влітку. Але найголовніше те, що процес навчання учнів і пізнання нового разом з ними **приносить неймовірне задоволення!**

- 4) Мій батько працює **теслярем** на будівництві, це важка **фізична праця**. В основному він працює змінami. У нього великий досвід, нещодавно його **призначили майстром**. Він вважається **кваліфікованим робітником**. А моя мама медсестра у місцевій лікарні і працює за **гнучким графіком**. Вона отримує, звичайно, **набагато меншу зарплатню**, хоча її праця не менш виснажлива.
- 5) Я працюю **перекладачем** у науково-видавництві. Я перекладаю книжки у різних галузях з англійської мови на українську. Крім того, я відповідаю за листування з британськими та американськими видавництвами, з якими ми співпрацюємо. Сьогодні листування ведеться майже виключно через **електронну пошту**. Отже, серед багатьох вимог до сучасного перекладача **вміння працювати за комп'ютером та в Інтернеті** посідає не останнє місце.



## XIII. WRITING

- 40 Read the interview with the veterinarian Lance W. Hill and write a 250-word composition to describe this profession. Add any relevant information to make your writing interesting for your readers.

# Interview

Name: Lance W. Hill

Age: 32

Occupation: Veterinarian; Leeds, Ala.

Education: Undergraduate, Auburn, 1973–77; D.V.M., Auburn, 1981

**Q.** How does your work break down?

5

A. Everything from cleaning the cages and cutting the grass to negotiating finances with my banker and handling all the business aspects to practicing medicine and doing the surgery.

**Q.** How does the veterinary profession differ from other professions?

10

A. To really have much financial return, you pretty much have to open up your own practice. You have to build a hospital and then sit and wait for people to walk in the door. You have to hire a staff and order supplies, and do things you wouldn't have to do otherwise.

**Q.** What part of practicing veterinary medicine did school least prepare you for?

15

A. The business aspect and the fact that most people think, "That guy must really like animals," and that it's the charitable thing to do. In reality, you are out to make money, and you are just as well trained as any physician is.

**Q.** What's the toughest part of your job?

20

A. From a diagnostic standpoint, it's difficult to get a good medical history on an animal. You can't ask a dog, "How many rocks have you swallowed today?"

**Q.** What advice would you give to students who are interested in becoming veterinarians?

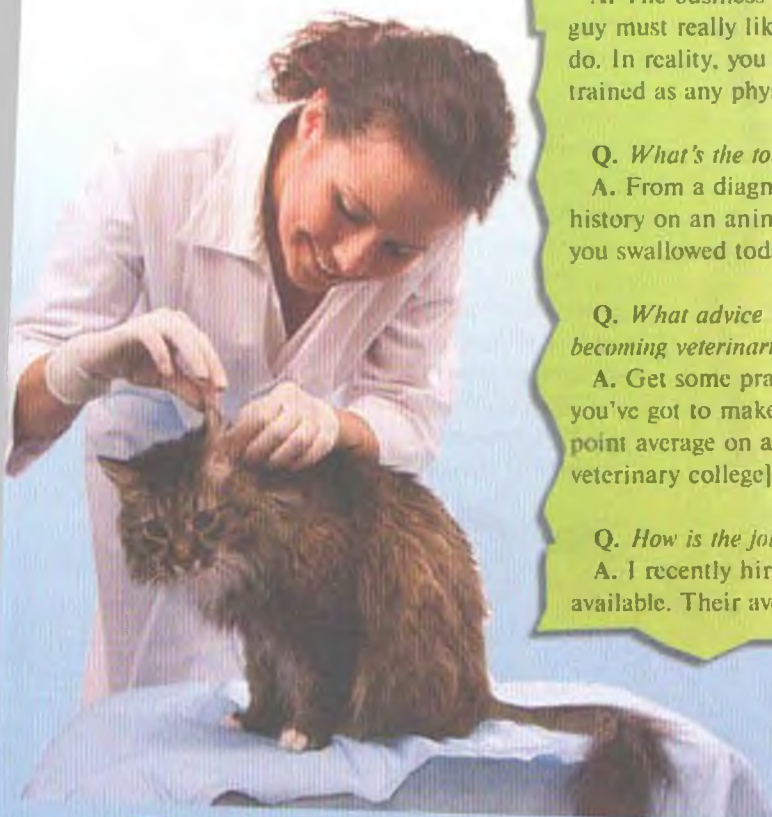
25

A. Get some practical experience with a local veterinarian. And you've got to make the grades. The average undergraduate grade-point average on a four-point scale in my graduating class [in veterinary college] was 3.69.

**Q.** How is the job market?

30

A. I recently hired a graduate, and I think there are a lot of jobs available. Their average starting pay is from \$18,000 to \$20,000.



# Unit 2

THIS  
AMAZING PLACE  
WE LIVE IN



## I. LEAD-IN

1 How are the following dates, numbers and abbreviations related to Ukraine?

1. August, 24, 1991
2. 2061 metres high
3. 380
4. ua
5. June 28

2 Answer the questions about Ukraine.

1. What city was the first capital of Ukraine?
2. How many countries does Ukraine border on?
3. What are the main seaports of Ukraine?
4. What are its largest cities?
5. What is the longest river in Ukraine?
6. What is the national currency of Ukraine? What is its letter code?
7. What are the national holidays of Ukraine?

## II. VOCABULARY

3 Write the words in the appropriate column

DEPOSITS	BORDER	CLIMATE

• common	• gas	• marine	• ore	• thick
• continental	• humid	• mild	• rich	• thin
• damp	• inland	• mineral	• severe	• watery
• dry	• large	• moderate	• subtropical	

4 Can you read the map?  
 Look at the map of Ukraine and say what mineral resources are found on its territory and in what regions.  
 Does the area you live in have any deposits? What natural resources is it rich/ poor in?

### USEFUL LANGUAGE

• is found in abundance	• is rich/ poor in
• has huge deposits of	• has large deposits of





### III. SPEAKING

5 Look at the map of Ukraine and answer the questions.

1. What countries does it have inland and marine borders with?
2. What rivers form its borders?
3. What determines Ukraine's favourable geographical location? (Think in terms of climate, soil, deposits, water resources etc.)

### IV. VOCABULARY

- |                    |               |
|--------------------|---------------|
| • an abyss         | • a plain     |
| • a bay            | • a plateau   |
| • a beach          | • a precipice |
| • a brook          | • a reservoir |
| • a cave           | • a resort    |
| • a cliff          | • a slope     |
| • a current        | • a spring    |
| • a gulf           | • a strait    |
| • a harbour        | • a stream    |
| • a meadow         | • a valley    |
| • a mountain range | • a vineyard  |
| • a peninsula      | • a waterfall |

6 Put the words in the appropriate column.

- |             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| • strait    | • mountain range |
| • gulf      | • stream         |
| • peninsula | • mountain       |
| • plain     | • ocean          |
| • plateau   | • island         |
| • bay       | • hill           |
| • waterfall | • continent      |
| • cave      | • current        |
| • cliff     | • spring         |

LAND	WATER

7 Fill in the gaps with the words

- region
- beaches
- landmarks
- landscapes
- steppe
- valleys
- resorts
- harbors
- climate
- sights
- destination
- vineyards
- sites
- cliffs
- coast

1. The Odesa \_\_\_\_\_ (1), with its voluptuously curved Black Sea coast of sparkling \_\_\_\_\_ (2), is a paradise—with stunning vistas, fertile \_\_\_\_\_ (3) and pebble and sand \_\_\_\_\_ (4). Odesa will always be a favoured tourist \_\_\_\_\_ (5) with its lush green \_\_\_\_\_ (6) and rugged coastline. Its coast is broken by picturesque bays and secluded \_\_\_\_\_ (7).
2. Since Odesa region is drawn out along the meridian, the \_\_\_\_\_ (8) in the narrow 30—40 km stretch along the \_\_\_\_\_ (9) is practically ideal, with nearly 300 days of sun a year. The soft tang of the sea is mixing with the dry climate of the \_\_\_\_\_ (10) further inland. Odesa can be an ideal retreat to famous health \_\_\_\_\_ (11) of the coast and a natural mud bath in the Danube Delta, or a run down to the historic and architectural \_\_\_\_\_ (12) — palaces, castles and fortresses.
3. There are a lot of impressive \_\_\_\_\_ (13) within easy reach of the city centre. Tourists can explore the paths of ancient nomads and the Cossack country, savour the wines from the adjacent \_\_\_\_\_ (14), or float gently down the stream of the beautiful Danube through its delta to the Black Sea where pelicans and herons fill the sky. The Danube Delta ranks among the top biodiversity \_\_\_\_\_ (15) in Europe exhibiting its most natural complex of wetlands, steppes and steppe-forests. Over 220 species of birds have been recorded there.

## V. READING

8 Read the text and answer the questions.

- What is the origin of the word “Dniester?”
- How long is the Dniester and where does it run?
- How was the river used in trade?
- Why does the Dniester Canyon attract tourists?
- What does the legend tell us about St. John the Divine monastery?
- What is the Khotyn Fortress famous for?
- What famous names and events is the Dniester Canyon connected with?

# The Dniester Canyon

They say that once there was a small brook in Podilia (a historic region in Western Ukraine). The people who inhabited its banks kept a calendar by marking days on sand. But one day the brook spilled  
5 over the nearby meadows and fields, and all the marks were wiped. “Who wiped the days?” people would ask. “The brook wiped the days!” was the answer. This is how the river got its name: Dniester (in Ukrainian, ‘dni’ means ‘days’, ‘ster’ means ‘wiped’). But scientists,  
10 who prefer facts to legends, believe that the name of the river derives from the Sarmatian Iranian word ‘Danastris’ which meant ‘rapid water’.

In Ukraine, the Dniester is the third longest river (1362 kilometres long). Its sources are on the north-  
15 eastern slopes of the Ukrainian Carpathians. In old times, the river was used as a transportation waterway linking the Carpathian Mountains and Podilia to the Balkan  
20 Peninsula, and the Middle East. Boats, loaded with tableware, fabrics, fur, grain, and honey used to trade down the Dniester.

25 In the 1980’s, the Dniester reservoir, which swelled the river considerably, was created on the territory of Chernivtsi, Khmelnytsky and  
30 Vinnytsia regions.

The magnificent landscapes and fantastic curves of the Dniester Canyon are strikingly picturesque throughout its entire path. But there is an area of the canyon especially popular among tourists: from the  
35 village of Luka (Ivano-Frankivsk region) to the city of Khotyn (Chernivtsi region). Rafting between the high Dniester ‘walls’ (from 150 to 300 metres high!) is exhilarating. The river’s steep slopes are like the halls

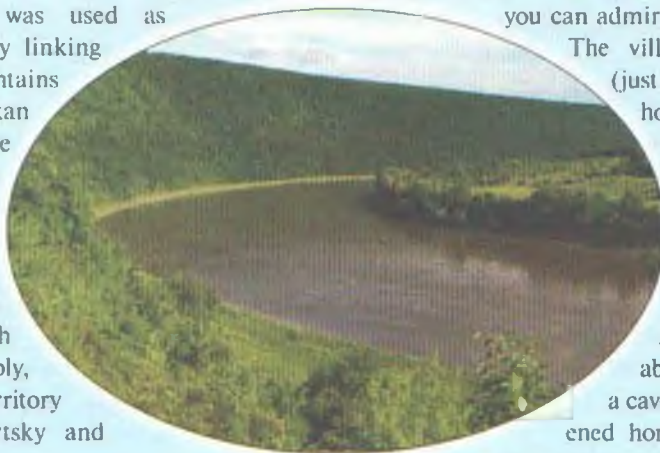
of a museum of Nature, silent greetings from the past of the Earth. 40

Here we are, exploring the canyon in the Ivano-Frankivsk region. Between the Dniester steep slopes, Rakovetskiy Castle, built almost four centuries ago, stretches its high tower into the sky. And now we are already in the Ternopil area: the raft passes by Red  
45 Mountain. This area, also known as Warm Podilia, is the warmest place on the Dniester: its climate is comparable to that of the Crimea.

We continue rafting in Ternopil region and arrive at one of its most impressive towns, Zalishchyky. 50 The Dniester dances making such curves around the town that it seems the river is clutching Zalishchyky to its bosom. Here from a 170-metres-high bank of the Dniester you can admire a breathtaking panorama.

The village named Khreshchatyk 55 (just like Kyiv’s main street) hosts St. John’s monastery dating back to the 17th century. According to a legend, one misty morn- 60 ing a horse-driven carriage of a local merchant ran towards a precipice. A few centimetres from the abyss, a monk who lived in 65 a cave nearby, stopped the frightened horses. The merchant, whose life was saved by the monk, gave money to build a chapel near the cave. Today, lots of people come to the monastery: here the soul rests, the local water 70 is pure and tasty, and the views are simply gorgeous.

Further down the canyon brings us to the pride of Chernivtsi region, the magnificent 13–17th centuries Khotyn Fortress hanging over the Dniester. In 1621, the historic battle of Khotyn was fought by the walls 75 of this stronghold. A mere 57 thousand Polish soldiers



and 40 thousand Ukrainian Cossacks defeated the 400 thousand warriors of Osman II. The victory of Cossacks in that brutal fight which lasted five weeks saved Europe from the Turkish invasion. Today, the Khotyn stronghold attracts both history and cinema lovers: over 50 films were shot here, among which are such old favourites as "The Three Musketeers", "The Arrows of Robin Hood", "Ivanhoe" and "Taras Bulba." The mighty 60-metres-high stone walls with five towers overlooking the fantastic landscapes of the Dnister canyon... such impressive scenery cannot be built in a studio!

Looking for waterfalls? There are plenty of them on the Dnister. The most picturesque, sixteen-metres-high Dzhurynsky waterfall is found some 3 or 4 kilometres away from the river, near the villages of Ustechko and Nahorianka in Ternopil region. It is Ukraine's highest plain waterfall. By the way, it is not of natural origin: in the

17th century, the Turks changed the path of the Dzhuryn River during the siege. The Dnister is also a real paradise for ornithologists. Here you can see white egrets and grey herons, storks, swans, seagulls, many other birds.

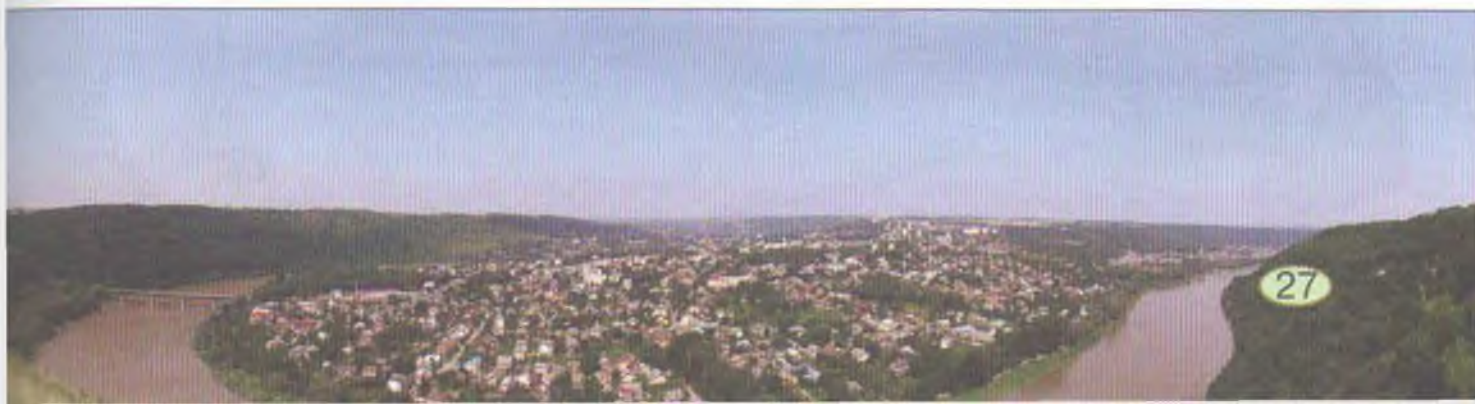
And the number of legends about the Dnister canyon is countless! One of them relates the story of how enemies caught Taras Bulba in the village of Trubchyn when he returned to get his pipe that he had left there on the bank and how he then managed to defeat the Turks and escape. People who live along the Dnister believe that its banks are still hiding gold, silver and precious stones which were buried there in the 18th century by the retreating Turks. Dreaming about treasures? Come and visit the Dnister Canyon! If you do not discover any Turkish gold, you are sure to have fascinating adventures and experiences, which could be a more valuable treasure.

110



9 Find all the words in the text related to physical geography and translate the sentences. ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ●

1. Згідно з рішенням всеукраїнського інтернет-опитування, Дністровський каньйон визнано одним із сімох природних чудес України. Чудові краєвиди та фантастичні завороти каньйону щорічно приваблюють сотні туристів.
2. Струмок брав свій початок з південних схилів Карпатських гір, тік по лугах і ланах, поступово перетворюючись на річку. Коли було створено водосховище, яке наповнило річку водою, вона стала важливим водним шляхом, що поєднує Карпатські гори і Балканський півострів.
3. Ченці мешкали в печерах на крутих схилах гір або будували монастирі біля самої кручі, буквально в деяких сантиметрах від краю безодні.
4. Найвищий водоспад в Україні з'явився в результаті зміни річища річки. Це місце схоже на залу музею природи, де ви можете милуватися панорамою, що перехоплює подих.



**Unit 2. This amazing place we live in**

**10** Student A is phoning a travel agency to find a place to spend a holiday in Ukraine. Student B is a travel agent, trying to help the customer. Make up a dialogue following the instructions.

**STUDENT A**

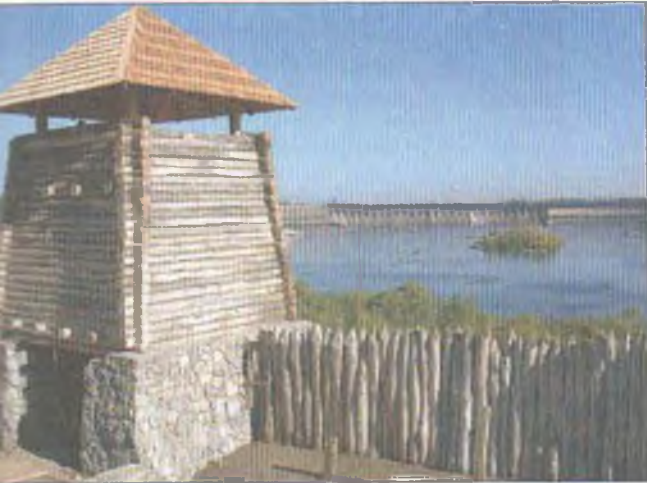
1. Greet the travel agent. Introduce yourself and say why you are calling.
2. Explain why you would like to spend your holiday in the countryside.
3. You know there are a lot of lakes and rivers there. Ask about a possibility to go swimming.
4. Enquire about available excursions or local tours.
5. Mention that you are keen on adventure holidays. Ask what extreme sport activities can be booked.
6. Express delight. Ask about the terms of booking.

**STUDENT B**

1. Express eagerness to help. Tell your customer that you can offer a wide range of places all over Ukraine. Give a couple of examples. Ask about Student A's interests and preferences.
2. Recommend going to the Carpathians. Mention various kinds of landscapes Student A can find and enjoy there.
3. Explain why people rarely go swimming in mountain rivers and lakes. Suggest trout fishing instead. Add that there are plenty of indoor and outdoor swimming facilities offered by numerous resorts.
4. Speak about some places of natural beauty that can be visited in the Carpathians on regular guided excursions.
5. Say that numerous cliffs, fast-running mountain rivers, steep slopes are perfect for extreme sports (white-water rafting, cliff sky-diving, rock climbing etc.).
6. Say that you are happy you could help, and refer Student A to your website. Mention student discounts. Express hope that the customer will use your services.

## VI. LISTENING

11 A) You will hear 4 extracts about some natural wonders of Ukraine. Put the number of extract 1–4 under each picture.



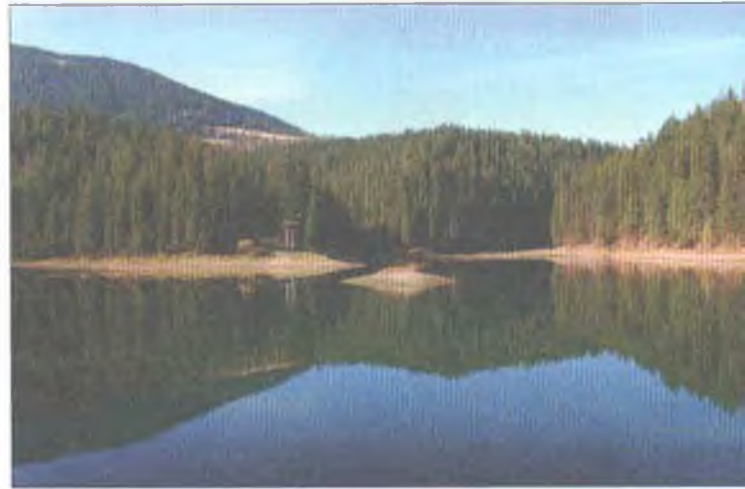
A *Khortytsia National Reserve*



B *The National Biosphere Reserve "Daffodil Valley"*



C *The Oleshky Desert*



D *Synevir*

B) Listen again and say which place...

- 1) is protected by an international organization
- 2) can tell us about the history of people
- 3) has an islet in the middle
- 4) has an underground water reservoir
- 5) abounds in prehistoric plants
- 6) has different types of landscape
- 7) changes in size

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

12 Match the adjectives with the nouns as they are used in the recording.

- |                  |                    |
|------------------|--------------------|
| 1. picturesque   | a) flowers         |
| 2. underground   | b) scenery         |
| 3. marshy        | c) ferns           |
| 4. ancient       | d) setting         |
| 5. radiant white | e) natural wonders |
| 6. natural       | f) forests         |
| 7. emerald-green | g) lake            |

13 A) Match the idioms from the Useful Language box with pictures (1–8).

B) Describe one of the most impressive sights you have visited. How did you feel at that moment?

## USEFUL LANGUAGE

### IDIOMS OF HAPPINESS AND EXCITEMENT

- a) to be thrilled to bits
- b) to be/ feel on top of the world
- c) to walk on air
- d) to be on cloud nine
- e) to be tickled pink
- f) to have a whale of time
- g) to be buzzing
- h) to be as happy as a clam

1



2



3



4



5



6



7



8



## VII. WRITING

### PERSONAL LETTER OF INVITATION

- 14** Write a letter to your friend who has never been to Ukraine. Invite him/ her to go there on a trip. Mention the places you could show him and give some interesting facts to persuade him to come.



### USEFUL LANGUAGE

#### OPENING REMARKS

- Many thanks for your recent letter/ postcard.
- It was good/ nice/ lovely to hear from you recently.
- I was glad to hear that you had a good holiday.
- I hope that you and your family are well.
- I'm sorry I haven't been in touch/ written for such a long time.
- It's ages since I've heard from you.
- I am writing to invite you to...
- Why don't you come and spend some time...

#### CLOSING REMARKS

- I was wondering if you'd like to go/ visit...
- I hope you'll be able to make it.
- Please let me know as soon as possible...
- Looking forward to hearing/ seeing you soon.
- Write soon.
- Hope to hear from you soon.
- Once again thank you for all your help.
- Give my regards/ love to...
- Love/ Love from
- Best wishes/ All the best

## VIII. LISTENING

- 15** Listen to the text. Are these statements TRUE or FALSE?

1. The historic town of Vilkovo was founded by Russian and Ukrainian Cossacks.
2. The tour begins in Odesa and its destination is the historic town of Vilkovo where it ends.
3. During the tour you can catch and cook fish.
4. They take only small groups to make the tour safe.
5. The whole tour is made by boat.
6. The inhabitants here have to cope with flooding of the big river.
7. The Danube Biosphere Reserve can be of great interest for ornithologists.
8. At the very end of the river tourists reach the German Black Forest.
9. Tourists will be shown how local "Novak" wine is made from the grapes grown on the island.
10. There will be a wonderful chance to cool off on a hot summer day.
11. You can take this trip from the last spring month to the first autumn month

## IX. SPEAKING

### INTERESTING PLACES TO VISIT IN UKRAINE

The All-Ukrainian action Seven Natural Wonders of Ukraine started in November 2007, and as many as 100 picturesque places in Ukraine claimed to be a natural wonder.

As a result, the "seven wonders" were chosen and they include a biosphere reserve in Kherson region Askania-Nova; the Dniester Canyon in Ternopil region; granite-steppe Pobuzhzhia — a landscape park located in the

valley of the Southern Buh River in Mykolayiv region; the Marble Cave in the Crimea; Podilski Tovtry, a national natural park in Khmelnytskyi region called the Ukrainian Switzerland; the deepest Ukrainian lake Svitiaz in Volyn and Carpathian lake of Synevir.

The Balaklava bay, desert Oleshkivski Pisky and the Optimistic cave in Ternopil region gained special awards.

**16** Use the factual information below to describe a place and persuade foreign tourists to visit it. Follow the useful language box.

- 1) Name and location of the chosen Ukrainian natural wonder.
- 2) Historical details.

#### PLAN

- 3) What can be done at this place.
- 4) General remarks and recommendations.

### USEFUL LANGUAGE

- You will be greatly surprised to see...
- It certainly won't leave you bored
- ... impressive sights
- ... to suit every taste
- ... panoramic beauty of
- ... wonderful scenery
- ... breathtaking/ magnificent panoramic view
- ... unspoiled countryside
- It is a unique...
- ... nothing similar can be found anywhere else in the world!
- ... you will have a great opportunity to
- ... tourists are advised to

- ... it has lots to offer
- ... worth visiting
- ... fairytale world
- ... fascinating beauty could not but give rise to legends
- From the very first moment you arrive... you feel wrapped up in a pleasant wave of tranquility and good spirits.
- ... is a must for anyone who wants to visit the most famous places...
- ... will make your stay a memorable experience
- The dream becomes a reality with...
- ... idyllic/ unspoiled locations

### The Askania-Nova Biosphere Reserve

- an open air museum;
- an endless sea of grassland, was never plowed;
- the territory of 30 square kilometres;
- 100 years ago, Baron Friedrich Eduardovich von Falz-Fein, created dendrological park and zoo in

- the dry steppe; the first artesian well in Southern Ukraine; now 11,054 hectares of the reserve;
- in 1919 — was proclaimed national park;
- 2,250 species of rare animals, brought from Europe, Asia, Africa, Australia and





America: Oryx antelopes, American bison and Andean llamas, Shetland ponies and Kudu antelope, African water buffalo and zebras, ostriches; the pride of the reserve — numerous herds of Przewalski's horses;

- a paradise for ornithologists — the total of 270 species of birds: swans, flamingos, pheasants, peacocks and peahens, larks, partridges, cranes etc.;
- more than 150 species of trees and bushes; more than 400 species of herbs and flowers, 85 of which only grow here and nowhere else.



### Marble Cave

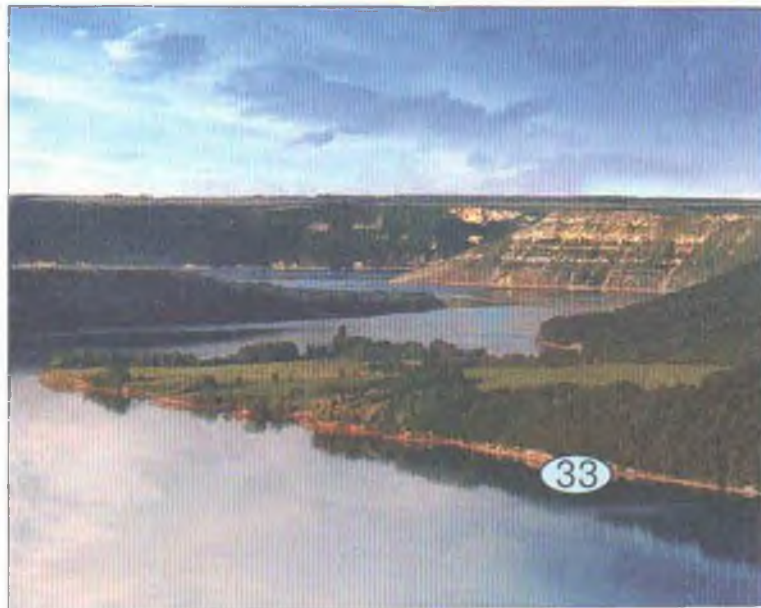
- at an altitude of 920 m above sea level;
- the length — 2050 m, depth varies from just 10 to 80 metres;
- huge halls beautifully decorated with stalactites;
- is decorated with a variety of shapes, amazing figures, carved pillars, intricate crystals, created only by water and time;
- waterfalls, cascading lakes and picturesque columns that separate the various halls;
- the Palace Hall, with statues of what look to be a King and a Queen welcoming tourists;
- the Hall of Roses, the Hall of Hopes, the Chandelier Hall, the Balcony Hall and the Chocolate Hall, etc.



### Podilsky Tovtry

- picturesque mountains of organic, not tectonic origin, a petrified coral reef from a sea that no longer exists, the remnants of coastal reefs, stretch for 250 km;
- weathered and eroded limestone, create the slopes of the valleys in the form of exotic rocks of different forms — columns, pillars, giants;
- height of the ridge reaches 443 metres;
- depth of the valley — 200 metres;
- several various types of mineral springs with healing properties;
- visitors need not be mountaineers to climb the Tovtry, hills — not very high. The highest hill, Nyzhniy Kamin, rises 431 metres high;
- hills differ in height, covered with forest or bald;
- many hill peaks are covered with white limestone boulders, resembling flocks of sheep when viewed from the side. According to a local folk legend, a Gypsy shepherd once punished his evil landlord and hid his lord's sheep in the underpasses of a ruined castle, leaving the landlord with nothing but boulders;

- the flora — diverse and unique, various endemic plants, protected by Ukrainian legislation;
- local fauna is represented by foxes, hedgehogs, ferrets, martens, deer, wild hogs and even moose;
- many caves and grottoes, inhabited by bats;
- ornithologists, watch and take photos of hawks, owls, falcons, eagles, black storks and grey cranes.



## Svitiaz Lake

- the deepest, largest and one of the clearest lakes in Ukraine;
- part of the Shatsky National Nature Park: founded in 1983, includes 22 lakes — each unique in its own way;
- golden sandy beaches, warm crystalline waters, clean air, forests and scrubland teeming with mushrooms and berries;
- is only fed by underground springs;
- covers 26 km<sup>2</sup>, is 9 km long by almost 5 km wide, has a coastline over 30 km long, depth — 7 m, maximum — 58.4 m;
- the transparent waters, visible depths reach 8 metres;
- healing properties of the water, contains iodine, silver and glycerine;
- an island in the centre of the lake, area — 7 hectares, covered by forest of maples and lindens, has a romantic name — the Island of Lovers. On the island, according to a local legend, a young couple in love turned into sycamore and linden trees.



## X. TRANSLATION

17 Translate into English.

1. Ландшафт України представлений в основному родючими рівнинами та плоскогір'ями, по яких течуть річки, такі як Дніпро, Сіверський Донець, Дністер та Південний Буг. Ці річки течуть на південь та впадають в Чорне та Азовське моря.
2. Різні регіони України, від високогір'я до плоскогір'я, мають різноманітні географічні особливості. Єдині гори країни — це Карпатські гори на заході та Кримські гори на Кримському півострові. Найвища горна вершина — гора Говерла, найвища гора Кримських гір — Роман-Кош.
3. Найбільш важливі природні ресурси в Україні включають залізну руду, марганець, природний газ, сіль, нафту, магній, нікель, ртуть, деревину та велику кількість орної землі. Поклади сірки — найбільші в світі, а за запасами ртутної руди Україна займає друге місце.
4. В Україні переважає помірний континентальний клімат, а клімат на південному узбережжі Криму вологий субтропічний. Опадів більш за все випадає на заході та півночі країни і менш за все на сході та південному сході. Прохолодна зима на Чорноморському узбережжі змінюється на більш холодну всередині країни. Влітку температура може досягати 30° С і вище, що робить періоди спеки нестерпними.
5. Озеро Світязь славиться своєю прозорою водою, в якій міститься срібло та йод. Чистота пояснюється тим, що в озеро не впадає жодна річка, а свіжу воду йому постачають підземні джерела. За глибиною озеро не має рівних в Україні, тому і називають його українським Байкалом. Посеред озера є мальовничий острів з романтичною назвою — Острів закоханих. До нього можна дістатися човном. Тут ви будете відчувати себе на сьомому небі від щастя.

# Unit 3

## A CITY IS MORE THAN A PLACE IN SPACE

### I. LEAD-IN

1 Match the name of the city with its description.

Lviv Odesa Ivano-Frankivsk Pereyaslav-Khmelnytsky Chernihiv

- a) For centuries it has often been a crossroads for different cultures, which is why it is rich in architecture and prominent sites that make it a wonder for travellers from all over the world. It is known for its uniqueness, and one of its unique features is the local humor. Legend has it that its first mayor, French Duke de Richelieu, wanted to make a city surpassing Paris in beauty. Although today we can't compare the French capital with the pearl of the Black Sea, there is no doubt that Richelieu succeeded in making a city of unique beauty. Its official birth date is the year 1794.
- b) It is often called "little Paris." The numerous statues and figures of lions, squares and museums, cafes and parks of this city seem to be created for couples in love. If you come to this city once, you will remember it forever. Indeed, how could one forget the world of ancient legends, the jazzy jangle of trams, the cosy coffee houses, and its noble residents? The magnetism of it is antiquity, aristocratic atmosphere, aromas of coffee and love, mixed in proportions that create an unsurpassed charm.
- c) This town was founded as a private fortress of the Potocki family (Polish nobles) in the mid 17th century. In 1772 it was passed to the Austrian Empire. In the Soviet period of its history it was named after the famous Ukrainian writer. The town boasts its fascinating architectural landmarks: the Stanislav fortress, Potocki palace, the Cathedral of the Holy Resurrection, the Church of Virgin Mary and many others.
- d) In the southern portion of the Kyivan Rus' this city was the second by importance and wealth. It is home to the oldest church in Ukraine — the 5-domed Saviour Cathedral that dates back to the 11th century, and the magnificent Trinity monastery.
- e) It is the third oldest town in Ukraine after Kyiv and Chernihiv. There are museums of all possible kinds, ranging from collections of ancient sculptures and jewellery to embroidered towels, historical weapons and even bread. It is here that the mightiest prince of the 12th century Volodymyr Monomakh wrote his Letter to Prince Oleh Svyatoslavovych.



## Unit 3. A city is more than a place in space

### 2 Use the cues to describe the following towns/ cities.

#### Poltava

the Poltava Battle Museum/ 1709 one of the decisive battles between Russia and Sweden / defeat the Swedes/ displays relating to the battle/ maps/ painting/ Peter I's original uniform;



#### Luts'k

an ancient Slavic town/ founded around a wooden castle built by the Rurik Dynasty/ 19 Orthodox and two Catholic churches/ built 15<sup>th</sup> century/ the seat of two Christian bishops/ nicknamed the Volynian Rome/ the most prominent landmark/ Lubart's Castle/ built in 1340s.



#### Donetsk

the fifth-largest city in Ukraine/ founded in 1869/ a Welsh businessman, John Hughes/ construct a steel plant and several coal mines around the region/ currently home to/ two major professional football teams in Ukraine;



#### Kharkiv

a university founded in 1805/ the country's third after the universities of Moscow and Kazan at the time/ in 1918 the capital of Ukraine/ Derzhprom late 1920s/ first Soviet skyscraper/ concrete and glass blocks.



## II. VOCABULARY **SIGHTSEEING**

### 3 Look at the example and re-write the expressions in a similar way.

E.g. A tour during which you visit two cities — a two-city tour

1. A tour during which you visit three countries —
2. A tour that lasts two weeks —
3. A tour with a guide —
4. A tour without a guide, you chose what to see —
5. A trip on Saturday and Sunday —
6. A trip to the shops to buy things and souvenirs —
7. An excursion that will last from morning till evening —

What kind of trip or tour would you recommend for visiting cities/ towns mentioned above. Use expressions from the exercise.

E.g. It is impossible to fully appreciate Lviv without a guided tour.

A week-end trip is more than enough to explore Pereyaslav-Khmelnytsky.

### III. SPEAKING

4 Answer the questions.

1. What are the main tourist attractions of your city/ town? How long will it take to see them?
2. Where did you do sightseeing when you were at school? Who did you go on sightseeing tours with?
3. Would you recommend visitors to your city/ town to buy a guidebook and a map not to get lost?
4. What are good places to taste the local cuisine?
5. Which do you prefer: to take leisurely strolls to have a look around or to go to a social events?
6. What handmade souvenirs can tourists buy?

### IV. VOCABULARY

• a statue	• a venue	• a palace	• a dome
• a fountain	• prominent	• a castle	• cobblestone
• a sculpture	• a decisive battle	• a fortress	• a craft
• folk culture	• a native/ home town	• a mansion	• an ornament
• a fresco	• an open-air museum	• a cathedral	
• a façade	• an icon	• botanical gardens	
• a handmade souvenir	• a tourist attraction	• a conservatory	

5 Find the words in the box which mean the following:

1. the front of a building, especially a large and important one
2. a place where an organized meeting, concert etc takes place
3. a picture of Christ, his mother or a saint painted on a wooden panel
4. a small round stone set in the ground, to make a hard surface for a road
5. a round roof on a building
6. a room with glass walls and a glass roof, where plants are grown
7. a very large strong building, built by important people in the past as a safe place that could be easily defended against an attack
8. a large and impressive a house
9. the official home of a person of very high rank, especially a king or queen
10. the main church of a particular area under the control of a bishop
11. a well-protected place which is intended to be difficult for enemies to enter

6 Use the words in the sentences of your own.

E.g. Here you can buy some *handmade souvenirs* representing traditional rural *crafts*.

7 Use the correct word to fill in the gaps in the sentences. You may use the same word more than once.

antiquity    antique    uniquely    uniqueness    unique    authenticity    authentic

1. She has a \_\_\_\_\_ ability to communicate with animals of all kinds.
2. Cicero was an eloquent orator of \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The diverse wildlife of the island just enhanced the \_\_\_\_\_ of nature around us.
4. Archaeological evidence may help to establish the \_\_\_\_\_ of the statue.
5. The poem was so \_\_\_\_\_ written that everybody wanted to have it in their collection.
6. She got up and crossed to a little \_\_\_\_\_ rosewood desk with tiny drawers along the top.
7. A lot of restaurants in Kyiv offer \_\_\_\_\_ Ukrainian food.
8. The issues being discussed here are not \_\_\_\_\_ to Ukraine.
9. Experts have confirmed that the signature on the letter is \_\_\_\_\_.
10. The director thought him \_\_\_\_\_ suited to the part.

### Unit 3. A city is more than a place in space

- ancient
- industrial
- coastal
- provincial
- magnificent
- lively
- deserted at night
- bustling
- crowded
- cosmopolitan
- packed with tourists
- worth visiting
- very touristy
- littered
- filthy
- polluted
- congested
- safe
- dangerous
- keeping national/ centuries-old traditions alive
- shaping the nation's culture
- picturesque
- historic
- elegant
- peaceful
- One could not but admire it
- ...is the centerpiece of the street
- Today the building is home to (library, museum)
- It can be seen from many viewpoints in the city
- The building was handed over to (university, library, museum)
- Proudly stands out among other...
- This street/ building can relate to (name of a person)/ several renowned personalities



#### 8 Translate the following sentences from English into Ukrainian.

1. They included the construction of sewage purification plants in 100 **coastal cities** and the establishment of at least 25 supervised toxic waste depots.
2. This resort complex is the perfect base for discovering the surrounding countryside with its **bustling towns**, and **picturesque villages**.
3. I think all the places in our country deserve good investments, but in reality, we see the deterioration of most **provincial towns**.
4. Istanbul is a great **cosmopolitan city**, situated between East and West.
5. Some of the highest property prices anywhere are in **polluted** Manhattan and in cleaner but nevertheless **congested central Tokyo**.
6. I cannot believe that this town which was so **crowded and packed with tourists during the day** looks so **deserted at night!**
7. Kyiv is an important **industrial**, scientific, educational, and **cultural** centre of Eastern Europe and definitely an **ancient** and **historic** city which **keeps national traditions alive**.
8. Travelling around a country I try to avoid **touristy** places, I always prefer places that **shape the nation's culture**.
9. The local museum is **worth visiting**; the exhibits there are really **magnificent!**
10. We passed a lot of small **littered** towns on the way to the border and didn't feel safe.
11. Fountains and sundials make fine **centerieces** to the garden, filled with 60,000 flowers in summer.
12. The desire to find more exhibits **related** to his great-grandfather's life in the museum made him forget about his tiredness/ fatigue.
13. **Peaceful coastal cliffs stand out** on the horizon.

## V. SPEAKING

9

Look at the pictures and say what makes your town/city attractive/unattractive to tourists and residents. Use words and expressions from the box and the following cues.

**Attractive:** sports facilities, cultural, educational, catering, transport

**Unattractive:** traffic jams, slums, vandalism, overcrowding, pollution, crime



E.g. *I live in a peaceful coastal town. Tourists find it attractive because it's historic and picturesque. However, in summer it turns into a bustling and crowded place with littered beaches and congested streets.*

## VI. WRITING

10 Writing an opinion composition.

How would you describe your birthplace?

*Plan*

- 1) Where is it located? When was it founded? What is it like?
- 2) What do you think are the strong points of the place?
- 3) What are the problems that make your place unattractive for visitors and inhabitants? Give possible solutions. Remember to include examples and reasons in order to support your opinion.



### USEFUL LANGUAGE

#### EXPRESSING YOUR OPINION

- In my opinion,
- I think
- In my view,

- The way I see it
- It seems to me (that)
- I (strongly) believe (that)

- I am strongly convinced (that)

## VII. READING

11 Before you read the text about Kyiv answer the following questions.

1. Where is Kyiv situated?
2. What does its name come from?
3. When was Kyiv founded?
4. When did it become the capital of Ukraine?

# Introducing Kyiv

Your first impression of Kyiv is bound to be one of surprise. Ukraine's capital is one of Europe's oldest cities, the birthplace of Eastern Slavic civilisation, and home to a **dazzling number** of Orthodox churches and cathedrals — no wonder it is often referred to as the "city of a thousand golden domes." Gilded turrets, spires and domes — some almost 1,000 years old — shine brightly all over the city, lighting up the **leafy banks** of the Dnipro and giving Kyiv a fabulous fairy-tale feel.

Kyiv-Pecherska Lavra, a **UNESCO-listed monastery**, is widely regarded as one of Kyiv's most outstanding wonders. Founded as a cave monastery in 1051, the lavra is filled with golden-domed churches, baroque buildings and orchards which are **the feast for the eyes**. Below ground, there are caves that are just as fantastical, home to subterranean churches and catacombs. If you enter these caves through the Church of the Raising of the Cross and descend into a labyrinth of candlelit passages, you will see side rooms with glass coffins that contain the unembalmed but perfectly preserved bodies of monks, more than 900 years old. Believers say that God preserved the monks, while others say the underground climate is the preserver. Either way, it's deeply moving to witness old people, as well as teens in skinny jeans, shed tears at the sight of those holy men. Religious ceremonies take place in lavishly decorated, icon-filled interiors, accompanied by beautiful choir singing and attended by crowds of pilgrims and monks. There are great collections of Scythian gold, micro-miniatures and more in museums located on the premises that **rival those of the Hermitage in St. Petersburg**. A stroll across this area is a must for those who wish to extend their knowledge of the city and capture its spirit and peculiar charm.

Though this monastery is Kyiv's most-visited attraction, **it doesn't hold all of the city's golden eggs**. There are more worldly treasures waiting to be discovered.

Zoloti Vorota, also known as the Golden Gate, is one of three similar gates originally built as part of the city's fortification in 1037 by Prince Yaroslav the Wise. After their completion, Zoloti Vorota was simply known as the Southern Gate and served as the main entrance into the city. The gate suffered major damage in 1240, when Mongol Golden Horde stormed the city and what you see today is the reconstruction.

**Just a stone's throw from** this place there's St. Sophia's Cathedral — from 1037 and listed by UNESCO for its outstanding frescoes — and St Michael's Monastery, with its sky-blue plasterwork and gold domes so shiny they **mirror the clouds**.

Heading around the left of St Michael's Monastery to the rear, you'll find the quaint funicular that runs down a steep hillside to the river terminal in the mercantile district of Podil. Although in the summer trees partially **obscure your view**, this is still the most fun public-transport ride in town.

To get a feel of the real Kyiv you must see Andriyivsky Uzviz with its quaint houses and crooked pavements. It has retained its charm despite the overflowing souvenir stalls on its cobblestones where artists sell their work. Nowadays **it is frequented by** collectors of Ukrainian crafts, Soviet memorabilia, and rare stunning photos of Kyiv.

The view of St. Andrew's Church, that blue, beautiful piece of baroque will by every means **make your heart skip a beat**. It is a magnificent interpretation of the traditional Ukrainian five-domed, cross-shaped church.

The appreciation of art isn't new to Kyiv. It runs through the city's veins. Walking through the center,





## Unit 3. A city is more than a place in space

you come across museums devoted to all kinds of art, including folk and oriental.

One of them is the Mystetskyi Arsenal, a former weapons store, is a huge art museum with big ambitions.

85 Another one is Kyiv's most impressive collection of European art is at the sumptuous Bohdan and Varvara Khanenko Museum of Arts. Bosch, Velazquez and Rubens are among the many masters represented, but they are only part of the attraction. The house 90 itself with its frescoed ceilings and intricately carved woodwork is worth the price of admission. It is packed with priceless antique furniture, ancient Greek

sculptures, porcelain figurines and paintings. The museum's climax is on the top floor — four rare icons from the 6th and 7th centuries. 95

The rotating exhibits at the world-class Pinchuk Art Centre feature elite names in the world of European contemporary art and design.

One could not but admire fountain-filled Maydan Nezalezhnosti, the city's most popular meeting place. 100 All the streets in the centre seem to spill into it, and with them spills a cross-section of Kyiv life: vendors selling food and souvenirs, tourists taking pictures of the sights and lovers sitting on the benches.

12 Explain the highlighted phrases in your own words.

13 In the text find the underlined English word-combinations equivalent to the Ukrainian phrases. What do they refer to?

1. натовпи паломників і ченців
2. старовинний фунікулер
3. підземні церкви
4. пишні інтер'єри
5. дивовижне почуття казки
6. мирські, матеріальні скарби
7. торговий/ комерційний район
8. позолочені вежі

9. рідкісні ікони
10. східне мистецтво
11. фарфорові статуетки
12. вишукані різьблені дерев'яні вироби
13. елітні імена
14. розкішний музей мистецтв
15. звивисті тротуари

14 Match the words with their definitions.

- 1) a spire
- 2) baroque
- 3) a fortification
- 4) plasterwork
- 5) catacombs
- 6) a labyrinth
- 7) memorabilia

- a) relating to the very decorated style of art, music, buildings etc, that was common in Europe in the 17th and early 18th centuries
- b) a cover made to decorate walls and ceilings with a smooth, even surface. It consists of lime, water, and sand
- c) an underground passageway or group of passageways
- d) a roof that rises steeply to a point on top of a tower, especially on a church
- e) towers, walls etc built around a place in order to protect it or defend it
- f) things that you keep or collect because they are connected with a famous person, event, or time
- g) a large network of paths or passages which cross each other, making it very difficult to find your way

15 What have you learnt about these places from the text you have read?

- Kyiv-Pecherska Lavra
- the Golden Gate
- St. Sophia's Cathedral
- Andriivsky Uzviz
- St. Andrew's Church
- Maydan Nezalezhnosti
- Bohdan and Varvara Khanenko Museum of Arts

## VIII. WRITING

### 16 Project Work

### Kyiv in One Day

Your boss of the local tourist information service has asked you to write short advertisements for a tourist information magazine that is distributed free to young travellers. Describe the chosen place of Kyiv in 5–7 sentences.

Try to create the atmosphere by describing particular details of the place. You can use your senses (sight, sound, smell, taste, touch).

E.g.: *You can touch the walls built in the 12th century.*

If possible help the reader to create the picture of the place by using images.

E.g.: *The domes of the churches are like big stars in the night sky.*

## IX. LISTENING

### 17 The guide is telling the guests about parks and gardens in Kyiv.

**A)** Listen to the first part of the text and fill in the gaps.

1. The tree that is the symbol of the city is \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Its \_\_\_\_\_ parks and \_\_\_\_\_ public gardens make it the greenest city in Europe.
3. The first part appeared in Kyiv is \_\_\_\_\_.
4. By the end of the 18th century, \_\_\_\_\_ of private manors grew in number and became more exquisite.

**B)** Listen to the second part of the text and put the pictures in the order they are mentioned in the tour. Say what features helped you to identify the parks.

*Hydropark*



*The Botanical Garden of the Ukrainian Academy of Science (Gryshko National Botanical Garden)*



*Shevchenko park*



*Mariinsky park*



C) Listen to the text again and tick which of these parks...

	National Botanical Garden	Mariinsky park	Shevchenko park	Hydropark
a) is located round the Palace built by order of a Russian monarch?				
b) is a venue of chess tournaments?				
c) has various roller coasters?				
d) can boast of its longest history?				
e) has facilities for growing exotic plants?				
f) offers sports facilities?				
g) has a famous building on its territory?				
h) has a vast territory?				

## X. READING

18 Unjumble the underlined words.

### Architectural monuments of the Transcarpathia

Frankly speaking, like most stelas in Ukraine Nevystkyi castle, situated near Uzhhorod, can hardly be called a castle. It's a kind of nrisu that vaguely remind us of medieval pomposity, votihrs and beauty.

In order to see the ridankam you have to make a little walk or to ride a bicycle, because all the cars should be left at the foot of the hill.

As to the name of the castle there are many legends connected with it. One of them tells us about the uilrab of a young man and his fiancée from the famous aristocratic families. That's why it is called Nevystkyi castle (the castle of a bride).

The very castle is a heap of stones, which sometimes looks like a window or half of a wtero. Now we can't know for sure. Unfortunately, people often remember about the netiorrtaos of ancient notmumesn only when they have almost turned into dust and you have to renew them completely.

But anyway, it is a very popular place for visiting. There are always many people and you have to stand in a line to take some pictures of the city ranmoapa and the river Uzh.



**19** Fill in the gaps with prepositions where necessary.

**The castles of the Transcarpathian region**

Fairy-tale nature of the Transcarpathian region requires fairy-tale architecture. Something like that \_\_\_\_\_ (1) Chynadieve, a unique village \_\_\_\_\_ (2) Svaliava and Mukacheve. Where else in Ukraine can you find a village with two castles?

One of them began in 1840 \_\_\_\_\_ (3) a simple wooden cabin, where the Counts of Schönborn came with their guests to relax \_\_\_\_\_ (4) hunting. In 1890 the stone castle, similar \_\_\_\_\_ (5) the illustrations in novels by Dumas, was built there. Luckily, now one can see not only the facade of the building, but also some fragments of the former interior. White clouds float \_\_\_\_\_ (6) the four differently shaped tower weather-cocks, as you gaze \_\_\_\_\_ (7) the glass paintings of the first floor chapel and glance \_\_\_\_\_ (8) the stone hall. A solemn stone lion stands guard \_\_\_\_\_ (9) the base of the wooden stairs. \_\_\_\_\_ (10) the ceiling there is a Stag Horn chandelier, the so-called "Melusina".

In Chynadieve castle you can study a calendar: 365 windows (the number of days in a year), 52 rooms (weeks), 12 entrances (months). It is strange and symbolic. People say that these walls were the witnesses \_\_\_\_\_ (11) the affair of the count's wife. When the count found out \_\_\_\_\_ (12) it, he managed to erase

\_\_\_\_\_ (13) the time of his shame \_\_\_\_\_ (14) all the clocks in the palace.

The pond was also \_\_\_\_\_ (15) one time allegoric: its outline was similar to the shape of the Austro-Hungarian Empire of those days. Now its lazy waters reflect the numerous chimneys of the palace that would throw off even Santa Claus!



**20** Fill in the gaps with articles where necessary.

**The Uzhhorod castle**

The Uzhhorod castle is \_\_\_\_\_ oldest and \_\_\_\_\_ most imposing building of modern Uzhhorod. \_\_\_\_\_ castle is located on the top of \_\_\_\_\_ volcanic hill in a very suitable place. A fortified settlement appeared on \_\_\_\_\_ slopes of the hill in \_\_\_\_\_ X century. During \_\_\_\_\_ period of Mongol and Tatar expansion the fortification was destroyed but then rebuilt and destroyed again \_\_\_\_\_ number of times.

At the end of the XVII century Count Miklos Bercheni became \_\_\_\_\_ owner of the castle and practically transformed Uzhhorod into \_\_\_\_\_ centre of cultural and political life of \_\_\_\_\_ Northern Hungary. A large library of Bercheni, a considerable archive and a collection of \_\_\_\_\_ paintings prove the fact.

Later the castle hosted \_\_\_\_\_ Treasury, \_\_\_\_\_ theological seminary and since 1947 and up to now — \_\_\_\_\_ Transcarpathian Museum of Local History.

As to its architectural history the Uzhhorod castle now appears as \_\_\_\_\_ typical building of \_\_\_\_\_ late Renaissance: a three-storied palace with \_\_\_\_\_ four

bastions, an inner yard and a well over 40 m deep. Apart from \_\_\_\_\_ very architecture, \_\_\_\_\_ mural decorations of \_\_\_\_\_ former chapel of the theological seminary done in 1857 are worth noticing.

Wonderful works of \_\_\_\_\_ local cast iron art of the middle of XIX century are in the castle courtyard. They portray \_\_\_\_\_ themes of Greek mythology.



21 Read the text and think of 5 questions to ask about this place.

### The castle of Chynadieve

The second castle of Chynadieve was not so lucky as that of the Counts of Schönborn. Its history is longer and more dramatic.

The Chynadieve fortress — with two corner towers, a-meter-thick walls and mysterious vaults — was built in the 14th century by Baron Pereni. This stronghold became the centre of the village of Chynadieve. In 1657 the fortress was destroyed by Polish troops and then rebuilt. The castle was reconstructed many times. In the 18th century they tried to make a feudal manor from this inhospitable fortress, as was in fashion at that time. The builders found a strange skeleton in the castle wall. What a field there was for legend-makers! The dramatic history of the castle was not over yet. During the fascist invasion the castle was turned into a prison.

Now nearby the fortress there is a humble house of a local artist, Joseph Bartos. A few years ago the artist

rented the castle and now he is doing his best to restore it. Thanks to him the castle has a new roof and its prospects look brighter.



## XI. LISTENING AND SPEAKING

- 22 A) Answer the questions in column C about the places in column B.  
 B) Listen to the advertisement about the places to visit in Ukraine. Match the number of the description with the name of the place.  
 C) Listen again and take notes to answer the question in column D. Are the notes in columns C and D similar? Are there any differences?

A	B	C	D
Number in the ad.	Place	Is this place worth paying a visit? Why?	According to the advertisement why is the place recommended?
	Kamyanets-Podilsky		
	Yaremcha		
	Sofiyivka Park in Uman		
	Odesa		
	the fortress of Sudak		
	Lviv		
	the Pyrohovo folk museum in Kyiv		
	Kharkiv		
	Sevastopil		

## XII. TRANSLATION

### 23 Translate into English.

1. Кожне велике місто в Україні має багато унікальних архітектурних особливостей. Київ відомий (славиться) своїми **церквами та соборами**, архітектура Харкова більш сучасна та відображає індустріальний дух міста. Туристи відвідують Львів, щоб насолоджуватися його відомою кавою та милуватися **пишно прикрашеним оперним театром**.
2. Ми відвідали дуже цікавий **особняк**, який був у великому парку на березі моря. В парку можна було побачити **пишно прикрашені фонтани, прекрасні (розкішні) скульптури**, а також **статуї левів** перед будинком. **Фасад будинку** був прикрашений **позолоченими колонами**. Ми прогулялися **тіпистими стежками** парку.
3. У Криму є декілька парків та **ботанічних садів**, які **визнані шедеврами ландшафтного мистецтва**. Вони охоплюють велику територію та **славляться колекціями різноманітних рослин**. Там можна побачити **унікальні види рослин із усіх регіонів планети**. Деякі парки мають **оранжереї, зимові садки, теплиці та розарії**. Відвідувачі можуть здійснити **одноденну організовану екскурсію** та відвідати **прекрасні виставки квітів**. Можна провести цілий день, **захоплюючись каскадними водоспадами та садами каміння**.
4. Одесу часто називають «перлиною Чорного моря», в ній є багато музеїв, спа-курортів, **пам'яток як для туристів, так і для місцевих мешканців**. Одна з пам'яток — **мережа катакомб безпосередньо під містом**. Ці **підземні тунелі** були місцем сховища під час Другої світової війни.
5. Якщо вам доведеться бути в Луцьку, не забудьте відвідати замок Любарта. Сьогодні ця фортеця — **важлива туристична пам'ятка**, яка славиться своїми давніми вежами, замком та музеєм. Можна також милуватися **чудовими мальовничими краєвидами**.
6. В художніх музеях відвідувачі можуть побачити різні **світові скарби**, такі як картини, рідкісні ікони або вишукані **різьблені дерев'яні вироби**. Найбільш **вражаюча колекція** європейського живопису знаходиться у розкішному Художньому музею Богдана та Варвари Ханенко. Будівля має покриті **фресками стелі, неоцінні античні меблі, давньогрецькі скульптури, фарфорові статуетки та картини**.
7. Прага є одним з найбільш чудових міст Європи та **місцем величезної кількості** видатних пам'яток з усіх періодів її історії. Карлів міст (Charles bridge) — **пам'ятка, що входить до списку ЮНЕСКО**. Він **рясно прикрашений** барочними релігійними статуями. З кожного боку моста є вежа. Можна піднятися на **верхівку**, щоб побачити панораму Праги та **зелені береги річки Влтава**. Цей **краєвид змушує серце прискорено битися**.



# Unit 4

## GEOGRAPHY BEING DESTINY

### I. LEAD-IN

#### 1 Quiz on Britain

- Which of these countries is smaller than the United Kingdom?  
a) Ukraine b) Ireland c) Germany
- Which of the following water bodies washes the coasts of the UK?  
a) the Atlantic Ocean  
b) the Mediterranean Sea c) the Baltic Sea
- The highest point in the UK is...  
a) Snowdon, Wales b) Ben Nevis, Scotland  
c) Helvellyn, England
- Which of the following is incorrect?  
a) Wales sits to the west of England.  
b) Northern Ireland sits to the west of England.  
c) Scotland sits to the south of England.
- How many countries are there in the United Kingdom?  
a) 3 b) 4 c) 5
- The White cliffs of Dover are made of  
a) sandstone b) granite c) chalk
- The longest river in the United Kingdom is...  
a) the Severn b) the Avon c) the Thames
- The Thames does not flow through the following places...  
a) Bristol b) London c) Oxford
- Which sea washes the north coast of Wales?  
a) the North Sea b) the Irish Sea  
c) the Baltic Sea
- What is the second busiest airport in the UK?  
a) Heathrow b) Manchester c) Gatwick
- Which city is the capital of Wales?  
a) Edinburgh b) Birmingham c) Cardiff
- Which of the mountains are called the Backbone of England?  
a) the Pennine Chain b) the Grampian Mountains  
c) the Cambrian Mountains
- The climate of Great Britain may be characterized as...  
a) continental b) maritime temperate  
c) Mediterranean
- Which of these parts of the UK is washed by the North Sea in the east and by the Atlantic Ocean in the west and north?  
a) Scotland b) England c) Wales

### II. VOCABULARY

#### 2 Use the words *cliff(s)*, *ridge(s)*, *valley* to fill in the gaps.

- The farm is in a beautiful, sheltered, quiet \_\_\_\_\_ beside the nature reserve.
- That picturesque cottage is set on a \_\_\_\_\_ in the Chiltern Hills and attracts many tourists with its quiet beauty.
- Steep mountain \_\_\_\_\_, punctuated with castles, slice into densely forested valleys.
- Mid-Atlantic \_\_\_\_\_ is a very long narrow elevation on the ocean floor that runs all the way from Iceland in the North Atlantic to Bouvet Island in the South Atlantic.
- The house stood remote, in the middle of nowhere, on the side of a river \_\_\_\_\_, surrounded with trees of many kinds.
- In my opinion, that secluded \_\_\_\_\_ with a stream was an ideal spot for wild camping.
- The coastline varies from white chalk \_\_\_\_\_ to quiet river estuaries.

## Unit 4. Geography being destiny

3 Match the words with their definitions and then fill in the gaps with them.

A)

1. the seafront	a) the land along the sea or the ocean usually where there is sand and rocks
2. the seashore	b) platform in a harbor where boats come in to land
3. a beach	c) part of the town facing the sea or the ocean
4. a quay	d) the area of sand and small stones beside the sea or a lake

B)

- Barbara sat at the end of the \_\_\_\_\_, fishing and watching the boats sailing into the harbour.
- The southern \_\_\_\_\_ is home to a good seafood restaurant and a lot of peaceful sand.
- Situated on the northern coast of Corfu, Acharavi is a growing resort with an 8 km long sandy \_\_\_\_\_ joining it to Roda.
- The town's \_\_\_\_\_ area is relatively safe (perhaps apart from traffic problems), although non-geological activities associated with swimming or boats may involve hazards.
- Boat \_\_\_\_\_ was the busiest part of the old Port of Singapore, handling three quarters of all shipping business during the 1860s.
- If you are looking for \_\_\_\_\_ apartments, we can offer two- and three-storey buildings, which spread from the beach of Adelianos Campos up to the Old National Road.
- Nature has given us a picturesque \_\_\_\_\_ and high blue mountains, the biggest desert and lake in Europe, quiet forests and huge rivers.
- It is a high quality \_\_\_\_\_ with many facilities available, so wide that even at high tide it can be enjoyed.

4 Fill in the gaps with one of the words from the box.

inhabitants — uninhabited — habitable — habitat —  
uninhabitable — habitation — inhabited

- It is interesting to watch animals in their natural \_\_\_\_\_.
- Japan is mostly mountainous and has only a relatively narrow strip of \_\_\_\_\_ land along the coasts.
- Because of the oil slick, half of the island is expected to remain \_\_\_\_\_ for another decade.
- Robinson Crusoe lived on an \_\_\_\_\_ island for many years.
- During the war, people lived in dangerous places, hazardous for their lives, which were practically unfit for human \_\_\_\_\_.
- These islands are \_\_\_\_\_ — scientists found several species of animals living here.
- People \_\_\_\_\_ the British Isles long before the Anglo-Saxon invasion.
- Is it true that this city has 6 million \_\_\_\_\_?

5 Paraphrase the highlighted parts of the sentences using these words:

predict — predictive — unpredictability —  
predictions — unpredictable — predictable

- The government's **promises** about the possible growth of economy did not impress the citizens.
- Scientists are searching for new ways to **make it possible to say in advance** when and where earthquakes will happen.
- My brother **always changes his plans suddenly**. You never know what he is going to do in a minute. **This feature of his character** is unbearable for the members of our family.
- The father's reaction to his son's asking for pocket money was **evident** — he never gave him money to waste with his friends.
- Henry often has **dreams about what is going to happen to him in the future**.
- The weather in this area **changes a lot** and it is difficult to say what it will be like in an hour.



- 6 Find the odd one out.
1. Cliff — precipice — gorge — rock
  2. Valley — gorge — river basin — ridge

3. Shelter — fell — home — dwelling
4. Marsh — fen — quay — bog
5. River — brook — reservoir — stream

### III. READING

- 7 Read the first part of the text and say if the following statements are true or false and give your reasons.
1. Britain is a geologically uniform country.
  2. Sandstone is the most important material in making English landscapes.
  3. Insular geographic position largely predetermines largely the English economy.
  4. Nearly every big British city stands on a river.
  5. Waterways were more exploited in British history than land roads.
  6. The British began building canals in the 16<sup>th</sup> century.
  7. Most big British cities are situated on the seacoast.
  8. The British watery borders have always made this country an easy target for invaders.

## England Portrayed through Geography, History and Weather

### Part 1

They say that the English national character is principally the accident of geography and weather.

The extreme variety of the English landscape was largely created by chunks of raised sea bed and fragments of land mass that began life south of the equator 600 million years ago and gradually migrated north. Britain is a random collection of soils and stones, flipped over by tectonic grazing, frozen by ice ages, sculpted by volcanoes, fried by the sun, sometimes swamped by the sea, sometimes lifted above it.

No other country in Europe packs so many different stones into such a small area as Britain does. In a thirty-mile journey, you'll come across as many different landscapes as you might cover in 300 miles in a more geologically uniform country like Canada or Australia.

You tend to find better stone in the west — granites, slates and sandstones. As you move east, the stones get younger and their quality lessens. East Anglia is largely made of sand, clays and chalk. The latter is responsible for more English landscapes than any other single rock. As well as forming the White Cliffs of Dover, it improves the quality of agricultural lands while chalk streams produce the best fishing in England.

Of all the geographic factors that have shaped England and the English the most powerful is the fact that they live on an island. Thirty per cent of

the English live within six miles of the coast. And no one in England is more than seventy miles — or two hours' drive — from the sea.

For all the closeness to the sea, most major English cities tend to be some way from it — unlike the major coastline cities like Hong Kong or Los Angeles or Cardiff, Belfast or Dublin. English cities are more likely to be on a major river, at a spot where the river has narrowed enough to be forded.

Britain is rich in waterways and almost every town stands on its river, every village upon its stream. We can see it in the names: Burton-on-Trent, Stratford-on-Avon, Kingston-upon-Thames, Newcastle-on-Tyne, and so on.

From the times of the Romans until the seventeenth century, Britain's seas and rivers were more important than roads for the transport of goods and people; many



## Unit 4. Geography being destiny

roads were mere tracks suitable only for packhorses. Most English rivers were navigable for barges for a part of their course, and heavy goods were transported either on the rivers or by sea. Rivers such as the Thames, Lea, Severn and Wye were of the utmost importance for transport. Even in the sixteenth century, attempts were made to improve the waterways by dredging and widening, and cutting off awkward bends. From making artificial cuts in rivers, it was only a short step to constructing canals to connect rivers.

Road transport was difficult, and river transport was inadequate even on the sections where the river channels had been deepened. The growing population of the country required more food, and the industries more coal. The first canals were built to meet special needs. By the end of the eighteenth century, three canals had been constructed across the Pennines.

Over the last two centuries, the Industrial Revolution, rather than the sea, has dictated the size and importance of English cities. Of the top ten most populated English cities, only Liverpool, the sixth

biggest, and Bristol, the eighth biggest, are maritime cities.

Island status has tended to make England a strong independent country. There have been very few invaders in the past 2,000 years and no invaders at all for nearly 1,000 years. Watery borders are harder to

cross than terrestrial ones. The Spanish Armada, Napoleon or Hitler never crossed the English Channel or landed in Britain.

The cramped quality of island life also means that, for all the tolerance shown by the English, they like putting barriers against any real interference in their private life. The desire for privacy extends to a lack of interest to the world outside

Britain, intensified by the English happening to speak the world's most popular language; not much need to learn another.

It also makes for a relatively unsophisticated people — afraid of foreign food and foreign languages; happier to speak English and eat fish and chips on Spanish package tours, rather than risk embarrassment, and an upset stomach, by striking out on their own abroad.



### 8 Translate the following phrases using words and phrases from the text.

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• щільно населений (2 варіанти),</li><li>• придатний для мешкання,</li><li>• острівне положення,</li><li>• якість каміння стає гіршою,</li><li>• покращується якість сільськогосподарчих земель,</li></ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• приморські міста,</li><li>• поглиблення дна і розширення водних шляхів,</li><li>• достатньо вузька річка для переходу вброд,</li><li>• наземні кордони, втручання у приватне життя,</li><li>• обмежене у просторі острівне життя.</li></ul> |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### 9 Read the second part of the text and answer the questions.

1. What does the author mean by calling Britain a “longish and thinnish” island?
2. What are places with higher temperatures sheltered with?
3. Where are the so-called ‘cold spots’ situated and what is specific about them?
4. Why is the Gulf Stream supposed to be the most powerful factor in producing the English climate?
5. What determines the density of population in different areas in Britain?
6. In what ways do the variety, gentleness and unpredictability of English weather influence the English life?

Part 2

English weather may not be extreme, but that doesn't stop it from being unique. Britain is a longish, thinnish island, stretching roughly north-south across several climate zones. When you move east or west towards the coast, or north towards cooler weather, you get varying extremes of temperature.

The temperature also depends on how sheltered a place is. Torquay's seafront palm trees can only survive because they are protected by Dartmoor and Exmoor to the north. English urban garden squares are sheltered by terraced houses on all sides in winter; and the squares enjoy early warmth at the beginning of summer because of the greater heat of city centres.

The reverse is true too: some parts of England are decidedly unsheltered. Across the country, there are pockets of extreme cold where dense cold air sinks into natural basins producing very low temperatures in winter and in early autumn, making leaves from the trees fall earlier than higher up the valley. In Redhill, Surrey, and Rickmansworth, Hertfordshire the temperatures are fifteen degrees lower than in central London, which is only fifteen miles from them. Fortunately, there are not so many cold spots in the country.

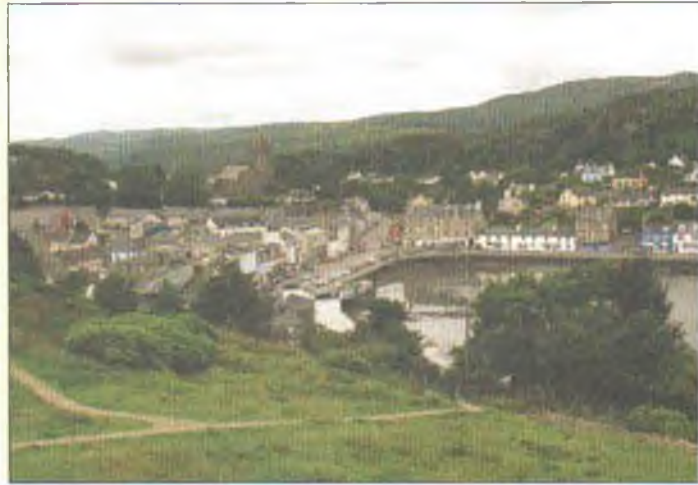
The most powerful factor in producing the climate and Englishness of the English weather is the Gulf Stream. London is on much the same latitude as Calgary in Canada, Kyiv in Ukraine and Irkutsk in Siberia, but it doesn't share the weather conditions of those places since London is warmed by the Gulf Stream. It's because of the Gulf Stream that daffodils bloom in Cornwall in spring before all other counties; that is why parts of Cornwall don't get their first frost until December, while other bits of the country get hit in early October. For the same reason azaleas, rhododendrons and camellias do well in the county.

The variety of English weather conditions dictates which parts of England are heavily settled, which parts better suited to agriculture, which best left

to semi-wilderness. But practically every corner of the country is made habitable due to the combination of meteorological, geological, and geographic factors. You might not want to live on the slopes of Scafell Pike, England's tallest mountain (3,209 feet), but it is habitable all the same.

That's largely why England is now the sixth most densely populated major country in the world, with 401 people per square kilometre. England, with fewer wild places than Wales or Scotland, is particularly packed. Taken as a whole, the United Kingdom drops to the seventeenth most overcrowded country in the world, with 255 people per square kilometer and the overall population of 63.7 million.

It is the gentleness of English weather, combined with its unpredictability that makes it such a popular subject for conversation. It's because of that unpredictability, too, that the English talk so appreciatively of sudden warm snaps, that they strip off and dive into the sea the moment the sun comes out — they know it's not going to last. Hospitable climate makes the English obsessive gardeners and obsessive walkers.



10 In the text find the words derived from the same roots and explain their meaning.

1. nation — \_\_\_\_\_
2. hospitality — \_\_\_\_\_
3. to predict — \_\_\_\_\_
4. crowd — \_\_\_\_\_

5. wild — \_\_\_\_\_
6. power — \_\_\_\_\_
7. to inhabit — \_\_\_\_\_
8. obsession — \_\_\_\_\_

11 In 7–10 sentences summarize all the facts that prove how the island life tells on the English national character.

## Unit 4. Geography being destiny

12 Nine sentences or phrases have been removed from the text below. Choose from the A–I the one which fits each gap (1–9).

- A. several holiday resorts located
- B. offers ideal hiking opportunities
- C. Two-thirds of the population can be found here
- D. that make up
- E. the coast with its stunning national parks

- F. home to 641 famous fortresses
- G. the largest city and capital
- H. Lying on a mountainous western peninsula of the island of Great Britain
- I. the second largest urban area

### Wales

Wales (Welsh: Cymru) is one of the countries (1)\_\_\_\_\_ the United Kingdom. Rich in history and natural beauty, Wales has a living Celtic culture distinct to the rest of the UK. Travelers are attracted to Wales because of its beautiful landscape, including the mountains and (2)\_\_\_\_\_, the wealth of history and a large number of imposing castles.

(3)\_\_\_\_\_. Wales is bordered to the east by England, while the Republic of Ireland sits to the west across the Irish Sea.

Wales is geographically and culturally divided into three regions. North Wales with (4)\_\_\_\_\_ along the coast is primarily a rural area with the highest mountains in the UK south of Scotland. Mid Wales is a sparsely populated region of mountains, moorlands, forests, wide river valleys and a coastline facing the Irish Sea, and South Wales. The South is by far the most urbanised area. (5)\_\_\_\_\_, especially in the eastern half. The western half is rural and includes some stunning coastal scenery.

Wales has many picturesque cities and towns such as Cardiff, (6)\_\_\_\_\_ of Wales; Swansea, Wales' city by the sea and (7)\_\_\_\_\_. Wales is rich in history, culture, myth and legend. Known as 'the land of castles', it is (8)\_\_\_\_\_ — more castles per square mile than anywhere else in the world.

Snowdonia, known in Welsh as Eryri (land of the eagles), is a land of high peaks, steep, plunging valleys and open moorland. Rocky mountains, glacial lakes, waterfalls and wilderness compete for attention. Wales' highest mountains Snowdon is the highest mountain in Wales and (9)\_\_\_\_\_.

## IV. LISTENING

13 Listen to the guide and fill in the table with the information about what makes the places attractive to tourists.

<i>Place</i>	<i>Famous for</i>
the city of Bournemouth	
the New Forest	
Lamington	
Burley	
Salisbury	
Dorset	

14 Decide which place is the most appropriate one to these people and explain why.

	<i>The tourist(s)</i>	<i>Destination</i>
1	Two biology students interested in local habitats	
2	A young man who hopes to hire and ride a bike around the area	
3	Someone who is interested in tasting local dishes	
4	A company of friends planning to celebrate a birthday in the open air	
5	An old lady who is mostly interested in art	
6	A young couple who just want to spend the day together walking around a beautiful town with interesting views to take pictures of	
7	Some overseas tourists who are eager to have a deeper look into British history	
8	The father who wants to show his son how people live and work on a farm	

## V. VOCABULARY

15 Fill in the gaps in the text below with prepositions wherever necessary.

### The Countryside of Britain

The countryside of Britain is well known (1) \_\_\_\_\_ its beauty and a lot of contrasts: its bare mountains and moorland, its lakes, rivers and woods, and its long, often wild coastline. Many of the most beautiful areas are national parks and are protected (2) \_\_\_\_\_ development. When British people think (3) \_\_\_\_\_ the countryside they think (4) \_\_\_\_\_ farmland, as well as open spaces. They imagine cows or sheep (5) \_\_\_\_\_ green fields enclosed (6) \_\_\_\_\_ hedges or stone walls, and fields of wheat and barley. Most farmland is privately owned but is crossed (7) \_\_\_\_\_ a network of public footpaths. Many people associate the countryside (8) \_\_\_\_\_ peace and relaxation. They spend their free time walking or cycling there, or go (9) \_\_\_\_\_ the country (10) \_\_\_\_\_ a picnic or a pub lunch. (11) \_\_\_\_\_ summer people go to fruit farms and pick strawberries and other fruit. Only a few people who live (12) \_\_\_\_\_ the country work (13) \_\_\_\_\_ farms. Many commute to work (14) \_\_\_\_\_ towns. Many others dream (15) \_\_\_\_\_ living in the country, where they believe they would have a better and healthier lifestyle. The countryside faces (16) \_\_\_\_\_ many threats. Some are associated with modern farming practices, and the use of chemicals harmful (17) \_\_\_\_\_ plants and wildlife. Land is also needed (18) \_\_\_\_\_ new houses. The green belt, an area of land (19) \_\_\_\_\_ many cities, is (20) \_\_\_\_\_ increasing pressure. Plans to build new roads are strongly opposed (21) \_\_\_\_\_ organizations trying to protect (22) \_\_\_\_\_ the countryside. Protesters set up camps to prevent, or at least delay, the building work.

16 Fill in the gaps in the text with the words from the box.

•venture •screams •captured •timber •scary •sword •elm •covered •woodlands

### Forests and Woods

When the islands were first settled, oak forest probably (1) \_\_\_\_\_ the greater part of the lowland: forests of Scots pine, the higher ground and, perhaps, some of the open moorland. Over the centuries, the forest area was progressively diminished, the (2) \_\_\_\_\_ being utilized in the ship-building industry. Today (3) \_\_\_\_\_ occupy only about 8.5 per cent of the total land area.

The most common trees found in England are oak, beech, ash and (4) \_\_\_\_\_. An oak can live a thousand years or more — there is one in Sherwood Forest said to have hidden Robin Hood. An oak is more than its timber; an oak is time. Our ancient woodlands connect us to the past. They are living history. Sherwood, Wychwood, Epping, Wyre, Whittlewood, the New Forest... The names are so romantic!

When we were children, we lived in Hundred Acre Wood with Pooh and Tigger, or the Wild Wood of The Wind in the Willows. Tolkein's Mirkwood full of giant spiders seeded itself into Harry Potter's Forbidden Forest. The trope of the wood as magical, strange, sacred, (5) \_\_\_\_\_, alive, unknown, crosses cultural time from Dante to Avatar.

Walking into the woods at night can be scary, but when the woods are said to be haunted, few dare to (6) \_\_\_\_\_ in. Some woods and forests have a rich history indeed. Screaming Woods sit just south of what is said to be the most haunted village in Britain, Pluckley. The woods get their name because of the blood curdling (7) \_\_\_\_\_ people sometimes hear coming from the forest late at night. Described as the most haunted woodland in Kent, Screaming Woods is said to be haunted by a highwayman who was (8) \_\_\_\_\_ by villagers, brought to the woods, pinned to a tree and killed with a (9) \_\_\_\_\_, and a screaming man who is said to have fallen to his death.

17 Choose the right option and read about British villages.

The villages of Britain evoke a sense of timelessness and peace, though each is unique and offers its own brand of "Britishness."

5 Castle Combe, Wiltshire with its beautiful stone houses *dating back/ since* hundreds of years is known as one of Britain's prettiest villages. The *ideal/ idyllic* village has even attracted Hollywood producers who have chosen it as a *setting/ scenery* for films like *War Horse*, *Stardust* and *Doctor*  
10 *Doolittle*. The Market Cross monument is the *centerpiece/ focus* of the village.

The chocolate-box village of Polperro in Cornwall is *described/ characterized* by its narrow winding streets, tiny fishermen's  
15 *hungalows/ cottages* and its picturesque harbour. Polperro is *famous/ notorious* for its seafood, so enjoying a fresh crab sandwich from one of the cafes is a must. Follow the coastal footpaths that will take you to the *seafront/ beach* that is  
20 often empty, even during summer.

Set in the southern Highlands of Scotland, Comrie is a beautiful village, which lies on

the *banks/ shores* of the pebbly River Earn. In the main square you'll find a striking building *erected/ designed* by the architect Charles  
25 Mackintosh. Nearby you'll find the picturesque Glen Artney, which was immortalised in Sir Walter Scott's poem *The Lady of the Lake*.

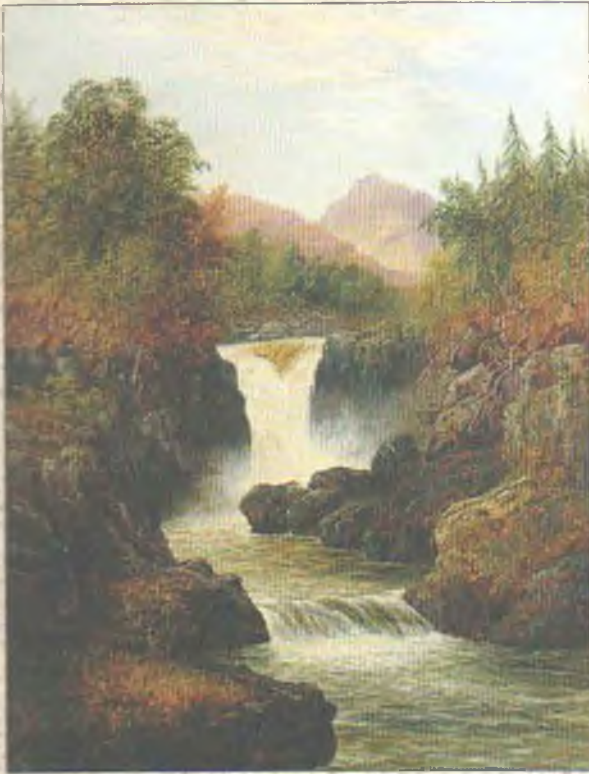
A remote, *single/ alone* line of houses makes up the tiny fishing village of Crovie, Scotland.  
30 The village curls itself around the base of the *ridges/ cliffs* that form the east side of Gamrie Bay and boasts uninterrupted views of the wild Scottish *coastline/ seafront*. Adding to Crovie's charm is the complete lack of vehicles, the road is simply too  
35 narrow to *place/ accommodate* them!

Betws-y-Coed is set in a spectacular valley in Wales and is surrounded by magnificent mountains and woodland. The picture-postcard village is home to many bridges, cafes and tourist  
40 shops. The Bridge of the Cauldron was built in 1468 and is buffeted by foaming water after *heavy/ hard* rain falls. The Motor Museum has a collection of over 30 *vintage/ antique* cars.

## VI. SPEAKING

18 Look at the pictures and describe a British country landscape using the following phrases.

- to evoke a sense of timelessness and peace
- an idyllic village
- a postcard-picture village
- an uninterrupted view
- picturesque cottages
- to add to the village's charm
- green fields enclosed by hedges
- privately owned farmland
- a network of public footpaths
- spectacular mountains/ valley
- bare mountains and moorland
- wild coastline



## VII. READING

19 Read the texts about some natural wonders of the UK and answer the questions.

A. Giant's Causeway  
B. Glen Coe

C. The Lake District  
D. Loch Ness

E. The White Cliffs of Dover  
F. Cheddar Gorge & Caves

Which place

- 1) was the home for many English writers?
- 2) is a resort offering many activities all year round?
- 3) gave its name to some things?
- 4) has the name that is explained in different ways?

- 5) has a special colour thanks to the sea?
- 6) is mentioned in legends?
- 7) was of great importance for trade and economy in the past?
- 8) has a few versions of the origin of its name?

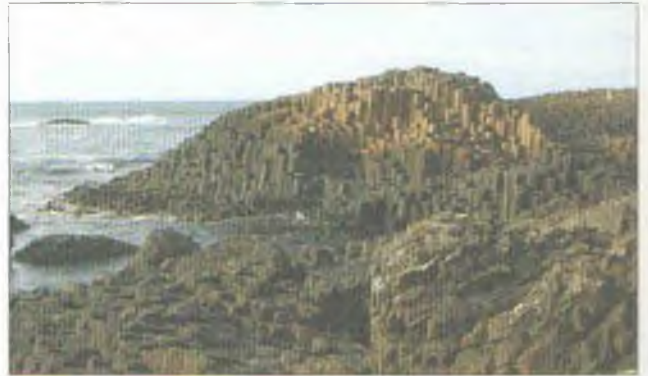
### Natural Wonders of the UK

Although the combined countries of England, Scotland, Wales, and Northern Ireland are not large by country standards, they are, nevertheless, punctuated by numerous natural areas which are not only popular with natives but are must-sees on the tourist trail as well.

1. **Giant's Causeway**, located on the northeast coast of Northern Ireland, is the most popular tourist attraction in the country. It consists of almost 40,000 columns of basalt, some reaching over 30 feet high, which are crowded together, creating an unusual ensemble.

It was declared a World Heritage Site by UNESCO in 1986, and a National Nature Reserve in 1987.

This intriguing rock formation is made up of tightly packed black basalt columns sticking out of the sea. The tops of the columns form stepping stones that lead from the cliff foot and disappear



under the sea. Most of the columns are hexagonal, although there are also some with four, five, seven or eight sides. The pillars are strangely regular, almost as if formed by human hand. Legend has it that the causeway was formed by the Irish Giant Finn McCool who wanted to cross the Irish Sea to fight his Scottish rival, the Giant Benandonner.



## Unit 4. Geography being destiny

2. **Glen Coe** is a volcanic glen (a narrow and deep mountain valley) in the Highlands of Scotland. This area is a wonderful wild world that has been neither spoiled nor changed for centuries. High mountain peaks, ridges, rushing rivers and waterfalls all merge to create a magical, mystical land waiting to be explored. The routes and opportunities for adventure are endless. In good weather, they demand a high degree of commitment; in bad weather, they can be very serious mountaineering undertakings, calling for technical



equipment and the knowledge of how to use it. Glencoe mountain resort offers mountain biking, archery, orienteering, hill-walking, climbing, chairlift rides, photography, trail building, guided walks and home cooked food in the log cabin cafe in summer. In winter skiing, snowboarding, sledging and avalanche rescue

3. **The Lake District** in the north-west of England is a favorite vacationland for many Britons as well as tourists from other countries. Its wide ranges of hills, known as fells, are interspersed with numerous lakes. The lakes are of varying sizes, some large expanses of water, such as Lake Windermere, over 16 km long, others are tiny, as Brothers Water, less than a mile in length. This place is renowned for its scenic beauty. Much of the activity in the area centers round Windermere. Somewhat bizarrely, Lake Windermere is officially a public highway — giving it the same status as a main road or an intercity motorway — and in the early 19th century cargo ships carrying coal, lumber, copper and slate were a common sight on its waters. The first steam passenger ferry was launched on the lake in 1845, just two years before the railway arrived in town, and lake cruises quickly became one of the town's most popular pastimes (and biggest earners). The area is also associated with the poet William

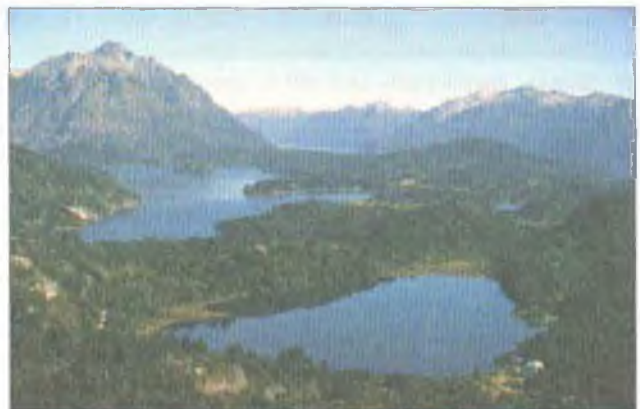
training are available. Glencoe is also an ideal base from which to explore the Highlands of Scotland, rich in history and blessed with stunning scenery that has captured the hearts and minds of all visitors. 20

The name Glen Coe is often said to mean “Glen of Weeping,” perhaps with some reference to the infamous Massacre of Glencoe, which took place there in 1692. In fact, the Glen is named after the River Coe, which runs through it, and bore this name long before the 1692 incident. One possibility is that it was named after a tribe once living in the area; however this remains speculation. 25

The third Harry Potter film, *Harry Potter and the Prisoner of Azkaban*, was shot in Glencoe in May and June 2003. The sets were located so as to take in the fantastic scenery, overlooking the Signal Rock forest to the rugged hills of the glen. 30



Wordsworth and the bestselling children's author Beatrix Potter, who was also a talented botanical painter and amateur naturalist. There is a small gallery that contains a collection of her delicate watercolours depicting local flora and fauna. 20



## Unit 4. Geography being destiny

4. **Loch Ness, Scotland.** One of the most popular tourist attractions in all of Scotland is Loch Ness. It is the second largest Scottish lake by surface area after Loch Lomond, but due to its great depth, it is the largest by volume. It contains more fresh water than all the lakes in England and Wales combined. Most people drive around the loch to attempt to spot the legendary creature which has fascinated men, women, and children all over the world. Popular interest and belief in the animal's



existence has varied since it was first brought to the world's attention in 1933. The Loch Ness Monster is a creature whose existence has been suggested but is not recognized by scientific consensus. Nessie is reputedly a large unknown animal that is said to inhabit Loch Ness in the Scottish Highlands. It is similar to other supposed lake monsters in Scotland and elsewhere, though its description varies from one account to the next.

5. **White Cliffs of Dover, England.** These chalky white cliffs lie on England's southeastern shore, facing France. They are famous as one of the first images seen by those who travel from the mainland to England. The cliffs rise up to 350 feet and dramatically herald one's arrival in England. This is one of those natural monuments that defines what it is to be British. For almost 1,000 years, Dover Castle, perched on top of the white cliffs, has stared back at those who may have cast an envious eye at England from only 20 miles away. But why are the cliffs so white? Well, they are made up of billions of the crushed shells of tiny sea creatures. A hundred and fifty million years ago, these organisms gradually settled in shallow seas. The sediments were gradually built up and later lifted to form the chalk cliffs. These are eroded by the sea,

keeping them white. But where the sea cannot reach the cliffs because of beach and sea defences, erosion stops and the cliffs become vegetated with trees and shrubs.



6. **Cheddar Gorge & Caves, Somerset, England.** Cheddar Gorge is the largest deep narrow valley in the United Kingdom. This chasm is almost 400 feet deep. It is noteworthy for both its geology and its history — the oldest complete human skeleton in Great Britain, Cheddar Man, was found in the Cheddar Caves, within the gorge. He was estimated to be 9,000 years old. These caves provided shelter for man more than 40,000 years ago. This world-famous site is an Area of Outstanding Natural Beauty, reveals many fascinating stories of our prehistoric ancestors, and is an international centre for caving and rock climbing. The gorge was formed in the Ice Age, when any water in the limestone froze, making the rock temporarily impermeable. Torrents of melt water gradually eroded the rock away to form the gorge. After the Ice Age the limestone thawed and became permeable again, so that any water on the surface seeped into the rock, leaving behind a dry valley. There are about 350 officially graded climbing routes on the 27 cliffs that make up Cheddar Gorge, which are generally open to climbers between

1 October and 15 March each year. Formed under the sea 300 million years ago, Cheddar Gorge and Caves lends their name Cheddar to many things — cheese, flowers and Britain's oldest complete skeleton. Cheddar has always been a very important, and a very special place. Its geology, prehistory, history and wildlife all have fascinating tales to tell.



20 What is described in the text as:

- a) a favourite vacationland
- b) a natural monument
- c) a wonderful wild world
- d) strangely regular
- e) the largest by volume

Explain why.

21 Find synonymous pairs among the following words and expressions.

- trail • to form • to perch on • to make up
- to be noticeable • to capture the hearts and minds
- route • fascinating • to impress greatly
- stunning • stick out of • to be situated

## VIII. WRITING INFORMAL LETTER



22 Accepting an invitation.

You receive a letter from your pen-friend who lives in England. He invites you to visit him for several days. He has only two days off to show you some places that are natural wonders of his country. Write a letter accepting his invitation and choose two places you would like to go to and explain why.



## USEFUL LANGUAGE

- I'd love to come.
- Thanks for the kind invitation.
- I can't wait to see...
- I'd choose...
- I'm sorry I haven't written for months, but I have had some personal problems.
- It's really good news that you...
- Congratulations!

- Thank you so much for your invitation to stay with you for a week in July.
- I'd really enjoy spending some time there.
- I expect what the weather will be... so I hope we can...
- Would you like me to bring anything for you?
- I would like to bring something special for you and your family.
- Thanks again for the invitation.

## IX. LISTENING

23 Match these words with their definitions.

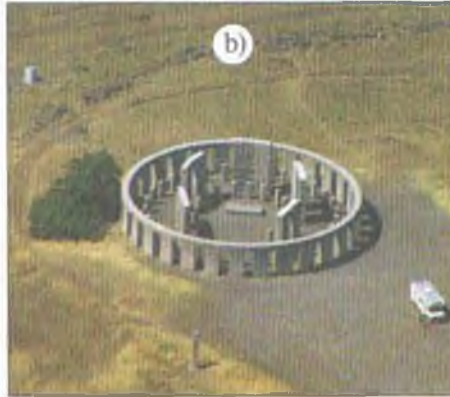
- 1. a lintel
- 2. a sun eclipse
- 3. the winter solstice
- 4. the summer solstice

- a. the longest day of the year
- b. the shortest day of the year
- c. the moment when the sun cannot be seen
- d. a horizontal beam

— **Unit 4. Geography being destiny** —

**24** Listen to the first part of the text about Stonehenge and choose the right answer.

- 1. What is Stonehenge?**
  - A 5,000-year-old wheel.
  - A set of ancient stone statues.
  - A set of giant stones arranged in concentric circles.
- 2. Which is true about the blocks of sandstone?**
  - The blocks were made of cement.
  - They were brought on the site on lorries.
  - They might have been brought from the north of England.
- 3. Where is the Heel Stone situated?**
  - In the centre of the structure.
  - In one of the circles.
  - Apart from the central group of stones.
- 4. Which theory is not true about Stonehenge?**
  - It was a place of an ancient settlement.
  - It was a place where sick people were taken care of.
  - It was a place to bury people.
- 5. Why is Stonehenge so mysterious?**
  - Archaeologists still cannot read the markings on the stones.
  - Little is known about how and why the monument was built.
  - Scholars have not been allowed to study the stones.
- 6. Which picture shows what Stonehenge looks like from above?**
  - b) c)



**25** Listen to the second part of the text about the special offer of how and when you can visit Stonehenge and fill in the gaps.

- You have an opportunity to visit Stonehenge not only in the daytime but also \_\_\_\_\_.
- Since many tourists want to get to the inner stones, it is advisable to \_\_\_\_\_ in advance.
- Each visit lasts \_\_\_\_\_ minutes.
- No more than \_\_\_\_\_ people can be in the group visiting the inner stones.
- You need a special permission to \_\_\_\_\_.
- The visitors at special hours cannot be provided with \_\_\_\_\_, but they can order guidebooks.
- Visitors should remember that \_\_\_\_\_ and catering outlet are closed.
- Visits to the inner stones are not available on \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ mornings all the year round.

## X. TRANSLATION

## 26 Translate into English.

1. Повна назва країни — Сполучене Королівство Великої Британії та Північної Ірландії. Чотири країни утворюють Сполучене Королівство — Англія, Уельс, Шотландія та Північна Ірландія. Більша частина Англії складається з долин, з невеликою гірською місцевістю на північному заході. Уельс, столиця якого Кардіф, розташований на заході, і його узбережжя омивається Ірландським морем. Його рельєф більш гірський, ніж в Англії. Шотландія складається з двох дуже несхожих районів, відомих як Шотландське нагір'я та Шотландська низовина. Пересічена місцевість нагір'я малонаселена. Низовина — район, де мешкає більшість населення Шотландії. Північна Ірландія, столицею якої є Белфаст, — пагористий район з видовищними долинами, ідилічною сільською місцевістю та дикими болотами.
2. На клімат Сполученого Королівства впливають теплий атлантичний Гольфстрім та холодні моря навколо нього. Це робить погоду як непередбачуваною, так і мінливою. Погода на Британських островах різниться в різних частинах країни, але в цілому клімат можна визначити як морський помірний. Непередбачуваність британської погоди — популярна тема для бесід, жартів і анекдотів та змушує британців насолоджуватися кожним періодом (*spell/ snap*) теплої та сонячної погоди.
3. Можливо, Лондон має найбільш відомі пам'ятки, але саме природна краса та різноманітність британської сільської місцевості збуджують почуття відсутності часу та спокою. Ідилічні села з історичними пабами, невеликими крамницями та мальовничими котеджами є в різних районах країни. В Англії ви будете захоплюватися безперервними краєвидами огорожених зелених полів; в Уельсі та Шотландії вас зачарують немов намальовані на листівках села на незайманому узбережжі, покритому величними горами та лісами. Деякі села пишуться чудовими музеями старовинних автівок, іграшок та інших диковинок.
4. Ми вирішили провести вихідні у маленькому прибережному містечку на півдні Англії. Ми ходили містом, захоплюючись дивовижною набережною з чарівними кафе, маленькими крамницями та пасажами. Причал — чудове місце, щоб насолоджуватися захоплюючими видами моря, човнів у бухті та довгої лінії узбережжя з піщаними пляжами. Після обіду у місцевому пабі ми взяли напрокат велосипеди. Це було фантастичне місце для їзди на велосипеді з нескінченими милями ґрунтових доріг, вільних від руху транспорту.
5. Історія заселення острова Ульва починається з доісторичних часів. Він розташований на захід від Шотландії та відомий мальовничістю свого ландшафту. Про його геологію, давню і сучасну історію та природу можна розповідати чарівні історії. Острів також відомий дивовижними, схожими на колони кручами, які називаються «замками» та розташовані на північному узбережжі. Хоча велика частина острова не має рослинності, у тій частині, що вкрита лісом, є багато видів дерев, включаючи сосну, берест, каштан, три види дуба, чотири види вишні та інші фруктові дерева. Цей острів багатий на історію та дивовижні пейзажі, які завойовують серця та душі всіх відвідувачів. Це чудовий незайманий світ, який ані змінюється, ані був пошкоджений протягом століть.

# Unit 5

**GOD MADE  
THE COUNTRY  
AND MAN  
MADE THE  
TOWN**

## I. LEAD-IN

- 1 Look at the photos of a few towns and cities in the UK. Use the phrases and information in the box to talk about them.

Liverpool	is widely recognized	as the birthplace of the Titanic
Canterbury	is associated with	Europe's youngest capital
Bath	is famous for	its natural hot springs and its old Roman baths
Belfast	is known as/ for	the legend of Robin Hood
Cardiff		being once the capital of a Viking kingdom
York		the birthplace of The Beatles
Nottingham		the key location for the Church of England



*Liverpool*



*Canterbury*



*Bath*



*Belfast*



*Cardiff*



*York*



*Nottingham*

## II. VOCABULARY

- |                                                               |                       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| • a metropolis                                                | • a suburb            |
| • a city                                                      | • suburban            |
| • in the city centre<br>(Br E) = in the<br>downtown<br>(Am E) | • suburbia            |
| • (the) inner city                                            | • out-of-town         |
| • a town                                                      | • on the outskirts of |
|                                                               | • to be in town       |
|                                                               | • to be out of town   |
|                                                               | • a built-up area     |

### 2 Answer the questions.

1. Can we always call a state's capital a metropolis?
2. How large should a village be to become a town and how large should a town be to be given a city status?
3. Is there a feeling of space in a built-up area?
4. Is the inner city a comfortable place to live?
5. Where do you think the British prefer to live: in the suburbs or in the centre of a city? How does this affect people's lifestyle?

### 3 Match the types of towns with their definitions.

1. a university town	a) a town that people live in and from where they travel to work in a bigger town or city
2. a boom town	b) a town or city where most of the people work for one company, which supports the whole economy of the area
3. a new town (Br E)	c) an area in or near a town (especially on the edge of a big city) where very poor people live in small houses, built of pieces of wood, metal and cardboard
4. a company town	d) a town that used to be busy and have a lot of people living in it, but is now empty
5. a dormitory town (Br E) = = bedroom community/ bedroom suburb (Am E)	e) one of two towns in different countries that have a special relationship with each other
6. a shanty town	f) one of the complete towns that were planned and built in Britain after 1946
7. a twin town	g) a town that has become rich and successful because trade and industry has developed there
8. a ghost town	h) a town where there is an outdoor market, usually once or twice a week
9. a market town (Br E)	i) a community which is dominated by its university population and the economy of which is essentially dependent on the university students and staff
10. one's home town	j) the place where you were born and spent your childhood

### 4 Translate the sentences.

1. I'll be in town next week if you want to meet.
2. Henry married a girl from out of town, and it was difficult for her to get used to the farm life.
3. The gossips finally drove Kitty out of town, and she decided to look for a better life in a big city.
4. Recently a lot of people have moved from city centres to suburbs or dormitory towns.
5. The British new towns, such as Milton Keynes, are looked on as one of the major achievements of post-war planning.
6. The municipal authorities had to solve the inner-city problems: traffic congestion, substandard housing in the slums, a high crime rate and others.
7. The only remaining obstacles are located at Wester Hailes, a residential development on the western outskirts of Edinburgh.
8. Linda grew up in an apartment in a cosmopolitan district of Manchester.
9. The weather is glorious, so we trot through the suburban roads and leafy lanes, and find a hitherto undiscovered park.
10. Jane works for a law firm in downtown Manhattan and getting to work, she is always stuck in traffic jams.

### III. READING

- 5 Read the text and answer the questions supporting your answers with the facts from the text.
1. What theory as to the origin of the name of London is mentioned in the text?
  2. How was the place for the settlement chosen?
  3. What do you know about the history of London Bridge?
  4. What geographical, meteorological and political conditions influenced the direction in which London districts developed?
  5. Is London symmetrically planned? Why did it happen?
  6. Which other cities used to be the most prominent in the course of English history?
  7. Why has London won supremacy in the last thousand years?

### London: Some Glimpses of History

When the Romans invaded Britain in the first century, the London area contained a few ancient British settlements. Some scholars claim that the name London dates back to one of these, 5 Llyn-dyn, which in Celtic meant "a fortified hill near the river." The Romans changed it to Londinium and made it an important town. The plan of the City of London remains broadly Roman, nestling next to the Thames, and 10 roughly skirted by its Roman Wall built around AD 200. It is interesting to know that it was made of the same stone from Kent that was later used on St Paul's Cathedral and the Tower of London.

15 Londinium was settled at the most easterly fordable (the narrowest and shallowest) point of the river before it grew too wide; a point where the tide can bring ships forty miles inland. That lowest fordable spot on the Thames was where 20 the Romans built the first London Bridge out of wood. Roman London's road network revolved round the bridge which was later rebuilt by the Normans in stone in the 12<sup>th</sup> century. It was replaced again in the 19<sup>th</sup> century by the bridge that was demolished in 1971 and sold to Arizona 25 where you can see it nowadays.

It's telling that the Romans chose the north, less marshy river bank as the basis for Londinium; the area that still roughly marks 30 the square mile of the City of London. The marshiness of the south bank explains why the north was settled first; and why the major administrative and commercial areas of the city were founded there. It also explains why 35 south of London has been unfashionable for centuries. The north-south divide also explains

why the majority of the city's grandest buildings with the oldest origins — Westminster Abbey, the Houses of Parliament, St Paul's Cathedral among them — are on the north bank of the 40 Thames. Note that this divide is opposite to the well-known North-South divide of the UK — the perceived economic and cultural differences between Southern England and the rest of Great 45 Britain which has been far less developed.

London's significant political, religious and commercial buildings are still on the river bank or near it. And most royal palaces are on or close to





## Unit 5. God made the country and man made the town

the river: Hampton Court, Windsor, Whitehall,  
50 Buckingham Palace etc.

After the Great Fire of London, which  
happened in 1666, the rows of new terraced  
houses migrated west from the City of London —  
the natural direction for prosperity to spread  
55 since the prevailing wind blew to the east. In the  
seventeenth century, at the time of a declining  
royal court and an increasingly powerful  
Parliament, new developments went up in and  
around Westminster.

60 Symmetrical town-planning isn't a naturally  
English thing. London, like the majority of  
other English cities, looks less impressive from  
the air — no grand avenues, no pleasing grand-  
scale geometry. But on the ground, at eye-level,  
65 it presents more surprises — more curves, more  
side streets, alleys, dead ends. The taste for  
natural development has triumphed over more  
symmetrical projects.

After the heavy bombardment of the City  
70 during the Second World War, a new financial  
centre of concrete, steel and glass skyscrapers  
was erected over the next sixty years — but  
still on the medieval plan. Buildings have been  
getting higher due to planning restrictions in  
75 old cities (cities cannot expand outwards) and  
the race in show-off high-rise, high density  
developments. The London horizon is now  
dominated by skyscrapers.

80 Before William the Conqueror invaded the  
island, London was neither the formal nor the  
informal capital of England. Canterbury was the  
religious capital, Winchester the secular one. It  
was only in the eleventh century that London  
became first the informal capital of England, as  
85 the country's biggest, richest city, and then the  
formal one.

In the last thousand years, London's supremacy  
over the rest of England has only intensified. One  
can now speak about London and Not-London  
division of Britain. London has become a place  
of attraction for the young and the talented, 90  
sucking them away from other English cities;  
and for immigrants too, who think of England  
as London. London is now an international city  
drawing in the super-rich: more than half the 95  
homes sold in London in 2010 for one million or  
more were sold to foreign buyers.



— **Unit 5. God made the country and man made the town** —

**6** Find in the text the three divisions the author speaks about. Explain what he means by each of them.

**7** Find in the text words and collocations opposite in meaning to the following ones.

- |                            |                     |
|----------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. to destroy              | 6. religious        |
| 2. modern                  | 7. minority         |
| 3. scarcely populated      | 8. poverty          |
| 4. dry (about some ground) | 9. a through street |
| 5. tiny                    | 10. developing      |

**8** Match the words to form collocations and translate the sentences.

A)

1. high	a. area
2. fordable	b. town-planning
3. commercial	c. settlement
4. symmetrical	d. spot
5. road	e. density
6. ancient	f. network



B)

1. Як найбільше і найбагатше місто у країні, Лондон поступово став її неофіційною столицею.
2. Протягом багатьох століть болотистий південний беріг ріки Темзи вважається менш престижним, ніж північні райони Лондона.
3. Лондонське Сіті було сплановано стародавніми римлянами і досі залишається середньовічним за своїм плануванням.
4. Оскільки вітер переважно віяв на схід, заможні люди будували свої особняки та будинки рядної забудови на заході від Сіті.
5. Велика пожежа Лондону і бомбардування під час Другої світової війни завдали суттєвої шкоди міським будівлям, але нові архітектурні шедеври з'явилися потому.
6. Хоча обмеження на забудівлю перешкоджало розвитку міста вшир, Лондон поглинув чимало сусідніх селищ і містечок, і зараз до нього звертаються як Великий Лондон.
7. Сьогодні Лондон вихваляється низкою показових висотних будинків зі скла і бетону.



## IV. SPEAKING

### Project work

### Choose Your London

People can discover London in different ways depending on their aims, age, interests, time and money budgets etc. If you were lucky to plan a day in London, what kind of London would you like to see? Choose one of the options and describe your day in London giving grounds for your choice. Use the following guidelines:

- |                                                |                                             |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| 1) where to spend your morning                 | 4) what to do for late-night culture lovers |
| 2) what to do after lunch                      | 5) some tips for eating out                 |
| 3) what are the options for evening activities | 6) transport to use                         |

- **Royal Day Out** (live like royalty with a regal day out)
- **Family London** (London for kids)
- **Classic London** (London's iconic attractions)
- **Budget London** (a day out with free activities and cheap eats)
- **Literary London** (Literary Day Out: Peter Pan Day Out, Sherlock Holmes London, Harry Potter's London)
- **Luxury London** (Luxury lovers will adore London's wealth of indulgent delights)

Here is a list of the most popular attractions in London which will help you to plan your itinerary.

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• London Eye</li> <li>• The Tower of London</li> <li>• Tower Bridge Exhibition</li> <li>• Buckingham Palace</li> <li>• The House of Parliament</li> <li>• Westminster Abbey</li> <li>• Windsor Castle</li> <li>• Hampton Court Palace</li> <li>• Kensington Palace</li> <li>• St Paul's Cathedral</li> <li>• Shakespeare's Globe Theatre</li> <li>• London dungeon</li> <li>• London zoo</li> <li>• London aquarium</li> <li>• Great Ormond Street Hospital</li> <li>• Museums and Art Galleries (the National Gallery, the National History Museum,</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the British Museum, the Tate Gallery of Modern Art, the Maritime Museum Greenwich, Madame Tussaud's Museum, the Sherlock Holmes Museum, the Victoria &amp; Albert Museum)</li> <li>• London parks and gardens (Hyde Park, Regent's Park, St. James's Park, Hampstead Heath, Victoria Park, Battersea Park, Kensington Gardens, Holland Park, Richmond Park)</li> <li>• Theatres: the Lyceum theatre, the Royal Opera House (Covent Garden), the Duke of York Theatre</li> <li>• Warner Brothers Studio Tour</li> <li>• Famous department stores: Harrods, Hamleys Toy Shop, Harvey Nichols</li> <li>• Places to eat: Peter Pan's café, Simpson's-in-the-Strand restaurant, McDonald's</li> </ul> |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|



## V. LISTENING

OXFORD

10 Listen to the text about Oxford and say if the following statements are true or false or information is not stated in the text.

1. Oxford's population is quickly increasing.
2. The city's population contains a very limited number of people from different parts of the world.
3. Oxford is famous for its plane building plants.
4. Oxford University Press is the only publishing house in the city.
5. Oxford University dates back to the 14<sup>th</sup> century.
6. Oxford University is the largest in the English-speaking world.
7. The variety of architecture in the town reflects its history.
8. The city was not ruined during World War II.



11 Listen to the text again and complete the following sentences.

1. A great many people have been coming to Oxford to work from \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The main car production site is located \_\_\_\_\_.
3. It is the University that brought about many \_\_\_\_\_ based businesses.
4. The speaker describes the architecture of Oxford university buildings as \_\_\_\_\_.
5. After the war Hitler planned to make Oxford his \_\_\_\_\_.

## VI. READING

12 Read the text and explain the highlighted phrases in your own words.

### Edinburgh: Scotland's Capital City

Edinburgh is the jewel in the crown of Scotland. It has several thousand buildings that are officially protected because of their architectural or historic importance — more than any other city outside London. It is also one of the oldest continuously inhabited places in northern Europe. The archeological evidence certifies that people of the Bronze Age lived in the place.

The origin of the city name is not clear yet, but historians agree that the city began around the Castle Rock. At first it was a small fortified settlement, then a castle which was the home of Scottish kings. It was often captured by enemies, demolished but then it rose again. In one of the rooms there Mary, Queen

of Scots, gave birth to James, future King of Scotland and England. The Scottish Regalia — the crown, scepter and sword of state — are on view in the Crown room.

Holyrood is the official residence of Her Majesty the Queen in Edinburgh, and is so used when the Queen or some other members of the royal family visit the Scottish capital. For that reason the palace may be closed to the public for a number of weeks in summer, but otherwise Holyrood is usually open to visitors.

Adjacent to the palace stands the ruin of Holyrood Abbey, whose history spans nearly 900 years. The abbey played a prominent role in the religious life of

30 the country, and a number of Scottish monarchs were born, married, crowned, and buried there.

The two royal residences — the Castle and Holyrood Palace — are united by a set of streets called the Royal Mile. Museums, churches, fine town houses of the nobility, stalls, taverns, — you can find every tourist attraction here. People of Edinburgh are proud of the fact so much that is worth being preserved has survived while other cities have bulldozed much of their heritage. The Royal Mile boasts of several museums that are really worth visiting. One of them is the Writers' Museum, which is a **treasure-house** of items relating to the Scottish outstanding writers Robert Burns, Sir Walter Scott, and Robert Louis Stevenson. Another is the unique Museum of Childhood, opened in 1955 as the first museum in the world of this kind. Now its five floors are filled with childhood toys and other objects connected with children's life from about 4 centuries. There is also Huntly House Museum, a typical 16th century house, packed with collections relating to Edinburgh past: social history, silver, glass, pottery and shop signs. The People's Story is an unusual museum which tells the story of ordinary people of Edinburgh, from the 18th century to the present day.

Edinburgh is often called the northern intellectual capital of Great Britain. There are three universities in the city, the oldest of which — the University of Edinburgh dates from 1583. A lot of famous scientists, inventors, painters and writers are Edinburghers. Among them Adam Smith who founded the science of political

economy. David Hume, the philosopher and historian, Alexander Bell, inventor of the telephone, James Maxwell, one of the world most famous physicists, William Playfair, architect, whose buildings helped the city to earn its label — "the Athens of the North," 65 Sir Arthur Conan Doyle, the creator of Sherlock Holmes, Muriel Spark, the world famous writer, Sean Connery, the actor, whose name will always be associated with fictional secret agent James Bond.

Few cities offer more tourist attractions than those 70 which Edinburgh people know, appreciate and are proud of.



### 13 Choose the right answer.

1. Edinburgh dates back to...  
a. the Norman castle. b. Celtic warriors. c. Scottish clans. d. Bronze Age settlements.
2. Edinburgh is considered to be one of the...  
a. biggest cities in northern Europe. b. best-planned cities in northern Europe. c. most industrially developed cities in northern Europe. d. oldest cities in northern Europe.
3. The Scottish regalia...  
a. are exhibited at Westminster Abbey. b. all belonged to Mary, Queen of Scots. c. are kept at the Castle. d. are hidden somewhere.
4. The Queen's Palace, Holyrood, is open to public...  
a. all year round. b. only in spring and winter. c. all year but for some time in summer. d. for several weeks in summer.
5. The Royal Mile is...  
a. a street. b. a district. c. a museum. d. Her Majesty's Park.
6. Which museum boasts of being the pioneer of its kind?  
a. The Museum of Childhood. b. The People's Story Museum. c. The Writers' Museum. d. Huntly House Museum.

**14** Find the words and phrases in the text that are synonymous to the following ones.

- |                                                       |                                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. to destroy                                         | 6. to evaluate positively                                                    |
| 2. an area where people live                          | 7. to have a good feature the area can be proud of                           |
| 3. to be exhibited                                    | 8. to continue for a certain period of time                                  |
| 4. an ensemble formed by several neighbouring streets | 9. important and valuable things that have been in a society for a long time |
| 5. nearby, close to                                   |                                                                              |

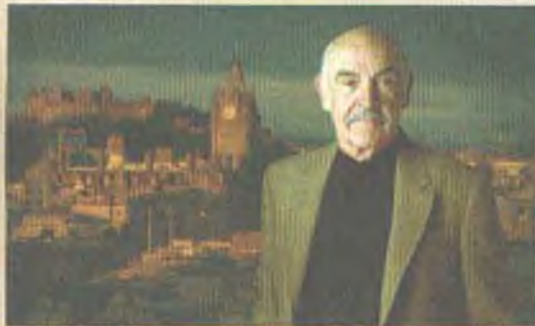
## VII. SPEAKING

**15** Look at the photos of some famous people.

Some of their names are mentioned in the text. Find some more information about these people. Say what they are famous for and how they are connected with Edinburgh. Summarize the information about each of them in 5–7 sentences.



*Andrew Bell*



*Sean Connery*



*Arthur Conan Doyle*



*Robert Louis Stevenson*



*Joanne Rowling*



*Walter Scott*



*Adam Smith*



*James Clerk Maxwell*



*Muriel Spark*

## VIII. VOCABULARY

16 Choose the correct word and fill in the gaps in the sentences.

### HISTORIC – HISTORICAL

1. In his book, Winston Churchill describes his \_\_\_\_\_ meeting with the then President of the United States, Franklin Delano Roosevelt.
2. To understand the author's message, it is important to look at the novel in its \_\_\_\_\_ context.
3. The Queen's decision to pay income tax was a \_\_\_\_\_ decision in the life of the contemporary British society.
4. Scientists are still arguing if King Arthur was a real \_\_\_\_\_ figure.
5. Founded in 1884, the American \_\_\_\_\_ Association encompasses every \_\_\_\_\_ period and geographical area and serves professional historians in all areas of employment.
6. Valentina Tereshkova, the first woman cosmonaut, started her \_\_\_\_\_ flight into space on June 16, 1963 and safely returned from her three-day mission on June 19.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ fiction is currently enjoying a tremendous renaissance, both in terms of literary and commercial recognition.
8. In our home library, there was something to suit everyone: Leo Tolstoy, Ernest Hemingway and Thomas Hardy, thrillers and spy stories, \_\_\_\_\_ novels and light romances.



### ECONOMIC – ECONOMICAL

1. Slow \_\_\_\_\_ growth and low consumer spending affected sales last year.
2. I'd like to buy a car that is more \_\_\_\_\_ on petrol.
3. In the current \_\_\_\_\_ conditions, we must keep costs down.
4. In his acceptance speech, the new Nobel Laureate said that the Government's \_\_\_\_\_ policy was damaging business in the north-east of the country.
5. Tim's a very \_\_\_\_\_ person. He always looks around for the best buys.
6. We have a very \_\_\_\_\_ heating system, so the bills aren't too high.
7. Investors are holding out from Mexican stocks until they see clear signs of an \_\_\_\_\_ recovery.
8. It's more \_\_\_\_\_ to buy the big packet — it's only 50p more than the small one.
9. It is believed that the tax breaks will stimulate \_\_\_\_\_ activity in the country.



17 Translate into English.

1. Це університетське містечко може пишатися багатьма історичними пам'ятками, які допомогли йому завоювати ім'я найбільш відомого культурного центру країни. Як будь-яке інше давнє місто, воно не має симетричного планування. Його звивисті вулички та провулки створюють чарівні райони, якими можна милуватися. Про це місто можна прочитати в багатьох історичних книгах.
2. Швидко зростаюче місто — це населений пункт, який відчуває швидкий зріст населення та економіки. Чинниками успішного зростання є близькість (proximity) до мегаполісу та/або природних ресурсів. Іноді через економічний занепад населення може покинути місто і воно перетворюється на місто-примару.
3. Деякі люди вважають за краще жити у центрі міста, щоб бути ближче до місця, де вони працюють, але іншим подобається жити у спальних районах, де є комфортне та затишне середовище, та їздити кожного дня на роботу. На щастя, для поїздок є економічні пропозиції.
4. Символом торговельного міста у Великій Британії є ринок. Торговельні міста часто виростили поблизу укріплених поселень, щоб мати їхній захист. Сьогодні це чудові історичні місця з відомими туристичними пам'ятками. Їх традиційна атмосфера та повільний ритм життя відрізняє їх від великих міст, де панують хмарочоси.
5. Мегаполіс — велике місто, яке є важливим економічним, політичним та культурним центром країни. У Сполученому Королівстві мегаполіси є багатонаціональними та створюють найбільш щільно заселені райони.





## IX. READING AND LISTENING

18 Five sentences have been removed from the text. Choose from the options A–G the one which fits each gap. There are two extra sentences you do not need to use.

- A. Liverpool is noted for its rich architectural heritage.
- B. The city won the European Capital of Culture title in 2008.
- C. The city's expansion was largely brought about by its being a major port.
- D. The city enterprises are mainly concentrated in the suburbs.
- E. Liverpool is also well known for its inventions and innovations.
- F. Liverpool's status as a port city has contributed to its diverse population drawn from a wide range of peoples, cultures and religions.
- G. Due to all this the city is often referred to as a twin city of New York.

### Liverpool

Liverpool, located on the Liverpool Bay of the Irish Sea, has always been described as having the most splendid setting of any English city. It was founded in 1207 and was granted city status in 1880. It is the fourth most populous British city.

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ By the 18th century, trade from the West Indies, Ireland and mainland Europe, coupled with the Atlantic slave trade, furthered the economic expansion of Liverpool. But Liverpool's really golden days were much later, in the nineteenth and early twentieth century, when 40% of the world's trade passed through Liverpool's docks.

(2) \_\_\_\_\_ Immigrants from Ireland were particularly numerous. The city is also home to the oldest Black African community in the country and the oldest Chinese community in Europe. The inhabitants of Liverpool are referred to as Liverpudlians but are also colloquially known as "Scousers," in reference to the local dish known as "scouse," a form of stew. The word "Scouse" has also become synonymous with the Liverpool accent and dialect.

(3) \_\_\_\_\_ There is a considerable variety of architectural styles found within the city, ranging from the 16th century Tudor buildings to modern-day contemporary architecture. As early as 1851 the city was described as "the New York of Europe" due to the skyscrapers that appeared in Liverpool. Several areas of the city centre, including many of the most famous landmarks, were granted World Heritage Site status by UNESCO.

(4) \_\_\_\_\_ Railways, transatlantic steamships, municipal trams, electric trains were all pioneered in Liverpool, together with the first societies for animal and child protection, the first schools for the blind, for workingmen, and for girls. The first British Nobel Prize was awarded in 1902 to Ronald Ross, professor at the School of Tropical Medicine, the first school of its kind in the world.

(5) \_\_\_\_\_ Capitalising on the popularity of 1960s rock groups, such as The Beatles, as well as the city's world-class art galleries, museums and landmarks, tourism has also become a significant factor in Liverpool's economy. Labelled the World Capital City of Pop, musicians of Liverpool origin have produced more hits than any other. Liverpool is also home to the UK's oldest surviving classical orchestra, the Royal Liverpool Philharmonic Orchestra, as well as the oldest surviving repertory theatre, the Liverpool Playhouse. The Liverpool Biennial festival of arts runs from mid-September to late November and comprises three main sections: the International, The Independents and New Contemporaries.

**Unit 5. God made the country and man made the town**

**19** Read the introduction to the interview you are going to hear and discuss the following questions.

1. What possible advantages and disadvantages are there for the inhabitants of the city chosen to be The European Capital of Culture?
2. Do you think your city would make a good Capital of Culture? Why? Why not?

The **European Capital of Culture** is a city chosen by the European Union for a period of one calendar year during which the city organises a series of cultural events with a strong European spirit. Preparing a European Capital of Culture can be an opportunity for the city to change the city's image and raise its popularity on the international scene. Various cultural events arranged throughout the year attract a lot of tourists and "open up" the city to the European community.

In 1985, the former actress Melina Mercouri, the then Greece's Minister of Culture, and her French counterpart Jack Lang came up with the idea of designating an annual Capital of Culture to bring Europeans closer together by highlighting the richness and diversity of European cultures and raising awareness of their common history and values. More than 40 cities have been designated so far. Being Capital of Culture helped those cities to develop their cultural side, and transformed many of them as it led to improving their economic and social conditions.



Athens — 1985



Melina Mercouri



Jack Lang



Riga — 2014

**20** Listen to the interviews and decide if these statements are true or false.

		True	False
1	The first speaker thinks local businesses will not be able to take advantage of the increase in tourism in 2008.		
2	The cost of houses has increased since Liverpool was named Capital of Culture.		
3	The second speaker is looking forward to a chance to party.		
4	Hollywood companies are going to shoot films in Liverpool during the year.		
5	There is already a lot of construction work in the centre of the city.		
6	The last speaker thinks that people have been feeling much more positive since Liverpool was chosen as Capital of Culture.		
7	Listeners will shortly be able to hear one of the people in charge of the cultural programme for 2008 speak on the radio.		

Unit 5. God made the country and man made the town

21 Read the text about the impact that the Culture Capital title had on the life of Liverpool. Fill in the gaps with prepositions: at, beyond (×2), for, from, of (×2), on (×2), to (×2), with.

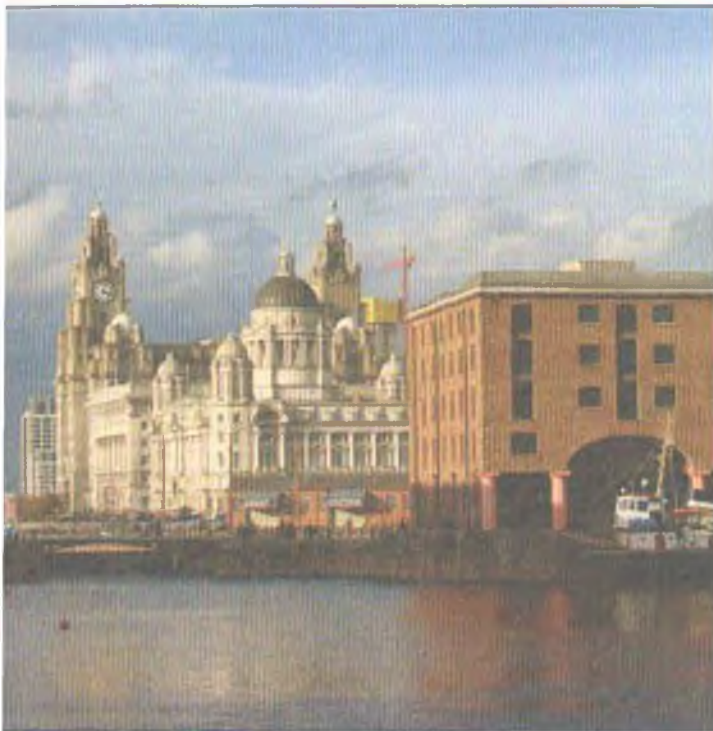
If you try to analyse the social, economic and cultural impact of the 2008 title of the European Culture Capital, you will find that the festival year saw 9.7 m visitors (1) \_\_\_\_\_ the city, an increase (2) \_\_\_\_\_ 34%, and allowed businesses in the city to earn £753.8 m. Media coverage of Liverpool's cultural attractions doubled and (3) \_\_\_\_\_ the first time in decades, positive stories outweighed negative ones focusing (4) \_\_\_\_\_ social issues. 85% of Liverpool residents agree that it is a better place to live than before.

Until 2008, general opinion of Liverpool was formed by very dated images of the city, which ranged (5) \_\_\_\_\_ positive but fixed associations (6) \_\_\_\_\_ the Beatles in the 1960s (7) \_\_\_\_\_ more negative views of social problems (from unemployment to low income and poor

health) in the 1980s, and finally Liverpool F.C. (Football Club) victories in the 1990s. The festival year presented a richer picture of the city as a modern place with a vibrant cultural life that reaches far (8) \_\_\_\_\_ music and football.

Since the festival year, there has been a 10% rise each year in arts audiences across Liverpool, and higher levels (9) \_\_\_\_\_ interest in museums and galleries. Visitor numbers (10) \_\_\_\_\_ the seven largest attractions peaked at 5.5 million in 2008. Throughout that year, 99% of the tourists said they liked the general atmosphere and 97% felt welcome.

By late 2008, it became obvious to everyone that the positive change had spread (11) \_\_\_\_\_ the city centre and had had an impact (12) \_\_\_\_\_ far-off neighbourhoods and ordinary people.



22 What do the numbers mentioned in the text refer to?

- |           |                 |                 |
|-----------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. 1960s; | 4. 9.7 million; | 7. 5.5 million; |
| 2. 10%;   | 5. 85%;         | 8. 99%?         |
| 3. 2008;  | 6. 1980s;       |                 |

## X. READING

**23** Fill in the gaps with the necessary articles and read about a wonderful small town in Northern Ireland.

### Newcastle in Northern Ireland

Newcastle, Northern Ireland, is (1) \_\_\_\_\_ small town compared to its English namesake. Its population is slightly over 7 thousand people. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ seaside resort lies on (3) \_\_\_\_\_ Irish Sea coast, and is known for its sandy beach.

(4) \_\_\_\_\_ name of the town is thought to derive from (5) \_\_\_\_\_ castle which was built in (6) \_\_\_\_\_ late 16<sup>th</sup> century and demolished in the 19<sup>th</sup> century. However, it is mentioned by name of Newcastle as early as 1433, so it is likely that (7) \_\_\_\_\_ another castle had previously stood there.

The town's history is poorly recorded and is held mostly by (8) \_\_\_\_\_ local people and their stories of (9) \_\_\_\_\_ past. There are stories of 'the Blue Lady,' (10) \_\_\_\_\_ woman abandoned by her husband whose ghost still haunts the mountains. Many of the stories are only folklore and give names to (11) \_\_\_\_\_ number of the town's attractions. Maggie's Leap, for example, is an abyss named after (12) \_\_\_\_\_ local girl called Maggie, who was chased by (13) \_\_\_\_\_ drunken soldiers while gathering the eggs of nesting seagulls. To save herself she leapt over the abyss and landed on the other side without hurting herself or breaking (14) \_\_\_\_\_ single egg.

The town is also famous for Saint Patrick's Stream because popular mythology claims that

(15) \_\_\_\_\_ nearby mountains were (16) \_\_\_\_\_ site where Saint Patrick banished the snakes from Ireland. The legend has it that there is (17) \_\_\_\_\_ rock in the stream with his hand print where he knelt down to drink (18) \_\_\_\_\_ water.

Many other places in (19) \_\_\_\_\_ Newcastle area get their names from other sources. "The Brandy Pad," a path through the mountains, is named so because of (20) \_\_\_\_\_ illegal brandy smuggling that took place through the area.

On 13 January 1843, boats from Newcastle set out for usual fishing and were caught in (21) \_\_\_\_\_ storm. 14 boats were lost in the heavy seas. Only two boats survived. 76 men perished, 46 of them were from Newcastle. They left twenty seven widows and one hundred and eighteen children. A Public Subscription was raised and (22) \_\_\_\_\_ cottages, known as Widows' Row, were built for (23) \_\_\_\_\_ families. (24) \_\_\_\_\_ local song about the disaster says "Newcastle town is one long street entirely stripped of men."

Now Newcastle is (25) \_\_\_\_\_ popular seaside resort and it attracts (26) \_\_\_\_\_ visitors from elsewhere in Northern Ireland and from abroad. In recent years (27) \_\_\_\_\_ town has started \_\_\_\_\_ large Halloween festival. (28) \_\_\_\_\_ free event includes fireworks and (29) \_\_\_\_\_ fancy dress competition.

**24** Answer the questions using the information from the text.

1. How many towns named Newcastle are there in Great Britain?
2. How much is known about the history of Newcastle in Northern Ireland?
3. Whose ghost is believed to appear in the mountains?
4. Was Maggy seriously injured when she jumped over the abyss?
5. What happened to serpents in Ireland according to popular mythology?
6. What place name is connected with criminal actions?
7. Why is one of the streets in Newcastle known as Widows' Row?
8. How much does it cost to attend the Halloween festival in Newcastle?

## XI. WRITING FORMAL LETTER

25 You want to visit an English city/ town. Write a letter to a tourist agency and ask them for more information about the place and for details of a possible tour.

### USEFUL LANGUAGE

#### ASKING FOR INFORMATION

##### Opening remarks

- I am writing to ask for your help in...
- I hope you don't mind me asking for/ about...
- I'd be really/ terribly grateful if you could...
- I was interested in your advertisement in (where it was published) and I would like to have further information about...
- I would be grateful if you could send me full details of...
- Can I request...

##### Closing remarks

- Let me know as soon as possible.
- I look forward to receiving
- Please send/ email me the details of...

## XII. REVISION TRANSLATION

26 Translate into English.

1. Глазго — найбільш велике місто Шотландії, яке широко відоме своєю культурою, стилем та дружелюбністю людей. Глазго пропонує поєднання міжнародно визнаних музеїв та галерей, чудову архітектуру, динамічне нічне життя, фантастичні крамниці та розмаїтість ресторанів та барів. Глазго завоювало титул Європейського міста культури у 1990 році. У міста є давня репутація проведення концертів живої музики.
2. Бат — ідеальне місце для чудового економічного відпочинку. Гіди пропонують безкоштовні пішохідні екскурсії та знайомлять з історією та архітектурою міста. Проведіть ранок у художній галереї Вікторія. Вхід вільний та ви можете насолоджуватися роботами багатьох провідних художників, починаючи з 15 століття і до наших днів. До обіду відвідайте дивовижне Батське абатство, останню з великих середньовічних церков Англії, яку варто подивитися всього за £2,50. Бат — єдине місто в Британії, де є природні гарячі джерела. Отож проведіть другу половину дня, насолоджуючись давньоримськими лазнями.

3. Відносно недавня, але дуже популярна туристична пам'ятка — Лондонське око, величезне колесо огляду. Воно було спроектоване та зведене у 1999 році, щоб відзначити нове тисячоліття. Це найвище колесо огляду в Європі. У пасажирів скляних капсул чудовий панорамний вид на Лондон. Можна чітко бачити багато відомих пам'яток, серед яких Букінгемський налас, собор Святого Павла та будівля Парламенту.
4. Подорожуючи Уельсом, відкрийте для себе чудові жваві міста та мальовничі села північного Уельсу. У 2012 році там навіть з'явилося нове місто; Сент Азаф (St. Asaph) став одним з найновіших і найменших міст Великої Британії з населенням тільки 3400 мешканців. Центром міста є славний собор, який вважається найменшим англійським собором у Сполученому Королівстві. Кожного року місто приймає міжнародний музичний фестиваль. Його містом-побратимом є французьке місто Бегар (Bégar). Обидва міста організують щорічні подорожі з одного міста до іншого для своїх мешканців.
5. Белфаст є компактним містом, яким легко пересуватися машиною або пішки. Розвиток промисловості сприяв формуванню міста, що також відомо як культурний центр. Доки Белфасту, місце народження «Титаніку», треба неодмінно подивитися. Ходячи по магазинах, не обмежуйтеся центром міста, багато файних крамниць розташовані по всьому місту та його околицях.

# Unit 6

## CROSSING BORDERS

### I. LEAD-IN

1 Work in groups. Discuss these questions.

- What is Ukraine famous for? Think about: its culture, sport, history, politics, cuisine, sights, religion, fashion, music etc.
- What is cultural awareness? How can it be developed? What can a lack of cultural awareness lead to?
- Read the definitions in the language note.

**Language note:**

- **Cultural awareness** — knowledge or understanding of culture.
- **A stereotype** — a fixed idea or image that many people have of a particular type of person or thing but which is often not true in reality. There are cultural, gender, racial and other stereotypes.

What stereotypes about Ukraine are the words in the box associated with?

- |              |                   |                      |
|--------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| • Shevchenko | • Russia/ Russian | • piracy             |
| • corruption | • horilka         | • unfriendly welcome |
| • borshch    | • roads           | • beautiful women    |

### II. LISTENING

2 Unjumble the phrases to make up definitions and match them to the expressions on the left.

• cultural heritage	1) part/ every/ a place/ of
• narrow-mindedness	2) a country or a society/ has had/ traditions and customs/ that/ for many years/ important
• a citizen of the world	3) disability/ ideas/ to/ opinions/ to listen/ and/ of others
• every nook and cranny	4) who/ disapproves/ traditional/ divisions/ a person/ of/ nations/ between
• to stereotype somebody as somebody/ something	5) to falsely assume / someone/ certain/ that/ has/ qualities

3 You are going to hear three people talking about their attitude to typical stereotypes about Ukraine. Note down which things from the box above they mention and anything that surprises/amuses/ interests you. Discuss them with other students.

- 4 Listen again and decide which speaker:
- has a fairly global view of the world;
  - was enchanted by the old-fashioned customs;
  - seems a bit confused about the whole issue of cultural identity;
  - is surprised by some of the stereotypes that people have about Ukraine;
  - is annoyed by a common false assumption;
  - retains a sense of political roots.



5 A Match the words from column A with words from column B to make up collocations. More than one option is possible.

A	B
to maintain	a stereotype
to breed	narrow-mindedness
to lead to	a rite
to perform	a tradition
to break	racism

B Find the corresponding definition to each collocation from (A).

- to arrange a ceremony, often for religious purposes
- to be the cause of the unfair treatment of people who belong to a different race or violent behaviour towards them
- to destroy a fixed idea or image that many people have of a particular type of person or thing, which is often not true in reality
- to make somebody unwilling to listen to some new ideas or the opinions of others
- to continue, to uphold, or to keep alive very old customs, beliefs, or legends

C Complete the statements using the collocations from (A).

- The travel writer did her best to \_\_\_\_\_ of the poor north and the rich south in her latest book about this African country.
- My extended family gets together each year to \_\_\_\_\_ this age-old \_\_\_\_\_ of having a reunion every summer.
- There are a lot of beautiful \_\_\_\_\_ that the bride and the groom \_\_\_\_\_ at a traditional old-style wedding.
- Poverty, inequality, exploitation and economic competition can \_\_\_\_\_.
- Euro 2012 attracted a lot of tourists to Ukraine and has helped \_\_\_\_\_ popular \_\_\_\_\_ about the country.
- Prejudice and lack of cultural awareness, basic knowledge or experience can \_\_\_\_\_.
- It is important to \_\_\_\_\_ by celebrating holidays and preserving customs of the country you live in or belong to.

### III. READING

## Cultures Grow on the Vine of Tradition

6 Read the text and explain the highlighted phrases.

One of the ways to get to know people of any country better is to learn about their ancient rituals and rites, their beliefs and superstitions. This cultural heritage and the common language unite people into a nation and help understand not just their historical past but ever changing present as well.

The Ukrainians have always been a very hospitable people. Even in the distant past they welcomed their guests with bread and salt placed on an embroidered towel. This tradition has survived up to now.

The Ukrainians have had an acute sense of unity with the soil, sky, Universe. For example, Kupala celebrations date from very ancient pagan times. The holiday is celebrated on the eve of July, 7. It is connected with the date of the summer solstice when the night is very dark and mysterious. Magnificent fairy-tale landscapes serve as a proper background for magic rites, songs, chants and all kinds of fortune-telling.

At night bonfires burn, ritual songs are sung, young women wearing flower wreaths and bright-coloured ribbons sing and dance barefoot in a ring. Then they go through the ritual of throwing their wreaths into a stream trying to guess what the future has in store for them by observing the floating wreaths with candles fixed on them. The girl whose wreath



floats downstream quickest of all is to be married the first. The sinking wreath means no wedding.

The participants of the rituals also try to jump over a burning bonfire, which is believed to cleanse both body and soul. The highest jumper is the luckiest. If a couple in love fails to complete a jump while holding their hands, it is a sure sign of their destined separation. Mothers can burn the shirts of their sick children in those bonfires hoping to put an end to awful diseases.

Myths about Ivan Kupala night resemble the ritual practices of other ancient religions. Somehow, this mysterious night is a bit like Halloween as dark forces, all kinds of evil witches, werewolves, vampires and ghosts are supposed to wake up, and various rites are performed to get people protected from any danger. Ancient people believed that wild animals could help them as, by magic, animals could talk during that night. They also believed in healing powers of Kupala dew which was to be used for washing the face before the dawn. Swimming was also supposed to be healing. That is why there was a tradition to pour dirty water on everyone in





sight thus making them eager to plunge into a river or lake.

Another Kupala legend that **has entered the Ukrainian mythology** is connected with searching for blooming ferns. Ferns are supposed to blossom during Kupala night. People's faith in them is based on the myth that great powers and secret knowledge are given to those who are lucky to find the blossoms, though picking them is strictly forbidden. It is also believed that miraculous fiery flowers could point to a buried treasure no matter how deep it is hidden.

A few words should be said about traditional Ukrainian amulets that **have become part of national myth**. They have been made of dried plants and other materials. Some of them, brooms, for instance, are supposed to bring success, straw brownies are believed to protect your house, bring health and wealth.

Folk reeled dolls are considered to be traditional Ukrainian heirlooms. This doll, or Motanka, as Ukrainians call it, has been kept practically in every family. Every mother made it for her child to play with and it was a symbol of goodness and tenderness. It has been used as a kind of **a mediator between** generations, between a granny and her granddaughter. Reeled dolls are often inherited by daughters from their mothers and kept till their first babies' birth.

Each doll is unique, it doesn't look the same as others but what they have in common is that they don't have a face. Ancient people believed that any reeled doll should be faceless not to resemble



anybody and not to do any harm. Sometimes ancient craftsmen painted a cross instead of a face.

According to different traditions reeled dolls were used as ritual things. Women used to make them for the rain to start or to stop, for people to avoid miseries and diseases, for newlyweds to live happily together (two dolls were given). Mothers-in-law used to give reeled dolls to their daughters-in-law on their wedding day as a symbol of peace and fertility — to give birth to happy and healthy children.

Nowadays reeled dolls and other handmade amulets are often sold as souvenirs. People buy them even if they **no longer pay any heed to a certain superstition**. But remember that Ukrainians believe the amulet that was given as a present is much stronger than the one that you buy for yourself.

## 7 Agree or disagree with the following statements.

1. The Kupala Night is a pagan ritual.
2. It is celebrated in early spring.
3. The Kupala rites are connected with the role of water in fertility and purification.
4. Both men and women wear the crowns of flowers at the Kupala night.
5. The eve of Ivan Kupala night is supposed to be the only time when ferns blossom.
6. Brooms are traditional Ukrainian amulets.
7. Reeled dolls have been passed from generation to generation.
8. Brides and bridegrooms used to be given two dolls to have at least two children.



8 Fill in the gaps with appropriate derivatives or use the word as it is.

**HEIR**

1. The cultural \_\_\_\_\_ of the country includes some ancient churches.
2. Unfortunately, both her mother and grandmother suffered from this disability: it's \_\_\_\_\_.
3. This icon has been owned by the family for many years, it is a real \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Joanna was the sole \_\_\_\_\_ to a vast estate.
5. Nick \_\_\_\_\_ his father's bad temper.
6. Unfortunately, he gambled away his \_\_\_\_\_ within a year and is now as poor as a church mouse.



**CLEAN**

1. Wipe that sink \_\_\_\_\_ when you are done.
2. Your shoes need \_\_\_\_\_.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ is next to godliness.
4. The environmentalists at the symposium were discussing a fuel that burns \_\_\_\_\_ without loss of power.
5. Many of their health problems were caused by \_\_\_\_\_ living conditions.



**MAGIC**

1. She has never been fond of stories about \_\_\_\_\_. She does not believe in tales of wizards who could work \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I cannot forget that \_\_\_\_\_ evening we spent together.
3. He wished he could wave a \_\_\_\_\_ wand and make all his problems disappear.
4. Their eyes could not leave his face for a moment. Everybody stopped talking as if \_\_\_\_\_.

**MYTH**

1. He doesn't remember much of \_\_\_\_\_. Orpheus and Odysseus seem the same person to him.
2. Contrary to popular \_\_\_\_\_, ferns do not blossom.
3. You can't possibly believe in his \_\_\_\_\_ projects.
4. Hercules is my favourite \_\_\_\_\_ hero.



## IV. TRANSLATION

## 9 Translate into English.

1. В Україні гостям приділяють багато уваги. Якщо ви у когось в гостях, ваші господарі, вірогідно, будуть показувати вам місто та його пам'ятки на протязі декількох днів. Традиційні українські погляди вимагають, щоб гостей добро приймали та щоб вони були добре нагодовані на протязі усього перебування у вашому домі.
2. Нам слід відродити цю давню родинну українську традицію. Як було за давніх часів, коли члени родини збиралися разом пізніми вечорами, щоб створювати ляльки-мотанки. Це привносило гармонію та порозуміння в родині. Таки ляльки передавалися з покоління в покоління.
3. І по цей час день на Івана Купала відомий як одне з найбільш експресивних східно-слов'янських народних та язичницьких свят. Багато обрядів цього свята пов'язані з водою, родючістю та очищенням. Дівчата, наприклад, пускали на воду річок вінки і по їх рухам передбачали долю. Хлопці та дівчата стрибали через вогнище.
4. Існує стереотип, що українці вживають занадто багато сала і що сало — майже головна страва на столі звичайних українців. Можливо, так колись і було, а традиція їсти сало дещо схожа на захоплення італійців пастою. Україна — сільськогосподарська країна і якийсь час тому вирощування свиней було звичайним (розповсюдженим) явищем у кожній родині, що мешкала у сільській місцевості.
5. Ще один стереотип про Україну — це схожість української та російської мови. Слід зазначити, що українська мова має настільки спільного з російською, як і англійська з голландською (37—38% відмінностей у словнику).
6. Українці зберегли забобони та прикмети стосовно деяких речей, як, наприклад, свистіти вдома і т. ін.



## V. READING

Drinking coffee means thinking about life...  
(John Galsworthy)

10 A) Answer the following questions.

1. What are the traditional drinks in Ukraine?  
(alcoholic, non-alcoholic, soft drinks, cordials)
2. What is your favourite everyday drink?
3. Do you know any recipes for making coffee?  
Which of them do you like best?



B) Read the article about coffee traditions in Lviv. Some sentences have been removed from the article. Choose from sentences A–F the one which fits each gap (1–5). There is one extra sentence which you do not need to use.

- A Coffee-making and drinking are strictly observed rituals.
- B Regardless of where you are or who with, drinking coffee is a common tradition.
- C Long time has passed, but love for coffee didn't fade away and made Lviv the Coffee capital of Ukraine.
- D Lviv and coffee are two notions that became one.
- E French novelist Honore de Balzac (1799–1850) called coffee "an engine of ideas." When he immersed himself in his writing, he consumed incredible 50–60 cups of coffee a day!
- F History of Coffee in Lviv dates back to the late 18th century with the coming of the Austrians who revealed all the niceties of coffee brewing for Lviv citizens in numerous cafes.



11 Find words in the article which are synonymous to the words or phrases below.

- |                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• aromatic, flavoured</li><li>• utensils</li><li>• delicious, lovely</li><li>• disgusting</li></ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• to allow yourself the pleasure of something</li><li>• to bring back</li><li>• to enjoy</li></ul> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

12 Explain what the highlighted phrases mean.



## Coffee Capital of Ukraine

When mentioning Lviv the first thing that comes to mind is good coffee. People come here not only to admire the architectural beauties, but also to feel the incomparable charms of the city, and to breathe in its amazing atmosphere.

When coffee was invented, people hated it, and even some heads of the states found it disgusting. Many people even faced punishment for drinking such a vile beverage. However, by XV century, this beverage had become one of the most favored drinks of common folk, nobles and kings alike. By the 1700s coffee had conquered the European nations and gained everyone's vote as a tasty and stimulating drink.

1) \_\_\_\_\_ Another Frenchman, the philosopher Voltaire, was also a devoted coffee drinker. His physician warned him against consuming "this slowly working poison," but Voltaire casually dismissed the worry: "You are right, it has been killing me for almost eighty years."

2) \_\_\_\_\_ Now it's impossible to imagine the old streets of Lviv without its rich seductive coffee aroma escaping from the windows of small cafés and spreading throughout the whole city. In summer Lviv citizens savour coffee and have a relaxing conversation about the latest news sitting on the city's café terraces, in winter — inside warm and cozy cafés.

3) \_\_\_\_\_ Coffee started to be more and more popular in different circles of society and soon all Lviv fell ill with coffee-mania that can't be healed. Owners of cafés were arranging evening concerts and dances, where you could hear all the latest gossip... Often cafés were the places where creative youth from Lviv was gathering. There are many poems, songs and legends about coffee, and this makes this drink mystical.



4) \_\_\_\_\_ Every year Lviv entertains all coffee lovers with "Have a Cup of Coffee in Lviv" festival, where everyone can taste all sorts of this beverage brewed in a special way according to traditional Lviv recipes.

Coffee in Lviv is not just a cup of black fragrant drink, but also the spirit of the old city, its soul and pride. Every sip you take revives its history.

Lviv coffee-houses continue to make excellent coffee which you can enjoy reading a book or a newspaper, discussing hot political or intellectual issues, waiting out the rain, watching the stream of passers-by, waiting for a date, or daydreaming.

5) \_\_\_\_\_ There is nothing more offensive to Lviv coffee lovers than instant coffee. At home coffee must be made from roasted and ground coffee beans in a Turkish-style coffee pot. Coffee in Lviv is, of course, drunk not only at home or at work. On the way home, Lviv dwellers stop at innumerable coffeehouses to have a coffee. Enjoying coffee in a public place adds something to the taste. Locals like to say that "everything starts with coffee — morning, business, and love..."



## VI. SPEAKING

### HOW SUPERSTITIOUS ARE YOU?

- 13** Read the poem by S. Silverstein and compare the superstitions described in it with those in Ukrainian culture. Are there any common ones? Do you know their origin?

If you are superstitious, you'll never step on cracks.  
When you see a ladder, you'll never walk beneath it.  
And if you ever spill some salt you'll throw some 'cross your back,  
And carry 'round a rabbit's foot just in case you need it.  
You'll pick up any pin that you find lying on the ground,  
And never, ever throw your hat upon the bed, or open an umbrella when you are in the house.  
You bite your tongue each time you say a thing you shouldn't have said.  
You'll hold your breath and cross your fingers walking by a graveyard,  
And number thirteen's never gonna do you any good.  
But I'm not superstitious (knock on wood).

- 14** Discuss the questions.

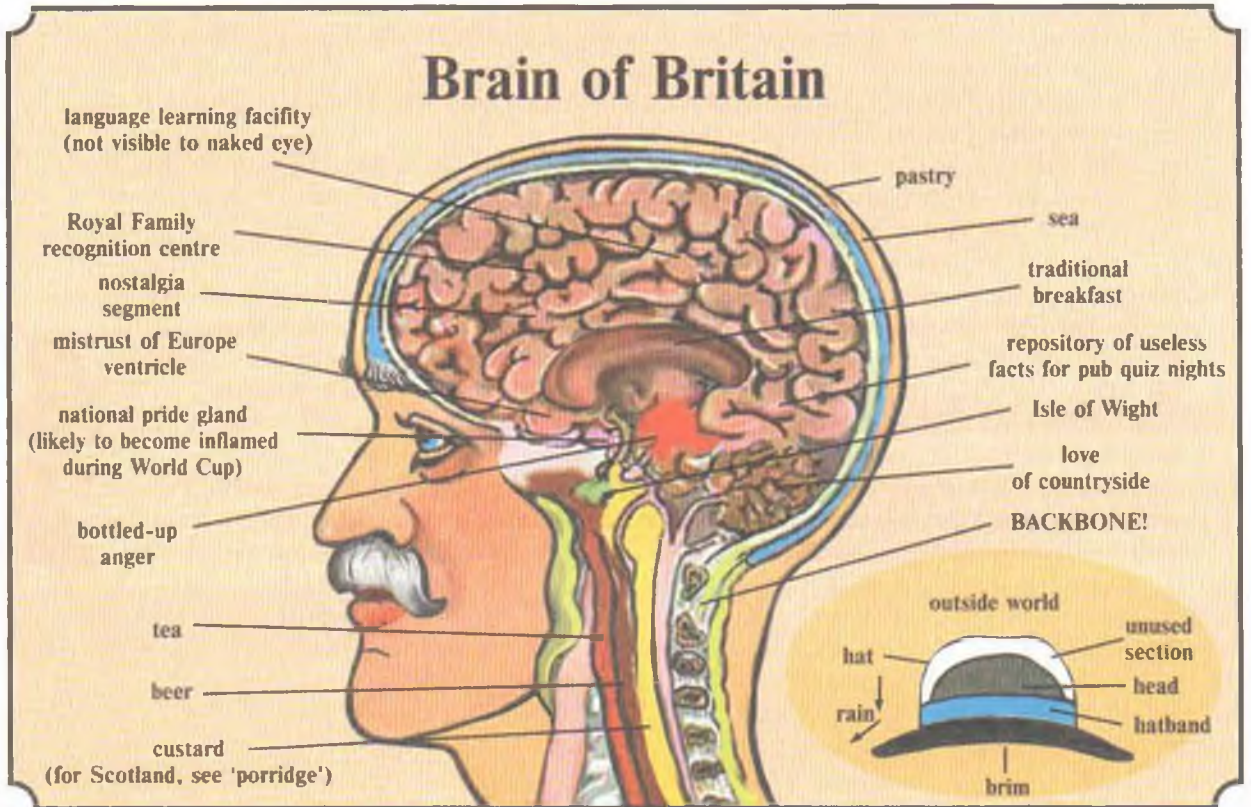
1. What things or actions are considered to bring bad luck in Ukrainian culture/ your family/ your own opinion?
2. Do you take any heed to the superstition even if you don't believe in it? For example, do you cross your fingers as a kind of insurance policy?
3. Is there any particular number that bothers you in some way or that you consider unlucky? Have you got a lucky number? What is it?
4. Do you believe in astrology? Do you read your horoscope regularly? Why/ why not?
5. Have you ever consulted a fortune-teller, palmist etc.? Do you believe in them?
6. Have you ever changed your plans because of a dream you had?
7. Do you perform any special rituals before exams? If so, what are they? Have you heard about other people's rituals that are supposed to bring them good luck?

- 15** Look at these hand-made Ukrainian souvenirs.  
Persuade a foreign tourist to buy one.



## VII. LISTENING

- 16 Look at the picture and answer the questions using what you already know about the UK and the British.



- Why do you think the language learning facility in the *Brain of Britain* is “barely visible?”
- When is the *national pride gland* likely to become inflamed and why?
- Why is the anger “bottled up?”
- What food and drink words can you find in the cartoon, and what makes them important parts of the *Brain of Britain*?
- What does the blue around the *Brain of Britain* symbolise?



## Unit 6. Crossing borders

17 A) Read the introduction to the interview you are about to hear. Match the words and phrases in bold with their explanations.

- a range of many people or things that are very different from each other; fact of including a range of many people or things
- to examine something very carefully in order to decide what is important or useful or to find something important
- to think carefully about something for a time, ignoring what is happening around you
- a somewhat arrogant attitude towards others
- all kinds of costumes featuring elements of the Union Jack and/ or any other British national & Royal symbols
- to move around the room and talk to lots of different people (at a party)
- famous or well-known for something bad

It would be valuable indeed if we were blessed with the gift to “see ourselves as others see us” as Robert Burns **mused** in his famous poem “To a Louse,” but although we’ll never achieve this sort of wisdom, it’s still fun **to sift through** some of the most common stereotypes about Britain and the British and consider which of them have any basis in fact.

Naturally, it’s impossible to generalise over the beliefs, habits and attitudes of each and every Briton, and as a modern multicultural nation we have got used to **diversity**. However, there are a few things Britons definitely have in common. For one, there is eccentricity, as evidenced by our love of **British themed fancy dress**. Then, there goes their incredible ability to combine a **stiff upper lip** with self-irony. Though known as reserved, we love parties, hanging out at pubs and **mingling**. But what about the rest of the stuff we are famous or **notorious** for? We have asked a couple of British people to comment on a number of the most common stereotypes about them.



B) Fill in the gaps with words and phrases from above in their appropriate form.

1. I sat quietly, \_\_\_\_\_ the events of the day.
2. Crash investigators \_\_\_\_\_ the wreckage of the aircraft.
3. There is a need for greater \_\_\_\_\_ and choice in education.
4. My friend has just bought a great Union Jack dress for our \_\_\_\_\_ party that we’re having to celebrate Her Majesty’s Jubilee.
5. He seems to be a nice guy at first, but when you get to know him a bit better, you feel as if he’s looking down on you because of his \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Although she hardly knew anyone at the party, she was eager \_\_\_\_\_ with other guests.
7. Scotland Yard proudly announced that they managed to arrest the \_\_\_\_\_ computer hacker who broke into the databases of banks and government agencies.





18 Now, look at the list of typical stereotypes about the British and put a tick next to the ones you think are true, and a cross next to the ones you believe are false.

Stereotype	Your opinion	Speakers' opinion
Britons love to queue		
Britons love to celebrate Royal occasions		
Britons follow certain rules when giving and going to dinner parties		
Britons drink tea all day		
Everyone in Britain is closely related to the Royal Family		
Britons consider it to be impolite to show off their new clothes		
The British are crazy about gardening and country life		

19 Listen to people talking about the stereotypes above, put a tick in the Speakers' column if they think the stereotype is true, and a cross if they think it is false. Compare with your opinion and discuss all the stereotypes.

## VIII. SPEAKING

20 Imagine that a friend of yours is planning to study in the UK for a year. He/she is going to be staying with a host family there. Give him/her some advice about the peculiarities of the British lifestyle using the information from the recording and phrases from the Useful language box.

### USEFUL LANGUAGE

- You should definitely...
- (Doing sth) is/ isn't a good idea!
- Remember to/ not to... when...
- Don't forget to...
- ...is a must!
- You shouldn't say no to...



IX. VOCABULARY

SOCIAL CITY EVENTS

- a dance/ music festival
- a marathon
- a street painting/ sidewalk chalk art competition
- a bike city marathon
- a parade
- a celebration (of...)
- an exhibition
- a fair

21 A) Complete the following collocation chart by putting ticks in the appropriate columns.

	a fair	a festival	a competition	a marathon	a parade
to attend					
to go to					
to have					
to hold					
to host					
to organize					
to run					
to stage					
to take part in					
to train for					



B) Now use the collocations in your own sentences to describe the photos.

E.g.: Victory Day parade **is staged** in our city on the 9<sup>th</sup> of May. Younger and older generations go to the parade **to celebrate** that glorious page in the nation's history.





## X. WRITING

### DESCRIPTION OF PROCESSES AND EVENTS

22 Look at the pictures and describe the social city event in 150–200 words.

Use the questions as guidelines and phrases from the *Useful language box*.

1. What event is shown in the picture?
2. What are people wearing/ doing?
3. Give details about the atmosphere of the events and the mood of the participants.
4. Give information about the ritual or the history of this event.
5. Write about your personal experience of seeing this event or participating in it, or write why you would like to take part in one.

## USEFUL LANGUAGE

- The holiday commemorates...
- Everyone is in a celebratory mood.
- The festival fosters the national spirit of the people.
- A colourful spectacle...
- ...is always very spectacular.
- People dressed in colourful costumes...
- The festival events include sports and musical gatherings.
- In the foreground/ in the background/ in the centre...

## XI. READING AND SPEAKING

23 Read the text quickly and answer the questions.

1. How long did the Days of Ukraine last in 2013?
2. What events were included in the Days of Ukraine?
3. What renowned cultural figures took part in the programme?
4. How is Taras Shevchenko related to Cambridge University?
5. How much did the tickets to the events cost?

### The Days of Ukraine in Britain

On October 17–19, 2013, London hosted an unprecedented event — The Days of Ukraine in the United Kingdom. The main aim of the event was to improve the perception of our country abroad, to promote a positive image of Ukraine as a European country with both a rich cultural heritage and vibrant contemporary culture.

The packed three day programme was a showcase of the best cultural talents that Ukraine has to offer: top composers including the genius composer Myroslav Skoryk; writers, among whom was the world-known inspirational writer Oksana Zabuzhko; the influential contemporary Ukrainian artists Alexander Roitburd and Pavlo Makov; the best-known fashion designers (Lilia Litkovskaya, Lilia Pustovit, Svetlana Bevza and others); the most popular musicians and rock stars such as charming Oleh Skrypka.

The official opening of the Days of Ukraine took place at the British Parliament with the participation of Ukrainian and British government officials, public and business leaders. Later that night, the festival continued with a gala dinner

at the Natural History Museum, where the representatives of political and business elites of the United Kingdom and Ukraine enjoyed an entertaining concert programme.

The second day of the festival was marked by a series of cultural events. The prestigious London Library brought together representatives of the British academic society for the interesting literary discussion about contemporary Ukrainian literature with Rory Finin, Head of Cambridge Ukrainian Studies, and Oksana Zabuzhko, renowned Ukrainian writer. Just before the Days of Ukraine in London, the University had announced that it named a central avenue on its campus “Taras Shevchenko Way.” As it is written on the official website of Cambridge University, “Taras Shevchenko is one of the most uncompromising and unique voices in modern European culture and this voice is becoming increasingly better known in Great Britain.”

On the same day, the Saatchi Gallery, the most prestigious modern art gallery in London, saw the opening of the Ukrainian



art exhibition of paintings, installations and sculptures by 25 Ukrainian artists. That was followed by a fashion show featuring prominent Ukrainian designers.

The three days culminated on 19 October at Potters Field Park, where traditional arts and crafts, food and music provided fun for children and adults in a stylised Ukrainian village. The finale of the festival was a concert at Potters Field Park, featuring the very best of Ukrainian pop, rock and folk artists, offering a unique taste of traditional and contemporary

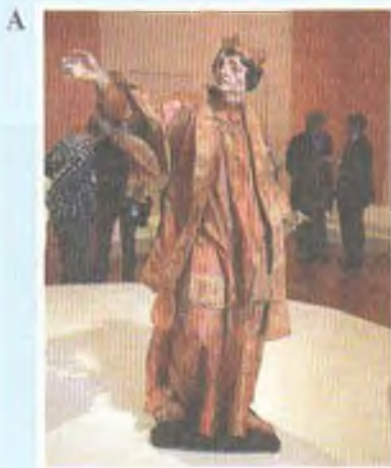
Ukrainian music. The concert and fair were totally free to the public.

The total number of Londoners and city visitors who watched the events amounted to 110–120 thousand people. “This is a wonderful initiative, with thousands of Londoners being given a unique opportunity to find out more about the magnificent culture and music that Ukraine has to offer. Never before has a Ukrainian cultural project of this magnitude taken place in London,” commented Andy Hunder, Director of the Ukrainian Institute in London.

**24** Think of any recent events or/ and Ukrainians that have recently made the news both in Ukraine and abroad, and that can make us proud.

Look at the photos and guess what headlines they go with.

1. Ukraine for Second Time Receives an Award at Cannes Festival
2. Ukrainian Students Win Microsoft’s Imagine Cup
3. Chess Queens 2013
4. Exhibition of “Ukrainian Michelangelo” in Louvre Museum
5. Ukrainian Film Selected as Entry for Best Foreign Language Oscar at 85th Academy Awards
6. Ukrainian Sand Artist Proves that Reality TV’s Got Talent



## Unit 6. Crossing borders

**25** Now use the cues to talk about each event/news story.

a) The Musée du Louvre, Paris/ hold an exhibition on Johann Georg Pinsel/ November 22, 2012 — February 25, 2013; Pinsel, often called “Ukrainian Michelangelo”/ live and create his extraordinary sculptures/ Western Ukraine/ the 18th century; unique opportunity to see/ around thirty of the artist’s most magnificent sculptures/ in the heart of European culture; works of/ famous Ukrainian Baroque sculptor/ be on display/ come to Paris from museums in Western Ukraine, Poland and Germany.



b) The FIDE Women World Chess Team Championship/ spring 2013/ Astana, Kazakhstan; Ukraine/ the winning team/ win over/ China; Anna Ushenina (born/1985/ Kharkiv)/ women’s world chess champion/ receive EUR 9,375 prize.



c) 2011 Ukrainian drama film/ be selected as/ entry for the Best Foreign Language Oscar; soundtrack/ be recorded/ participation of the National Symphonic Orchestra and Dakha-Brakha ethnic band; sign of Ukrainian cinema revival/ 3D graphics, special effects/all the bits and bobs you would expect/ modern movie.



d) Sand animator Kseniya Simonova/ winner of Ukraine’s Got Talent/ 2009/ become a YouTube phenomenon/ tell stories through sand animation; video from the show/ viewed more than a million times in one day; create over 200 new sand stories/ receive invitations from all over the world/ to perform for presidents, heads of states and royalty.



e) Ukraine's team "Quad Squad" / win / prestigious Microsoft Imagine Cup / the worldwide finals / Sydney, Australia / prize of \$25,000; present their projects: create / a glove that can translate sign language into speech / beat 75 other teams; 2013 / the student technology competition / focus on / solving the toughest problems / healthcare and the environment.



f) Ukrainian film director Maryna Vroda / receive / award at Cannes Film Festival / the Best Short Film; her motion picture Cross / joint project by Ukraine and France / 15-minute motion picture; the film / be shot within one week / cost its producers about EUR 3,500 / involve only non-professional actors.



## XII. GROUP PROJECT WORK

### PLANNING UKRAINIAN CULTURE FESTIVAL

26 Imagine that your group of exchange students in Britain is to plan the festival of Ukrainian culture at the university where you are going. What events would you include and what personalities would you ask to participate in them? Make up your version of the programme and give reasons for your selection. Use words and phrases from the box.

- to host an unprecedented event
- a genius / inspirational / world-known / influential / contemporary / prominent
- artist / writer / musician / designer / athlete
- the official opening
- an entertaining concert / programme
- a series of cultural events

- to bring together representatives of...
- to see the opening of...
- an art exhibition / a fashion show / a concert featuring / which features...
- to offer a unique taste of...
- traditional / contemporary / folk music
- a unique opportunity to find out more about



## XIII. TRANSLATION

### 27 Translate into English.

1. Типові забобони можуть багато чого розказати про націю і національний характер. Звичайно, не кожний британець буде підбирати новеньку булавку на щастя, але практично ніхто не буде відкривати парасольку вдома або проходити під драбиною. Знання забобонів — важливий компонент культурної обізнаності, яка так необхідна для успішного міжкультурного спілкування.
2. Соціологи стверджують, що майже кожна сучасна нація є мультикультурною, тому настільки важко робити узагальнення про цінності, переконання і моделі поведінки її представників. Більш того, чимало розповсюджених стереотипних уявлень про будь-яку націю розбиваються вщент, коли певний час проведеш у чужій країні.
3. Програми культурних обмінів надають унікальну можливість для багатьох громадян приймаючої країни ближче ознайомитися з видатними діячами культури інших країн, з їх творчим доробком, а також із сучасними тенденціями у живопису, музиці й театральному мистецтві. Я і мої друзі намагаємось не пропустити жодної виставки і концерту, які допомагають отримати ліпше уявлення про вируюче сучасне культурне життя інших країн.
4. Навіть якщо ти вважаєш себе громадянином світу, ти маєш пишатися своєю культурною спадщиною і зберігати власну культурну ідентичність. Дуже важливо підтримувати вікові традиції власної країни і знайомити інші нації зі своєю культурою через мистецтво, музику, національну кухню і особистісне спілкування. Все це допомагає просувати позитивний імідж країни і демонструє культурне розмаїття світу.
5. Українські народні звичаї і ритуали були пов'язані з календарем і ходом людського життя. В них часто були релігійні церемонії, народні пісні і танці. Ритуальні танці рідко виконувалися під музику; зазвичай їх виконували під акомпанемент співу або речитативу. Українська міфологія зі своїми легендами, казками і вірою у чари також простежується у національній культурі і фольклорі.
6. Місто може проводити багато різних заходів. Їх організатори мають заздалегідь продумати тему заходу, скільки людей можуть його відвідати і у яких заходах ці гості можуть взяти участь. Я, наприклад, люблю відвідувати фестивалі народної культури, де можу придбати саморобні сувеніри, побачити представників різних ремесел і скуштувати страви традиційної української кухні. Такі фестивалі допомагають розвивати національні традиції.



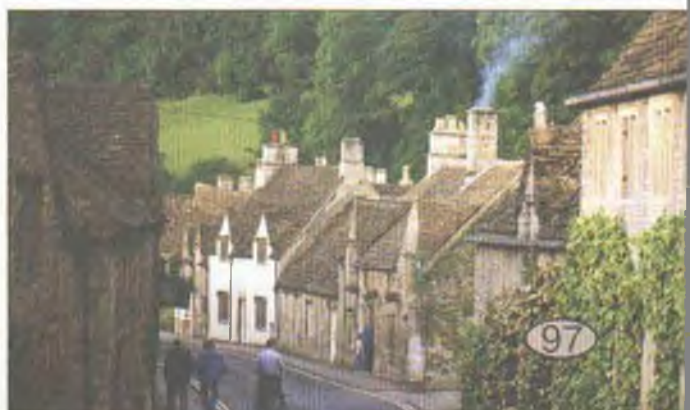
# Unit 7

## OUT AND ABOUT

### I. LEAD-IN

- 1 Look at the photos and talk about the places they show. Which place would you prefer to live in? Why?
- 2 What are the differences between life in town/city and in the country? Complete the table.

TOWN	COUNTRY
noisy, stressful	
	boring, dull
	cheap
dangerous	
convenient, comfortable	
	more open space
	clean, more fresh air
heavy traffic	
more industrialized	closer to nature



## II. VOCABULARY

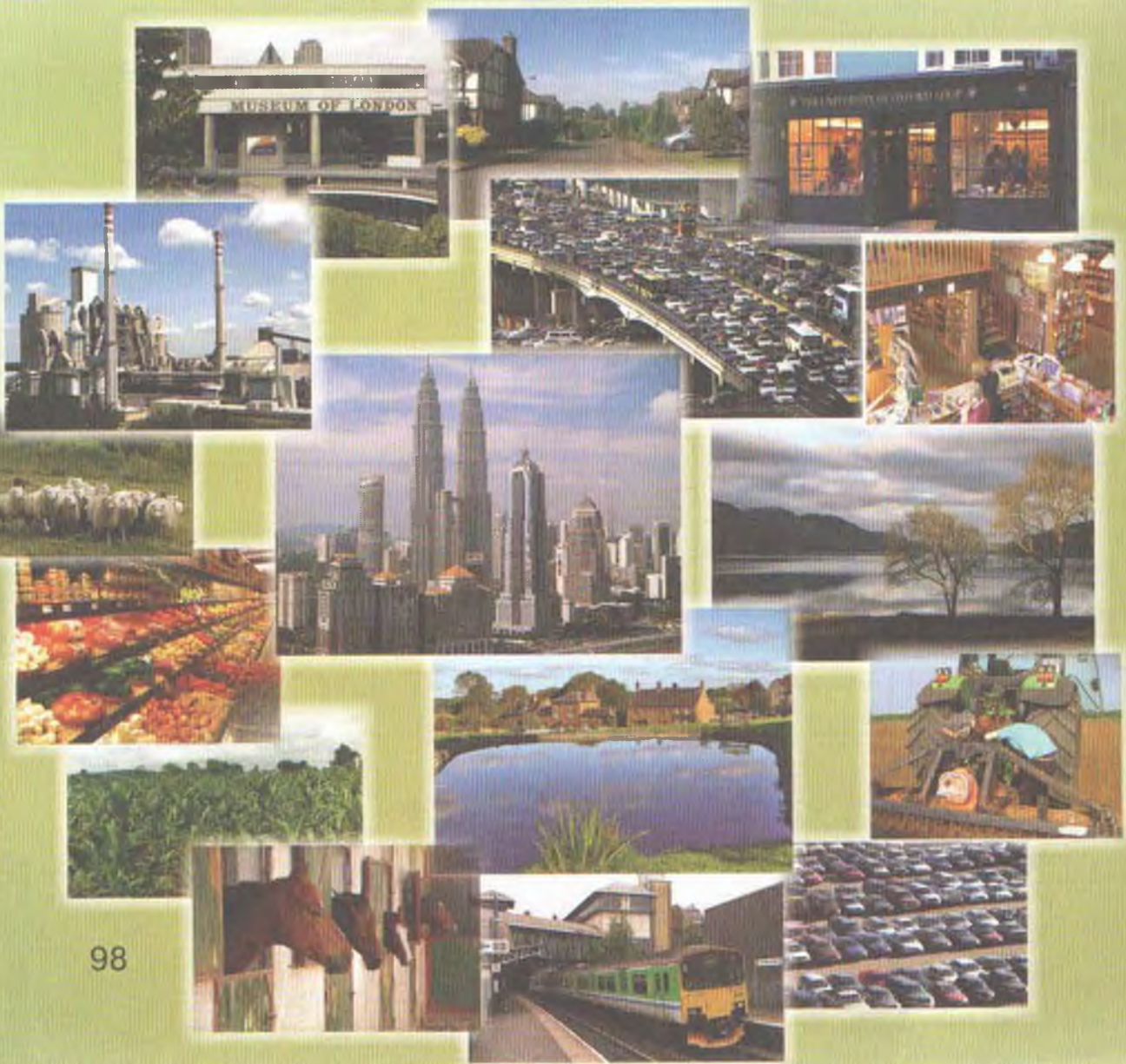
3 A) Arrange the following words into three groups and fill in the table.

Things you can usually find in...		
town	the country	both

*woods, car parks, fields, farms, libraries, shops, factories, supermarkets, suburbs, tractors, barns, restaurants, pollution, museums, cowsheds, beehives, pigsties, bars, gates, railway stations, traffic (jams), haystacks, sheep-folds, schools, stables, hen houses, valleys, skyscrapers, churches*

B) Explain the difference between the following:

- a field — a meadow;
- grass — hay;
- a plant — a weed;
- a wood — a forest;
- a trunk — a log;
- ground — soil;
- a pond — a lake;
- downtown — inner city;
- suburbs — outskirts;
- a capital — a metropolis.



4 A) Translate into Ukrainian.

1. In recent years, homelessness in New York City has reached the highest levels since the Great Depression of the 1930s. Research shows that the primary cause of this, particularly among families, is lack of affordable housing.
2. A resident had voiced concerns over the parks becoming no-go-areas for the public at night but the police have responded quickly with the extra patrols.
3. Substandard housing isn't just housing that's unattractive or outdated. It's housing that poses a risk to the health and safety of its occupants and its neighbours and visitors. Substandard housing is associated with increased risk of disease, a high crime rate, social isolation, begging and high unemployment.
4. Millions of people deal with traffic congestion on a daily basis. It occurs due to an accident, road construction or simply a high number of cars on the road. Traffic congestion can have a number of effects on people's health, the environment, and the economy.
5. The world's largest cities are merging into vast 'mega regions' characterised by overcrowding, poverty and pollution. The continuing growth of urban areas is likely to be one of the most significant factors affecting society over the next 50 years. Such mega regions will stretch hundreds of miles across countries and will be home to more than 100 million people. Last year it was confirmed for the first time that over half the world's population lives in cities.
6. Whether you have been living in a big city for several years or maybe you are thinking about moving to one, the question you might ask yourself is: "How stressful is it to live in a big city?" You should take into consideration a fast pace or tempo of life in a big city where everyone seems to walk faster, act quicker and even talk without a pause and in short sentences using loads of abbreviations. And the paradox is that in spite of all crowds of people around people usually suffer from lack of communication and loneliness.

B) People who live in big towns or cities face some problems. Choose the most serious problems, expand on them and suggest possible solutions.

*E.g. One of the major problems that city-dwellers face is traffic congestion. It is more obvious in old cities where downtown streets get clogged up in the morning and evening rush hours. The only way to solve the problem could be adding new bypasses and limiting the entrance to the downtown area.*

- |                      |                                          |
|----------------------|------------------------------------------|
| — traffic congestion | — unsafe/ no-go areas                    |
| — high unemployment  | — substandard housing                    |
| — overcrowding       | — impersonal service                     |
| — a high crime rate  | — lack of communication/ loneliness      |
| — homelessness       | — a stressful life/ a fast tempo of life |
| — begging            | — pollution                              |



### III. READING

5 Read the text and choose a sentence (A–H) to fill in the gaps (1–5). There are three extra options.

- A. I don't know how I should greet people on country roads.
- B. I wave, and my wave goes all the way to the horizon.
- C. At first the gesture is unsettling.
- D. But most likely you will be ignored.
- E. One needn't be too obvious about these things.
- F. When I see him, I get out of my car and hurry to shake hands with him.
- G. In short, they wave at all the times it's most inadvisable to wave.
- H. I see him trying to ignore me.



Every year I seem to experience an odd moment shortly after my family and I arrive at the house we rent in the country.

5 I am driving down a back road, **minding my own business**, when I gradually realize that people are waving at me. They wave from their pickups and cars, barely lifting their hands off the steering wheel. (1) \_\_\_ I wonder if they are trying to tell me my lights are on or a tire is flat. Or **perhaps it is a case of mistaken identity**. I've never seen most of these people, so who do they think they are waving at?

10 Then I remember. I'm not in the city anymore. And if anything distinguishes city folk from country folk, it's that in rural areas people make a habit of waving at strangers.

15 Soon I'm waving at everyone too. I lift my fingers a little from the steering wheel, and the other driver lifts his. Or I shift my arm outward a bit as it rests on the window frame, raising my palm, and the other driver does likewise. (2) \_\_\_ A **raised index finger speaks volumes**, and a simple nod is **eloquent in its restraint**.

20 When I pass our neighbor, he salutes me with his customary broad, slow wave, which makes him look as though he's cleaning a window. His wife **waggles her fingers** to wave hello; I can almost imagine her saying, "Tootle-ooo!"

30 People in the country will wave whether they're going sixty miles an hour or ten. They wave on narrow curves, on the crests of hills or driving into a blinding sun. Often they wave in town when they should be watching for pedestrians. (3) \_\_\_

If for some reason I forget to wave back — say I am **fiddling with the radio dial** — I can't help but feel **a twinge of guilt**. Did the people who just waved know me? Were they neighbors? Do they think I'm **putting on airs**? I worry that I've **violated one of the cardinal principles of the universe**, ordained when the first good person waved hospitably to another from his cave.

To understand the geographical nature of this custom, try a simple test: wave from your car at strangers along a city street. You may be stared at as if you are crazy. (4) \_\_\_ I also suspect that if a city person spent a couple of weeks on country roads, he'd be waving just as much as any dairyman, cowboy, logger, beekeeper — or darn-fool visitor like me.

The reason is that, in the country, the human figure stands out against the landscape; it demands recognition. A wave is simply the easiest way of confirming that recognition. But I think waving is also a way of **recognizing the setting around the human figure**.

I wave at the farmer passing me in a pickup, and my wave extends to the grasses swaying along the roadside, the line of trees tossing in the wind, the billowing white clouds. (5) \_\_\_

And so, as long as I'm in the country, I'm **a dedicated waver**. Howdy, I wave to the far range of mountains. Howdy, I wave to the horses trotting in the fields. Howdy, I wave to the kids and dogs romping in the yard.

When I pull into the driveway, my wife waves from the porch. Then she tries to teach our baby daughter to do the same. Howdy, I wave to them. Howdy, I wave. Howdy! Howdy!

6 Answer the questions.

1. What seems strange to the writer when he comes to the country?
2. How does the writer greet people on country roads?
3. What is the writer's attitude to waving as a way of greeting people?
4. What experiment does the writer suggest?
5. How does the writer explain the habit of country people's waving to each other?
6. Why does the writer call himself a 'dedicated waver'?

7 Explain the highlighted phrases in the text in your own words.

## IV. VOCABULARY

8 Find the English equivalents in the box to the following phrases.

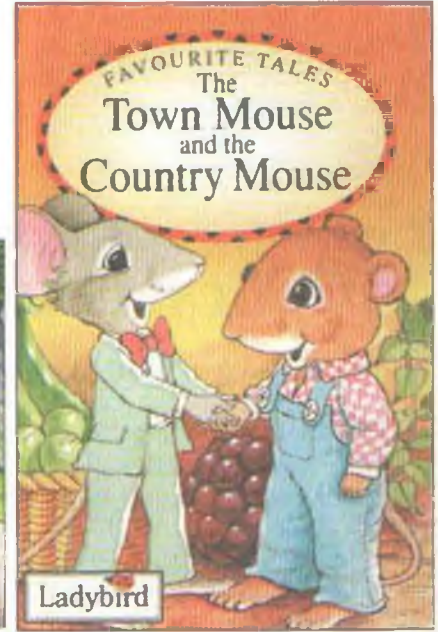
- жити в бетонних джунглях;
- бути оточеним недоторканою мальовничою сільською місцевістю;
- шум та метушня у місті;
- насолоджуватися жвавим нічним життям;
- урівноважити роботу та особисте життя;
- загрузнути в мишачій метушні;
- жити в халупі в нетрях великого міста;

- побудувати міцні співтовариські стосунки;
- прагнути мирного та спокійного життя в передмісті;
- жити в оточенні хмарочосів, що підносяться до небес;
- полюбляти більш повільний темп життя за містом;
- летіти на яскраві вогні великого міста;
- потерпати від жадливих заторів на вулицях міста.

City life	Country life
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• to live in a city/ a town/ an urban environment/ (informal) a concrete jungle/ the suburbs/ shanty towns/ slums</li> <li>• to enjoy/ to like the hustle and bustle of the city life/ the vibrant/ the lively nightlife</li> <li>• to get caught up in the rat race</li> <li>• to be surrounded by towering skyscrapers</li> <li>• to prefer/ to seek the anonymity of the life in a big city</li> <li>• to head for the bright lights (of the big city/ London)</li> <li>• to cope with the stress/the pressure of urban life</li> <li>• to have/ to be close to all the city facilities</li> <li>• to use/ to travel by/ to rely on public transport</li> <li>• to put up with/ to get stuck in/ to sit in massive/ huge/ heavy/ endless/ constant traffic jams</li> <li>• to tackle/ to reduce the heavy/ severe traffic congestion</li> <li>• to suffer from pollution</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• to live in a village/ in the country/ the countryside/ an isolated area</li> <li>• to enjoy/ to like the relaxed/ the slower pace of life/ the great outdoors</li> <li>• to look for/ to find/ to get a little peace and quiet</li> <li>• to need/ to want to get back/ closer to nature</li> <li>• to escape/ to quit/ to get out of/ to leave the rat race</li> <li>• to be surrounded by the open/ unspoilt/ picturesque countryside</li> <li>• to seek/ to achieve a better/ healthy work-life balance</li> <li>• to seek/ to start a new life in the country</li> <li>• to create/ to build a strong sense of community</li> <li>• to live off/ to farm/ to work the land</li> </ul>

## V. SPEAKING

- 9 A) Do you know the traditional English fairy tale about the Town Mouse and the Country Mouse? Which mouse are you?  
 B) Using the expressions from the VOCABULARY section talk about why you like/ dislike the city life or the country life. Name as many advantages/ disadvantages as possible. Have you ever moved from the country to town or vice versa? Why? Would you like to change the lifestyle you have today? Why? In what way?



## VI. LISTENING

- 10 Listen to four people talking about where they live. Complete the table by ticking the correct box.

	<i>They live in the city</i>	<i>They live in the country</i>	<i>Are they happy?</i>
<i>Speaker 1</i>			
<i>Speaker 2</i>			
<i>Speaker 3</i>			
<i>Speaker 4</i>			

## VII. READING

- 11 Read the text and decide whether the statements are true or false.

- The population of cities keeps increasing, and will soon exceed the number of people living in rural areas.
- The more cars city dwellers have, the happier they feel.
- Living in car-dependent neighbourhoods away from city centres makes people more trustworthy and friendly.
- People move to large cities because these places are richer and make people happier.
- Though expensive cars make their owners proud, they do not make commuting more pleasant.
- Higher level of stress during driving is good for drivers' health because it makes them think quickly and clearly.
- Research shows that those people who commute by train suffer from stress less than those who drive to work in rush hours.
- The more people take up cycling in cities, the safer streets become for both cyclists and drivers.

What makes a city a great place to live — your commute, property prices or good conversation?

The United Nations had just announced that some day in the following months, one more child would be born in an urban hospital or a migrant would stumble into a metropolitan shantytown, and from that moment on, more than half the world's people would be living in cities. By 2030, almost 5 billion of us will be urban.

When we talk about cities, we usually end up talking about how various places look, and perhaps how it feels to be there. But city life is as much about moving through landscapes as it is about being in them. Is urban design really powerful enough to make or break happiness? The most dynamic economies of the 20th century produced the most miserable cities of all, the US Atlanta, Phoenix, Miami, cities totally dominated by cars.

A Swedish study found that people who endure more than a 45-minute commute were 40% more likely to divorce. People who live in monofunctional, car-dependent neighbourhoods outside urban centres are much less trusting of other people than people who live in walkable neighbourhoods where housing is mixed with shops, services and places to work. Their finding was seemingly straightforward: the longer the drive, the less happy people were. For a single person, exchanging a long commute for a short walk to work has the same effect on happiness as finding a new love.

The sad part is that the more we flock to high-status cities for the good life — money, opportunity, novelty — the more crowded, expensive, polluted and congested those places become. The result? Surveys show that Londoners are among the least happy people in the UK, despite the city being the richest region in the UK.

Drivers experience plenty of emotional dividends. They report feeling much more in charge of their lives than public transport users.

An upmarket vehicle is loaded with symbolic value that offers a powerful, if temporary, boost in status. Yet despite these romantic feelings, half of commuters living in big cities and suburbs claim to dislike the heroic journey they must make every day. The urban system neutralises their power.

Driving in traffic is tough for both brain and body. The blood of people who drive in cities is a stew of stress hormones. The worse the traffic, the more your system is flooded with adrenaline, that, in the short-term, gets your heart pumping faster and helps sharpen your alertness, but in the long-term can make you ill. Researchers found that whether commuters were driving or taking the train, peak-hour travellers suffered worse stress than fighter pilots or riot police facing mobs of angry protesters.

But one group of commuters report enjoying themselves. These are people who travel under their own steam. They walk. They run. They ride bicycles.

Dozens of cities have now dabbled in bike programmes, including Paris, Lyon, Montreal, Melbourne, and New York. In 2010, London introduced a system, dubbed Boris Bikes for the city's bike-mad mayor, Boris Johnson. As more people took to bicycles, the number of bike accidents fell. This phenomenon seems to repeat wherever cities see a spike in cycling: the more people bike, the safer the streets become for cyclists, partly because drivers adopt more cautious habits when they expect cyclists on the road. There is safety in numbers.

By spending resources and designing cities in a way that values everyone's experience, we can make cities that help us all get stronger, more resilient, more connected, more active and free. We just have to decide who our cities are for. And we have to believe that they can change.



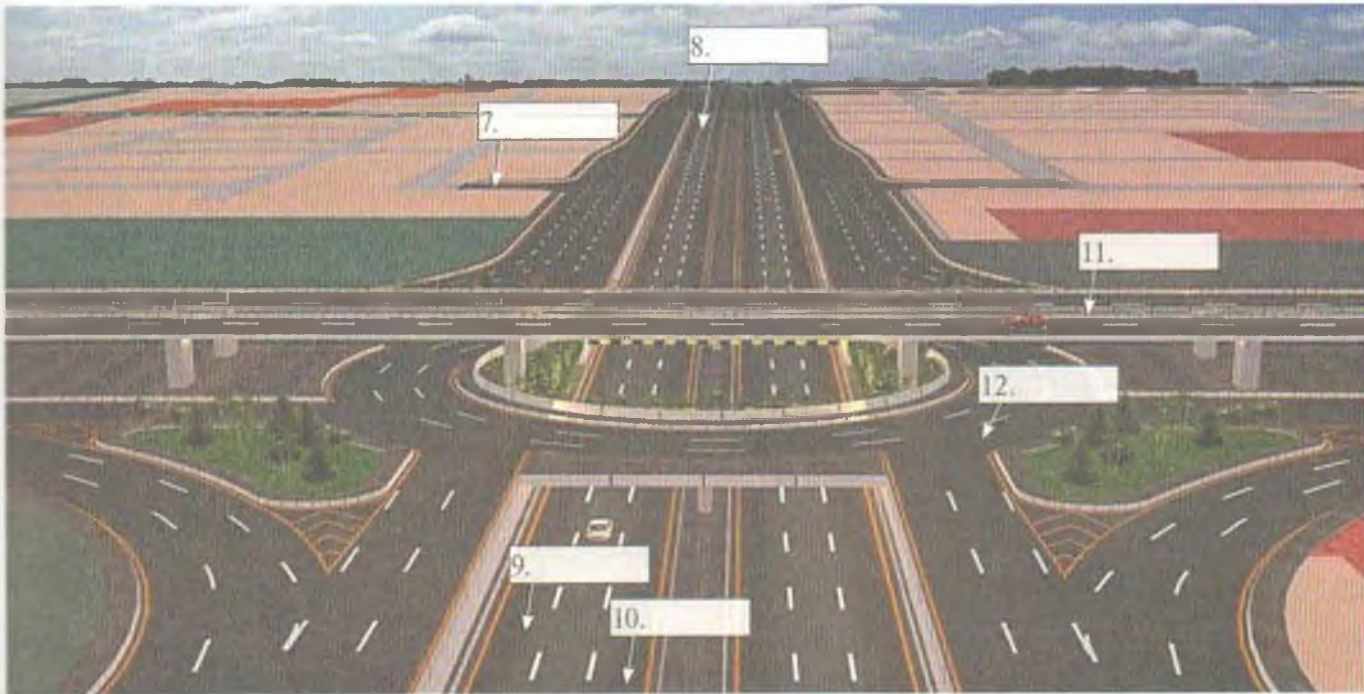
## VIII. VOCABULARY ON THE ROAD

- a main road
- a side road
- a ring road = a bypass
- a motorway (Br E) = a freeway, a highway (Am E)
- a flyover (Br E) = an overpass (Am E)
- a roundabout (Br E) = a traffic circle (Am E)
- an underpass
- a crawler lane (Br E) = a slow lane (Am E)
- a fast lane
- a crossroads = an intersection
- a kerb (Br E) / a curb (Am E)
- a pavement (Br E) / a sidewalk (Am E)
- a crossing = a zebra crossing
- a pelican crossing
- a hard shoulder
- a pedestrian

12 Label the picture using the words and phrases from the Vocabulary box.







Note that the picture shows the left hand traffic.

**13 Match the following expressions with their definitions.**

- |                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1) a side road<br/>2) a main road<br/><br/>3) a flyover<br/>4) an underpass<br/>5) a hard shoulder<br/>6) a crawler lane<br/>7) a pelican crossing</p> | <p>a) a bridge that takes one road over another road<br/>b) a place on some roads in Britain where someone who wants to cross the road can stop the traffic by pushing a button that changes the traffic lights<br/>c) the area at the side of a big road where you are allowed to stop if you have a problem with your car<br/>d) a special part of a road that can be used by slow vehicles so that other vehicles can go past<br/>e) a road or path that goes under another road or a railway<br/>f) a road that is smaller than a main road, but is often connected to it<br/>g) a large and important road</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**14 Use the words and phrases from the Vocabulary box in the sentences.**

- The modern \_\_\_\_\_ improves on such designs. This is an important distinction because the older traffic circles aren't always easy to navigate, so they haven't been very popular.
- Linda made her way across the road at a pedestrian \_\_\_\_\_ and stood in front of the City Hall.
- We spent a year designing a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ so pedestrians don't have to cross A54 road.
- Fifty vehicles were involved, ten people were killed, many more hurt on the three-lane \_\_\_\_\_ just outside Swindon.
- We didn't want to enter the city because we knew that it would take a lot of time so we took the \_\_\_\_\_.
- Cars in the \_\_\_\_\_ were travelling at over 80 miles an hour.
- Christopher wandered along the \_\_\_\_\_ looking into the shop windows.

## Unit 7. Out and about

- 15** About 1.24 million people die each year in road accidents. From 20 to 50 million more people suffer non-fatal injuries, with many incurring a disability as a result of their injuries. Safety is a shared responsibility for all road users, including drivers and pedestrians. Read the tips how to improve road safety for everyone and arrange them under the following headings (A–F).

Safety tips for pedestrians	Safety tips for drivers
A. Make yourself visible to drivers (3)	D. Watch for pedestrians at all times (6)
B. Avoid dangerous behaviors (4)	E. Avoid dangerous behaviors (3)
C. Look before you step onto the road (6)	F. Yield to pedestrians at crossings (3)

\_\_\_ Wear bright/ light colored clothing and reflective materials.

\_\_\_ Give way to pedestrians in crosswalks, whether marked or unmarked.

\_\_\_ Always walk on the sidewalk; if there is no sidewalk, walk facing traffic.

\_\_\_ Scan the road and the sides of the road ahead for potential pedestrians.

\_\_\_ Never pass/ overtake a vehicle that stopped for pedestrians.

\_\_\_ Cross streets at marked crosswalks or intersections, if possible.

\_\_\_ Give way to pedestrians when making right or left turns at intersections.

\_\_\_ Don't assume vehicles will stop; make eye contact with drivers, don't just look at the vehicle.

\_\_\_ Before making a turn, look in all directions for pedestrians crossing.

\_\_\_ Carry a flashlight when walking at night.

\_\_\_ Obey traffic signals such as WALK/ DON'T WALK signs.

\_\_\_ Be alert to engine noise or backup lights on cars when in parking lots and near on-street parking spaces.

\_\_\_ Obey speed limits and come to a complete stop at STOP signs.

\_\_\_ Look left, right, and left again before crossing a street.

\_\_\_ Don't drive distracted or after consuming alcohol or other drugs.

\_\_\_ Stand clear of buses, parked cars or other obstacles before crossing.

\_\_\_ Watch for turning vehicles; make sure the driver sees you and will stop for you.

\_\_\_ Do not use your cell phone while driving.

\_\_\_ Don't wear headphones or talk on a cell phone while crossing.

\_\_\_ Do not block or park in crosswalks.

\_\_\_ Don't rely solely on pedestrian signals; look before you cross the road.

\_\_\_ Use extra caution when driving near children playing along the street or older pedestrians who may not see or hear you.

\_\_\_ Look carefully behind your vehicle for approaching pedestrians before backing-up.

\_\_\_ Look across ALL lanes you must cross.

\_\_\_ For maximum visibility, keep your windshield clean and headlights on.

### 16 Answer the questions.

- Is there a speed limit on motorways in our country? Is so, what is it?
- How many lanes are there usually on motorways in our country? What are they?
- At what age can people get their driving license in Ukraine?
- Who is usually called a 'back seat driver'?
- What are the factors that affect road safety? Speak in terms of pedestrians' and drivers' behaviour, weather conditions, road or traffic engineering.
- Do you consider yourself an ideal pedestrian? Why?
- Why are children and senior people considered as 'vulnerable pedestrians'?
- Who is less able to make safe decisions on the road?
- Do you know any places in your native town/ village where the road is a shared space for playing, walking, cycling and driving? Why are they more dangerous?
- What can lack of patience on the road lead to?

## IX. SPEAKING **A STREET ACCIDENT**

17 Look at the picture and answer the questions.

- In what season has the accident taken place? Justify your answer.
- Can you guess the exact date and say what time of the day it is?
- Where has the accident taken place? What vehicles have collided?
- Which street is the double-decker bus coming from? Do you think the driver meant to go straight on or to turn into Victoria Street? Was he driving flat out?
- Which part of the black car has been damaged? Did the driver jam on the brakes?
- Should the black motor car have stopped? Why, or why not?
- How many passers-by are there in front of the jeweller's shop? Describe their reactions.
- How many pedestrians have actually seen the accident? Count the passers-by on the pavement in Cambridge Street. Are they all adults?
- Describe the various vehicles you can see in the picture.
- What can you see in the foreground of the picture? How many people have been run over?
- Describe the injured man's position. Is he badly hurt? Is he conscious? Will he come round soon? How can the injured person receive first aid?
- Who should be responsible for the accident: one of the drivers, the injured man or the traffic warden? Justify your opinion.
- What could the girl in front of the jeweller's shop tell the police as a witness to the accident?
- What do you think could happen a few minutes after the accident? (to call an ambulance, the police; to rush to hospital; to make inquiries, etc)



## X. VOCABULARY **GOING BY CAR & BICYCLE**

18 Match the words with the pictures and answer the questions.

- a saloon car/ sedan
- an estate car/ station wagon
- a hatchback
- a convertible
- an off-roader/ jeep/ SUV/ 4×4
- a sports car
- a limousine
- a caravan (Br E) = a trailer (Am E)
- a van

1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.



7.



8.



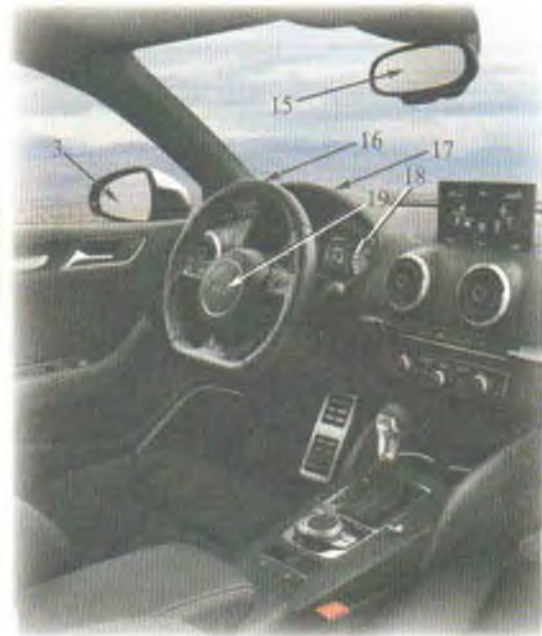
9.



1. Which model is more suitable for country roads?
2. Which car is more suitable for town dwellers?
3. Which car do you think is the most comfortable?
4. Which model is designed for a warm climate?
5. Which car is the fastest?
6. Which model is the most convenient for holidaying/ vacationing?
7. What does the choice of a car depend on?

19 Label the parts of a car.

- a bonnet (Br E) = a hood (Am E)
- a boot (Br E) = a trunk (Am E)
- a bumper
- a dashboard
- an exhaust pipe
- headlights
- a horn
- an indicator (Br E) = a turn signal (Am E)
- a number plate (Br E) = a license plate (Am E)
- rear lights
- a rearview mirror
- a roof rack
- sidelights
- a speedometer
- a steering wheel
- a sunroof
- a tyre (Br E) = a tire (Am E)
- a wheel
- a windscreen (Br E) = a windshield (Am E)
- a wing mirror (Br E) = a side-view mirror (Am E)
- a wiper



20 Fill in the gaps.

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ inched upwards as Pamela drove faster.
2. Trailing by a cloud of fumes from the \_\_\_\_\_, the old car accelerated up the road.
3. Officer Bedford spotted a wrongly parked car as he patrolled Ringwood, Hampshire, and slapped a ticket on the \_\_\_\_\_.
4. If the car begins to fishtail, the back \_\_\_\_\_ have lost grip.
5. I had a flat \_\_\_\_\_ on the way home.
6. Philip drove off honking his \_\_\_\_\_ and threatening to run down those who were too slow to get out of his way.
7. There was a parking ticket neatly tucked under the windscreen \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Sandra's car \_\_\_\_\_ is always a mess. In it, you can find some spare parts, an empty jerry-can for petrol and a torn wicker basket among other junk.

### How to Ride a Bike Safely

21 A) Label the parts of the bicycle.

- a) a spoke
- b) a wheel
- c) a saddle (Br E)/ seat (Am E)
- d) a handlebar(s)
- e) a mudguard (Br E)/ a fender (Am E)
- f) a bell
- g) a gear
- h) a pedal
- i) a tyre (Br E)/ tire (Am E)
- j) a chain
- k) a shifter



B) Answer the questions.

1. What is used to give a signal or to get someone's attention?
2. What makes the wheels turn?
3. What do you sit on?
4. What do you turn to control the direction?
5. What prevents mud from getting on the bicycle and rider?
6. What do you use to go at different speeds?
7. What do you push round with your feet to make the bicycle go forward?
8. What do you use when the tyres are flat?



## XI. LISTENING

22 **A)** Listen to the recording and number the pictures in the order you hear the instructions (1–7). There are two pictures that you do not need.

**B)** Listen to the instructions again and answer the questions.

- What is it necessary to do to ensure that your bike is roadworthy and safe?
- What increases the cyclist's visibility on the road?
- What should the cyclist do if he/she has shoes with laces?
- What helps to prevent head injuries?
- Should the cyclist ride against the traffic or in the direction of the traffic?
- What does a cyclist show with his/her hand?
- Is it safer to pass a stopped car on the right or on the left?



## XII. READING AND SPEAKING

23 Read the text and match the headlines (A—G) to the numbered passages in the text. There are two headlines you do not need to use.

- A) Bicycle manufacturing is not controlled by special interests.
- B) You can see your city like drivers can't.
- C) You can be part of a cutting edge movement.
- D) Bicycles are more technologically advanced than motor vehicles.
- E) Friendly on the environment and easy on traffic.
- F) Bicycles are faster than cars.
- G) Someday you'll wish you had.



### Five Different Reasons to Ride a Bicycle

Why would riding a bicycle, which is slower, offer more satisfaction than driving? Part of the answer exists in basic human physiology. We were born to move. Immobility is to the human body what rust is to the classic car. Stop moving long enough, and your muscles will atrophy. Bones will weaken. Blood will clot. You will find it harder to concentrate and solve problems. Immobility is not merely a state closer to death: it hastens it.

The same is true of cycling, although a bicycle has the added benefit of giving even a lazy rider the ability to travel three or four times faster than someone walking, while using less than a quarter of the energy. Cyclists report feeling connected to the world around them in a way that is simply not possible in the

sealed environment of a car, bus or train. Their journeys are both sensual and kinesthetic.

You probably think that you've heard all the arguments for riding a bicycle. Sure, the bicycle doesn't use non-renewable resources or pollute (including noise pollution); it is inexpensive both for ownership and in terms of public infrastructure to support it; it can be parked anywhere, and is a healthy activity.

"Blah, blah, blah. Tell me something new," you say.

O.K., here's five reasons to ride a bicycle that you've never before heard of. Not in your wildest dream. And if you don't already ride a bicycle for fun, fitness, or transportation, this will surely convince you to get your gears spinning.

1.

A bicycle is in certain ways the most intelligent vehicle ever created. It has the world's most advanced 'engine' controlled with the most **wondrous** and **sophisticated** 'computer.' The engine often knows what's wrong with itself and usually fixes itself. A bicycle is also the world's most energy-efficient mode of travel, using just 35 calories per passenger mile versus 1860 for an average automobile with one occupant. And the engine can run on all kinds of strange fuels, like broccoli.

Affordable bicycles are manufactured with exotic materials such as titanium, carbon fiber, incredible aluminum alloys, and high strength alloy steel. If you've never ridden a high quality modern bicycle, **you're in for a treat.**

Cars are made with steel, iron, and plastic. You can't pick them up. And try to fix one!

2.

Bicycle manufacturers could have invented the Army recruiting slogan "Be All That You Can Be." Their goal is to produce the best vehicle possible. Bicycles are the perfect synthesis of body and machine. Be a **cyborg.**

Cars, on the other hand, are the **epitome** of special interest controlled products. The oil industry wants cars to get the worst gas mileage possible. The steel industry wants cars to be big and heavy, apparently in order to be safe.

So, reject the greed of huge multinational corporations. Tread lightly and ride a bicycle.



3.

In urban areas, this is sometimes literally true. Congestion, traffic signals, parking-space-search time, and walking-to-final-destination time all conspire to reduce the speed of even the highest-powered motor vehicle to about that of a bicycle. However, if you consider that the time-cost of travel also includes the amount of time spent working to pay for the vehicle, bicycles come roaring ahead. Also, why spend loads of time working to pay for the car to get to work to pay for the car?

Since exercise is **mandatory** for optimal health, and riding a bicycle to some necessary destination incorporates exercise which would otherwise take time in the gym, pedaling to some place can be considered as taking zero time. Therefore, bicycles are infinitely fast. That's faster than light, which, according to Einstein shouldn't be possible, but nonetheless **reverses** time. Riding a bicycle makes you younger. Be a kid again!

4.

According to the 2000 Nationwide Personal Transportation Survey, only 0.7% of all transportation trips are made by bicycle. Ninety percent of trips are taken in a personal automobile with the remainder via transit, walking, or other modes.

Let's face it, bicyclists are a minority. But, by the same token, we're unique. So why be normal? Be different, ride a bicycle.

5.

Helen Hayes, the much beloved "First Lady of American theatre," who died at the age of 92, was asked in an interview if she regretted anything. She said she had only one regret. "I never rode a bicycle. I wish I had. That's all."

While few of us can hope to achieve the **stature** of Ms. Hayes, we certainly can fulfill a dream that she never did. The simple pleasure of riding a bicycle — effortless motion at one moment, challenging yet empowering hill climbing the next, followed by the thrill of the descent.

Bicycling is the wind in your face and your senses on **hyperdrive**. It's life at its best. Try it. Ultimately there will come a time when you won't be able to.

## 24 Match these phrases with the ones in bold in the text.

- 1) the best possible example
- 2) a creature that is partly human, partly a machine
- 3) impressive
- 4) a fountain of emotions
- 5) it will give you a lot of pleasure
- 6) compulsory
- 7) to go backward
- 8) the degree of development of a person
- 9) complicated and advanced in design

## 25 Answer the questions.

1. What are the commonly known advantages the bicycle has, compared to other vehicles mentioned in the text? Can you add any more?
2. What does the author of the article mean by 'the engine' of a bicycle?
3. What materials are used to manufacture modern bicycles?
4. Why does the author consider the bicycle to be faster than the car?
5. Why does the author think that cyclists are unique?
6. Why does the author describe riding a bicycle as a pleasure?



### XIII. VOCABULARY

### PUBLIC TRANSPORT

- a means/ mode/ form of transport
- a passenger
- a fare
- a conductor
- a fare-dodger/ a fare-beater
- a reduced fare ticket/ at a reduced price
- a half-fare
- a full fare
- a family ticket/ fare
- the Underground (Br E)/ subway (Am E)/ the tube (London, the UK)
- to take/ catch the tube
- by tube
- a turnstile
- to go through a turnstile
- a subway token/ card/ coin
- elevated railway (Br E)/ elevated railroad (Am E)
- a tram/ tramcar (Br E)/ a streetcar (Am E)
- a ticket booth
- off-peak fares
- a bus fare
- a bus pass
- by bus
- to catch a bus
- to get on/ off a bus
- to miss a bus
- to ride a bus
- a school bus
- a(n) (over)crowded, packed bus
- to take a bus
- to wait for a bus
- a double-decker
- a river bus
- a bus stop/ a bus shelter
- a bus station
- a cab/ a taxi
- to take/ get a cab/ a taxi
- to call (somebody) a cab/ a taxi
- to hail a taxi/ a cab
- a taxi rank (Br E)/ a taxi stand (Am E)
- to get in/ into a car
- to get out of a car
- a trolleybus
- to change (at) some place
- "All change!" (used to tell passengers to get off a train because it does not go any further)
- the morning/ evening rush hour/ peak hour
- heavy traffic
- to be stuck in a traffic jam
- a time-table (Br E)/ a schedule (Am E)

#### 26 Sort out the words and phrases from the Vocabulary box under the following categories:

1. Means of transport
2. Participants of traffic
3. Transport fares
4. Equipment and facilities
5. Getting about
6. Inconveniences of getting about town

#### 27 Answer the questions.

1. What kinds of public transport do you have in the place where you live/ study?
2. How often do you use public transport?
3. Do you find the public transportation in Kharkiv and other large cities in Ukraine reliable and convenient? Why? Why not?
4. Do you have to change several kinds of transport to get to the university from your home/ dorm? How long does it take you to get to the university on average?
5. Which kind of public transport do you think the best? Which is the worst?
6. Do you consider transport fares in our country reasonable? Why? Why not?
7. How well do different kinds of public transport in your city/ town connect with each other?
8. What would you like to change in the system of public transportation in our country?
9. Do you have to pay full fare or can you use a ticket at a reduced price? What social groups in our country have fare benefits? What are they?
10. Have you ever got stuck in a traffic jam? What did you do?

**28** Circle the correct word in the sentences.

1. The driver told her *to get in/ to get on* the car and fasten the seat belt.
2. Yesterday I got up late and *lost/ missed* the school bus.
3. Public transport *charges/ fares* are getting more expensive.
4. Buses to the airport *take off/ run* every twenty minutes.
5. *Getting off/ getting out of* the tramcar, she dropped her gloves.
6. The airport was jammed with thousands of *passengers/ commuters* from delayed and cancelled flights.
7. Ann *rides/ drives* the bus to work; it takes her half an hour to get there.
8. We were stuck in *hard/ heavy* traffic for more than an hour.
9. She *got off/ got out of* the car and slammed the door.
10. The vast majority of suburban *commuters/ passengers* were unable to get to New York because of traffic congestion.

**29** Fill in the gaps with the derivatives of the words given in brackets.

Public transport is a transportation 1) \_\_\_\_\_ (serve) that is 2) \_\_\_\_\_ (avail) to the general public, and that carries passengers to 3) \_\_\_\_\_ (destine) for a fee. Besides the 4) \_\_\_\_\_ (common) known and widely used underground, buses, tramcars, trolleybuses, it may include taxicabs, jitneys, and dial-a-ride services. They provide short-distance transportation for small groups of passengers. A taxicab is an automobile operated by a 5) \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) and hired by users for an individual trip. Taxicabs have the highest out-of-pocket cost of all types of public transportation, but taxicab service is closest in convenience to the private automobile. Jitneys are 6) \_\_\_\_\_ (private) owned large cars or vans that usually operate on fixed routes but without fixed schedules. Jitneys are a 7) \_\_\_\_\_ (flex) means of public transportation, although they also tend to add to traffic 8) \_\_\_\_\_ (congest). Dial-a-ride services consist of minibuses or vans that are directed from a 9) \_\_\_\_\_ (centre) dispatching office as the service is requested. The 10) \_\_\_\_\_ (dispatch) plans the routes so that as many passengers as possible are served on a single trip. Dial-a-ride services are slower and less direct than taxicabs but generally are cheaper as well.

**30** Complete the sentences with an appropriate word or expression from the box.

- |               |               |                       |                  |
|---------------|---------------|-----------------------|------------------|
| • cyclists    | • motorway    | • pedestrian crossing | • traffic lights |
| • speed limit | • junction    | • one-way             | • bridge         |
| • traffic     | • pedestrians | • bus lanes           | • road works     |
| • bus stop    | • roundabout  | • petrol station      | • car park       |

1. We need to get some fuel. There's a \_\_\_\_\_ just up the road.
2. The fastest way of getting from London to Oxford is to take the \_\_\_\_\_.
3. There's always a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ on the roads in the morning and evening.
4. The High Street is closed because of \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Go over the \_\_\_\_\_, turn left at the first \_\_\_\_\_, and then take the third exit on the \_\_\_\_\_.
6. You can't leave your car here. You'll have to use the \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Many towns have \_\_\_\_\_ so that people using public transport can get into and out of town more quickly.
8. Wait for the \_\_\_\_\_ to turn green before you continue walking across the street.
9. The \_\_\_\_\_ in most towns and cities is 30 miles per hour.
10. Many \_\_\_\_\_ fail to keep their bicycles in good condition or obey the rules of the road.
11. You can't turn right into that street. It's a \_\_\_\_\_ street.
12. When you're driving through town, be careful of \_\_\_\_\_ crossing the street.
13. This road is very busy and dangerous. If you want to get to the other side, use the \_\_\_\_\_.
14. I need to get a bus into town. Is there a \_\_\_\_\_ near here?

## XIV. READING AND SPEAKING

31 Work in three groups. Scan the text and find the information about:

Group 1: positive aspects of the British public transport system;

Group 2: negative aspects (drawbacks) of the system;

Group 3: the UK transport system as compared to those of other countries.

### The public transport system in the UK

Public transport services in the UK vary from region to region and town to town. In some areas, services are excellent and good value for money, while in others they're infrequent, slow and expensive. The UK has no unified general transport policy, particularly a long-term strategy that balances the needs of the public transport user against those of the motorist.

Consequently, the UK has one of the most congested and ill-planned transport systems in Europe. However, it isn't always essential to own a car in the UK, particularly if you live in a large town or city with adequate public transport (and where parking may be impossible, in any case). On the other hand, if you live in a remote village or a town away from the main train and bus routes, it's usually essential to have your own transport. Public transport is cheaper if you're able to take advantage of the wide range of discount tickets available. Many regions offer combined bus, train, underground (metro) and ferry passes, and offer special rates for children, students, young people, pensioners, families, the

unemployed and those receiving social security benefits, in addition to off-peak travel reductions. Students can obtain an International Student Identity Card (ISIC), offering travel discounts in the UK and worldwide.

Despite more people using public transport in London than in any other European city (London has the world's largest and oldest rail and tube network), it has the most expensive public transport of any capital city in Europe, with fares around four times those of Rome and some 15 times more expensive than Budapest. The percentage of local residents using public transport is, not surprisingly, very low, with some 90 per cent of all journeys made by car.

The poor services and high cost of public transport have made a huge contribution to the heavy road congestion, with traffic levels in the south-east and other heavily populated areas approaching saturation point. Traffic congestion is especially common during the peak hours at 7:30—9:30 am, 12—2 pm and 4:30—6:30 pm on weekdays, or in shopping areas during weekends.

Apart from the environmental damage caused by the ever increasing number of cars, road congestion costs businesses billions of pounds a year which, when added to the cost of road accidents, suggests a huge commercial benefit would be reaped from improved public



transport. One of the biggest problems facing the UK is that it's much cheaper to run a car than it is to use the railways. Most analysts believe the situation must be reversed if the UK isn't to suffer almost permanent gridlock in its major cities in the next decade or so.

Rising levels of traffic pollution are choking the UK's cities, where asthma and other bronchial complaints have increased hugely in recent years. Many experts believe the only answer is to make town centres more pedestrian-friendly and severely limit traffic in towns and cities (as is done in many European countries), while at the same time investing heavily in non-

polluting public transport systems. Although the UK killed off its trams (which in mainland Europe still perform an excellent role midway between a bus and a train) many years ago, a number of cities have introduced (or are planning to) new metro, light rail transit and supertram systems, and are banning cars from city centres. London has recently introduced a 'congestion charge' of £8 for vehicles using the central zone and this has already reduced traffic density and shortened journey times; it's likely that the zone to which the charge applies will soon be enlarged to include parts of west London.

### 32 Compare the systems of public transport in the UK and Ukraine. Speak in terms of:

- fares and discount tickets;
- different public transport prices;
- measures against traffic air pollution;
- the choice of transport in the centre of the city.

## XV. WRITING

### 33 Write a letter to your friend from another country who asked you about:

- how you usually get to university and how much you pay for all fares a month;
- discounts people can have while using the public transport;
- why very few people in Ukrainian cities use bicycles as a means of transport.

### 34 Write an article of 200–250 words to a youth magazine about the most serious problems of the city/ town/ village you live in and suggest possible solutions.

#### Guidelines for writing an article

- Give your article an interesting title.
- There is no fixed structure for an article, but it is important to have clear paragraphs. Use discourse markers to link your points or arguments.
- Make sure you use an appropriate style, neither very formal nor informal.
- Make the introduction reasonably short. You could use a question or questions which you then answer in the article.
- Try to engage the reader, e.g. by referring to your personal experience.



## XVI. REVISION TRANSLATION

35 Translate into English.

1. Кімберлі зростала в сільській місцевості. Її дитинство пройшло на фермі в оточенні ланів і луків. Її життя було спокійним та розміреним. Воно здавалося трохи нудним, коли вона була підлітком, проте було дуже безпечним. Вона вступила до коледжу, розташованому в маленькому містечку, яке було більш жвавим зі своїми крамницями, бібліотеками, ресторанами і навіть кількома музеями. Однак воно не було ані переповнено людьми, ані забруднене, і Кімберлі почувалася дуже комфортно. Їй подобалося бурхливе життя студмістечка. Вона всюди їздила на велосипеді і вважала це зручним, тому що дорожній рух ніколи не був надто жвавим. Після закінчення коледжу Кім попрямувала до вогнів великого міста і отримала роботу у головному офісі великої компанії в Чикаго. Тепер вона мешкає в центрі міста, і її оточують височенні хмарочоси замість амбарів та конюшен. Затори на дорогах і натовпи людей додають стресу її життю. Безпритульні, що жебракують на вулицях, та байдуже обслуговування у великих торговельних центрах змушують її сумувати за миром і спокоєм сільського життя. Коли вона вийде заміж, вона напевне переїде у передмістя і повернеться ближче до природи. Вона буде щаслива покинути шалену гонитву за успіхом і переключитися на більш повільний темп життя. Хоча їй доведеться регулярно їздити на роботу у місто, вона зможе налагодити кращий баланс між роботою і особистим життям. Вона впевнена, що люди у передмісті живуть більш дружньою громадою, і вважає зворушливим те, що вони вітаються із сусідами і навіть незнайомцями.
2. Ліза виїхала з дорожки перед будинком, прямуючи до головної дороги, та коли будинок зник за поворотом, звернула на узбіччя, щоб зробити телефонний дзвінок. Потім вона певний час їхала по головній дорозі перед тим, як з'їхати з полоси швидкісного руху на крайню полосу повільного руху. Через декілька миль вона звернула на об'їзну дорогу і кілька хвилин потому з'їхала з шосе. Перед нею була лише вузька ґрунтова дорога, уздовж якої росли дубові дерева і куші.
3. Обираючи автівку, люди враховують багато різноманітних факторів. Якщо ви мешкаєте у сільській місцевості і вам потрібно щось для сільських доріг, ви найвірогідніше оберете позашляховик або мінівен. Седан більш придатний для мешканців міста. Якщо ви любите більший багажник, вам варто розглянути хетчбек. Для людей, які подорожують автомобілем у справах або для задоволення, обов'язкова наявність багажника на даху автівки. Молоді люди — великі прихильники спортивних авто з люком на даху або машин з відкидним верхом. Лімузин рідко купують для щоденного використання, але зазвичай замовляють для урочистих подій. Пенсіонери часто шукають будиночок-автопричіп, який дозволить їм подорожувати країною з комфортом і в своєму темпі.



4. Сучасне місто може похвалитися широким вибором видів громадського транспорту. У більшості міст світу ви можете пересуватися автобусом, трамвасм, метро і, звичайно, на таксі. Ще однією перевагою є те, що для мешканців міста і навіть для туристів існують пільгові квитки. Таксі може бути доволі дорогим, але є дешевша і здоровіша альтернатива. Більшість міст у розвинених країнах пропонують програми аренди велосипедів (*bicycle rental programmes/ a bicycle sharing system/ or a bike share scheme*).

Якщо ви хочете їздити містом на велосипеді, впевніться, що ви знаєте основні правила дорожнього руху для велосипедистів. Чи знаєте ви, якою стороною дороги ви маєте пересуватися? Їхати проти руху надзвичайно ризиковано. Вам також слід знати, як подавати сигнали про свої наміри водіям машин. Крім цього, розумним буде вдягти шолом та одяг яскравих кольорів. Беручи велосипед в аренду, перевірте, щоб він був безпечним і надійним на дорозі. Ланцюг, педалі та коробка передач мають бути на своїх місцях і в робочому стані, сидло та руль — такими, що регулюються, а шини не повинні бути здутими.



# Unit 8

## ON THE MOVE

### I. LEAD-IN

1 Read the quotations and tell the group which of them reflect your ideas about travelling.

“To travel is to discover that everyone is wrong about other countries.”

*(Aldous Huxley)*

“If you reject the food, ignore the customs, fear the religion and avoid the people, you might better stay at home.”

*(James Michener)*

“A man travels the world over in search of what he needs, and returns home to find it.”

*(George Moore)*

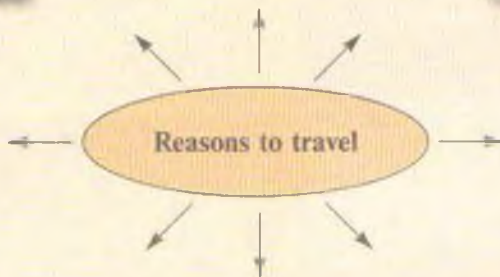
“I travel not to go anywhere, but to go. I travel for travel’s sake. The great affair is to move.”

*(Robert Louis Stevenson)*

“There is a kind of magic about going far away and then coming back all changed.”

*(Kate Douglas Wiggin)*

2 Why do you think people travel? Complete the mind map with your ideas and discuss them in groups.





## II. VOCABULARY **KINDS OF TRAVELLING**

- |                 |              |                |             |
|-----------------|--------------|----------------|-------------|
| • a voyage      | • a trek     | • a drive      | • a flight  |
| • an expedition | • an outing  | • an excursion | • a journey |
| • a trip        | • a crossing | • a tour       | • a ride    |

### 3 Find the word that means the following:

- 1) a visit to a place for pleasure or a particular purpose;
- 2) a time spent travelling from one place to another, especially over a long distance;
- 3) a long journey in a ship or spacecraft;
- 4) a journey for pleasure, during which you visit several different towns, areas etc or a short trip through a place to see it;
- 5) a journey in a plane or space vehicle;
- 6) a journey in a vehicle, when you are not driving; a journey on a bicycle, a horse, or a similar animal;
- 7) a journey in a car;
- 8) a long and carefully organized journey, especially to a dangerous or unfamiliar place, or the people that make this journey;
- 9) a long and difficult journey, made especially on foot as an adventure, synonym 'hike';
- 10) a short trip that a group of people take for pleasure;
- 11) a short journey arranged so that a group of people can visit a place, especially while they are on holiday or a short journey made for a particular purpose;
- 12) a short journey in a boat, ship or ferry which goes from one side of a sea, lake, or other area of water to the other side.



### 4 Explain the difference between:

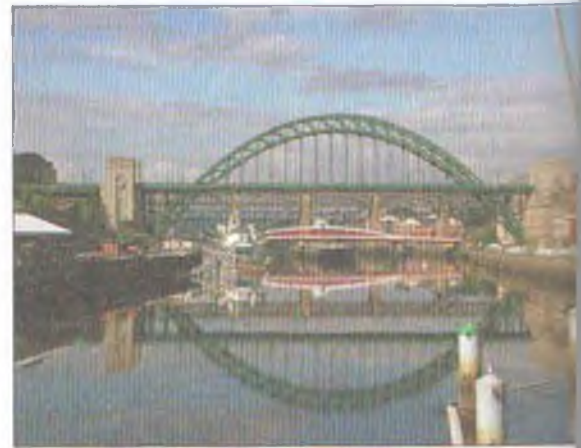
- a) an excursion and an expedition;
- b) a crossing and a voyage;
- c) a drive and a ride;
- d) a trip and a journey;
- e) an outing and a tour.



## Unit 8. On the move

5 Fill in the gaps with the words from the Vocabulary box in the appropriate form.

1. During his \_\_\_\_\_, Len's forty foot yacht was battered by storms. The main sail was ripped from the mast, and the mast itself was snapped.
2. The tourist agency offers additional \_\_\_\_\_ to the nearby spectacular waterfalls and an ancient castle.
3. There are frequent ferry \_\_\_\_\_ from the UK to France from various ports on the south coast of England.
4. They got into a taxi, and on the 40-minute \_\_\_\_\_ back from the airport Henry told Susan all about his \_\_\_\_\_ to Canada.
5. Switzerland is only 20 miles to the north, and a three-hour car \_\_\_\_\_ will take you to any one of five different countries.
6. The band's visit to Newcastle is part of their brief UK \_\_\_\_\_ to get in shape for a major world \_\_\_\_\_ which begins later this year.
7. The \_\_\_\_\_ from London was delayed, and it was about three in the morning when I finally got to Venice.
8. The adventurous can also canoe down the Amazon, make a \_\_\_\_\_ through the Patagonian uplands, explore volcano craters, or sail round Cape Horn.
9. Here are some attractive places to bear in mind when you feel like a day's \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Two teenagers have chosen to bed down for the night in a freezer as part of their training for an \_\_\_\_\_ to the Arctic Circle. They hope that a good night of shivering in sub-zero temperatures will prepare them for the \_\_\_\_\_.
11. Some people find it impossible to sleep a wink on a long night \_\_\_\_\_ in a train.
12. If you have a car, the distance is not a problem. The beach is just a 30-minute \_\_\_\_\_ from the city centre.



### III. LISTENING

6 Listen to the text "How to Have a Real Adventure" and decide whether the statements are true or false.

1. Kevin Sanders holds two Guinness world records for travelling around the globe.
2. He is now travelling from Alaska to Argentina and is planning to complete the journey in 34 days.
3. Kevin's team consists of 13 members.
4. In Alaska the team swam with polar bears in the Arctic Ocean.
5. Travelling overland on the bike lets you experience all kinds of weather.
6. Simon Lynch considers travelling by train romantic.
7. He travelled on the Trans-Siberian Express from Moscow to Mongolia for seven days.
8. During his journey he met a lot of different people as his fellow-travellers.
9. Travelling overland is beneficial both for the traveller and the country he/ she is visiting.

### IV. VOCABULARY

#### TRAVELLING BY TRAIN

• a booking office = a ticket office	• a lounge car	• a commuter train = a local train
• a compartment	• an upper (lower) berth	• a season ticket
• a carriage	• bedding	• a return ticket = a round-trip ticket
• a sleeping car	• a guard = an attendant	• a rail card
• a dining car	• a through train	
	• to change trains	

7 Give English equivalents.

- |                                             |                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1) квиток на поїздку туди і назад;          | 9) вагон для сидіння (з відкидними кріслами);                      |
| 2) квиток на весь сезон;                    | 10) вагон-ресторан;                                                |
| 3) приміський потяг (електричка);           | 11) верхня (нижня) полка;                                          |
| 4) постільна білизна;                       | 12) вагон;                                                         |
| 5) прямий поїзд;                            | 13) купе;                                                          |
| 6) провідник;                               | 14) пільговий квиток (для студентів, пенсіонерів, інвалідів тощо); |
| 7) пересаджуватися з потягу на інший потяг; | 15) каса.                                                          |
| 8) спальний вагон;                          |                                                                    |

8 Fill in the gaps.

•ticket inspector •departure lounge •wheeled suitcases •hand luggage •runway •gate  
•ticket office •check-in •aisle •change •overhead locker •board •wrong •platform •carry-ons

That was a torturous journey, indeed! The taxi was late picking up Joseph and his wife Linda, so they got to the station two minutes before their train left. There was a long queue at the \_\_\_\_\_ (1), so they went straight to the \_\_\_\_\_ (2) and got onto the train, which was just about to leave. When Joseph tried to buy tickets from the \_\_\_\_\_ (3), he discovered that they were on the \_\_\_\_\_ (4) train. Joseph and Linda had to get off at the next station and \_\_\_\_\_ (5) trains, which was a real nightmare as they had two large \_\_\_\_\_ (6), were carrying two \_\_\_\_\_ (7) and a huge backpack!

When they arrived at the airport, they had to queue for an hour at the \_\_\_\_\_ (8) to get their boarding passes, and then they waited in the \_\_\_\_\_ (9) for two hours before being called to the \_\_\_\_\_ (10). When they were finally allowed to \_\_\_\_\_ (11) the plane, Joseph found that he'd been given a window seat, even though he'd asked for a(an) \_\_\_\_\_ (12) seat. And to make things worse, the plane sat on the \_\_\_\_\_ (13) for an hour or so because of a technical problem.

The end of the flight was just as bad. They landed with a huge bump, the \_\_\_\_\_ (14) above Linda's seat flew open, and her own \_\_\_\_\_ (15) fell down and hit her on the shoulder.

## V. READING

9 Read the text and decide if the statements are true or false, or the information is not given in the text.

1. Convenience is the only demand to trains in Europe.
2. Everything has changed for the better with railways recently.
3. The author had to squeeze quite a lot into his itinerary.
4. Though passengers are advised to travel light, there are handy left luggage offices at the big stations.
5. Edinburgh boasts an interesting National Railway Museum.
6. The trip from Edinburgh to Liverpool was longer than that from Liverpool to London.
7. The author preferred spending the nights at hotels rather than on trains.
8. Oxford was the last place he visited during his journey.



### Train Hopping through U.K.

(from the Vancouver Sun)

September 17, 2007

Europeans have long been fans of rail travel. They recognise its convenience: with trains departing from the very centre of cities, there's no time wasted travelling to satellite airports.

5 For Europeans who travel a lot it's not enough for trains to just be convenient. They want style. They want breathtaking speed. They want razzle-dazzle.

A Canadian decides to tour Britain by train. Here are his recollections.

10 It's nearly 8:45 a.m. at London's chilly, iron-framed Kings Cross Station and the final passengers are hurrying to board as I sit back on the train, sip my hot latte and flick through a Saturday newspaper.

15 The carriages begin to move, and within seconds we burst from the station's shadows into brilliant, cloud-free sunlight. As the capital's brick-built skyline fills the windows, my U.K. train odyssey begins. Like so many visitors with limited time and unlimited destinations on the must-see list, I'm attempting an  
20 ambitious itinerary.

Britain's once-shabby railways have improved greatly in recent years, with bright new trains and replacement tracks increasing overall speed and efficiency. But with these improvements have come

substantial fare increases, leading to a near-revolt 25 among local commuters and the rise of cheap, no-frills airlines to fill the price gap.

Luckily, for those like me who prefer to avoid out-of-town airports, there are several good-value 30 U.K. train passes that are only available to overseas visitors.

Enjoying a challenge and the chance to win over the confusing and pricey domestic train ticket system, I've decided to see just how far I can get on a five-day BritRail pass. Visiting places and meeting people — 35 one feels the difference between 'transportation' and 'travelling' after nice social encounters!

After a snail's-pace crawl through north London, we speed into England's greenbelt, complete with patchwork 40 fields and tiny villages clustered around churches. As I doze in the warm sun or study the rail map unfolded before me, I decide that my first call should be York. At just over two hours away, I'll be there in time for lunch.

Upon arrival, I check the afternoon train times 45 and drop my bag at the left luggage counter. While packing light is recommended for train treks, most large stations have handy storage lockers or bag drop



services, although **prices can reach an eye-popping** \$12.62 per bag. Luggage-free, I follow the signs for a short stroll to the city centre.

Since Saturday is York's traditional shopping day, the winding streets of crooked Tudor buildings teem with locals. Having some time to spare, I duck into the adjacent National Railway Museum, which is home to dozens of old-school locomotives, including the 1935 Mallard — the world's fastest steam train.

I'm back on a slightly more modern train by 3 p.m. for a sweep up the eastern coastline to Edinburgh, less than three hours away. On arrival I walk to the hotel and go sightseeing. Making for the historic Royal Mile, I have a stomach-stuffing dinner in a bustling, hearth-warmed pub.

Up early next day I take photos of the hilltop castle then visit Mary King's Close — an entertaining underground attraction that takes visitors below the Royal Mile to a catacomb-like area of old homes where the city poorest once lived.

Back on the train by mid-afternoon — I've picked up sandwiches and newspapers for the ride — the **longest leg of my trek** takes me down England's western flank towards Liverpool. Passing by grey peaks and glassy-flat lakes, and changing trains at Glasgow and Carlisle, I roll into the Merseyside metropolis around 9 p.m.

I haven't visited this dockyard city in 20 years, and I don't recognize anything on the lamp-lit cab ride to my hotel. But when I hit the streets the next morning I discover that Liverpool is sprucing-up for its reign as 2008 European Capital of Culture.

**I'm train-bound again** by late afternoon going back to London. It's been a tight schedule but being on the train, rather than following driving directions or waiting around in airports, has been the trip's most relaxing aspect. As I decide which London-bound departure to take tomorrow, my eyes flick back to the map and I imagine where I might go instead. Oxford looks tempting...

10 Explain the highlighted words and phrases in the text in your own words.

11 Match the phrases that mean the same.

1. a satellite airport	a. flights without unnecessary extras
2. razzle-dazzle	b. useful and simple-to-use places for keeping luggage
3. the must-see list	c. to run into some place
4. an ambitious itinerary	d. to be full of people who live there
5. no-frills airlines	e. some places one should visit by all means
6. handy storage lockers	f. an out-of-town airport
7. to teem with locals	g. to look neater and tidier
8. to duck into	h. a lot of impressive and exciting activity
9. to spruce up	i. a challenging plan to visit a lot of places

12 Find the English equivalents in the text.

- |                                                     |                                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| 1) захоплююча дух швидкість;                        | 8) занадто дорога вітчизняна система залізничних квитків; |
| 2) зручно влаштуватись у потязі;                    | 9) моя перша зупинка;                                     |
| 3) продивлятися суботню газету;                     | 10) подорож на таксі вулицями у світлі ліхтарів;          |
| 4) колись занедбана залізниця;                      | 11) щільний розклад;                                      |
| 5) підвишуючи загальну швидкість та рентабельність; | 12) відправлення з Лондону.                               |
| 6) значне підвищення вартості проїзду;              |                                                           |
| 7) пересування зі швидкістю равлика;                |                                                           |

13 A) What makes going by train feel like 'travelling' and not just transportation?

B) Summarise all the advantages and disadvantages of travelling by train mentioned by the author. Do you think he is for or against train journeys?

# VI. VOCABULARY TRAVELLING BY BOAT

## BOAT AND SHIP TYPES

- a barge
- a cargo boat = a cargo ship
- a ferry
- a houseboat
- a hovercraft
- an icebreaker
- a lifeboat
- a liner
- an oil tanker
- a raft
- a rowing boat
- a submarine
- a yacht

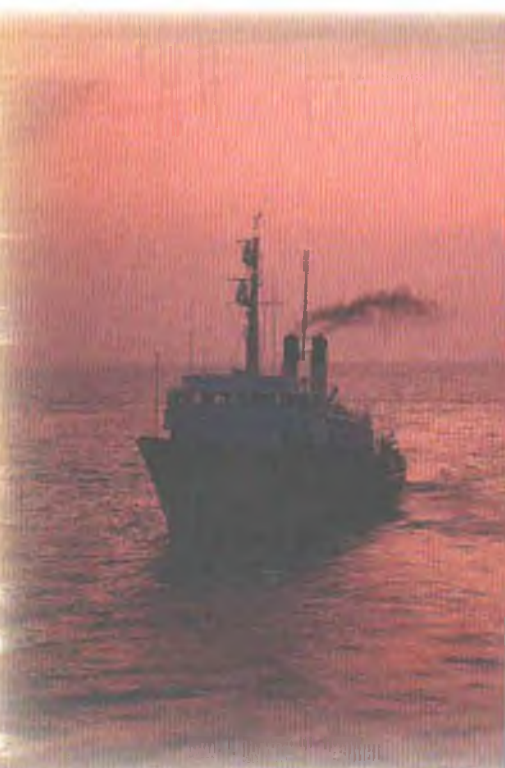


**14 A)** Label the pictures and say where you can see these vessels: on a river, canal, lake, at a sea, in an ocean, in a harbour, underwater?

E.g.: *I think a liner is most likely to be seen at a sea or in an ocean.*

6 Which vessel:

- 1) takes passengers and vehicles across an area of water as a regular service?
- 2) moves over both land and water, raising itself above the surface by blowing air downwards?
- 3) can break through floating ice?
- 4) is used for racing or sailing for pleasure?
- 5) is used on rivers or canals for transporting cargo stacked or heaped on its main deck?
- 6) is kept on a ship for emergencies?
- 7) is used by people as their home and kept in one place on a river or canal?
- 8) carries a large amount of liquid fuel?
- 9) carries goods, and materials from one port to another?
- 10) can travel under water?
- 11) is a flat floating structure made of pieces of wood tied roughly together?
- 12) is like a hotel that people travel on for pleasure?
- 13) is moved by pulling oars through the water?



- a crew
- a navigator
- a mate
- a seaman = a sailor
- a bunk

- a cabin
- a deck
- a life jacket
- to embark/ disembark
- a lighthouse

- a fleet
- seasickness/  
to be seasick
- overboard
- a wreck



15 Choose the correct item.

1. The ship's captain and the members of the \_\_\_\_\_ welcomed their passengers on board.  
a) team; b) cast; c) staff; d) crew.
2. "Watch your step as you \_\_\_\_\_ the ship." said the captain.  
a) catch; b) embark; c) enter; d) take.
3. The Royal Yachting Association has developed a range of training courses that will turn you into a skilled \_\_\_\_\_ capable of directing a course when travelling in the ocean.  
a) navigator; b) cook; c) seaman; d) engineer.
4. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is a ship's officer who is one rank below the captain.  
a) ship's boy; b) navigator; c) engineer; d) mate.
5. The attempt to build a \_\_\_\_\_ on a reef 12 miles off the coast was one of the heroic engineering feats of the day.  
a) breakwater; b) pier; c) lighthouse; d) guidepost.
6. It does not matter who you are or what age you are, everyone must have their own \_\_\_\_\_ on when in a boat.  
a) life belt; b) life mask; c) life jacket; d) life raft.
7. Keep in mind that using binoculars on a boat for an extended period of time could increase chances of \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) seasickness; b) travel sickness; c) airsickness; d) car sickness.
8. Never throw anything \_\_\_\_\_, and be aware of marine life in the waters around you.  
a) onboard; b) overboard; c) seaboard; d) inboard.
9. The lower \_\_\_\_\_ of *the California* is configured for economy class, with a capacity of 399 seats.  
a) compartment; b) bunk; c) cabin; d) deck.
10. With 58 deluxe \_\_\_\_\_, each with a small private balcony, *the Oberoi Philae* offers all modern conveniences.  
a) compartments; b) bunks; c) cabins; d) decks.
11. I went up to my cabin and lay on my \_\_\_\_\_ but it was too wired to sleep on.  
a) bunk; b) sleeping bag; c) hammock; d) cot.
12. A regatta \_\_\_\_\_ of 18 vessels included many that were sailing in an open event for the first time.  
a) flock; b) fleet; c) group; d) company.
13. An abundance of shallow reefs have made the British Virgin Islands a scuba divers' paradise and a boat captain's nightmare. Here, the \_\_\_\_\_ of a tugboat rests in its sandy Caribbean grave.  
a) splinter; b) remains; c) wreck; d) remainder.



## VII. LISTENING

16 How would you describe a sea cruise? Give reasons.

- amazing
- stress free
- relaxing
- frustrating

- expensive
- exasperating
- comfortable
- unbelievable

- exciting
- awful
- bumpy



17 Listen to the text about advantages and disadvantages of taking cruises and fill in the table.

Advantages	Disadvantages
1.	1.
2.	2.
3.	3.
4.	4.

## VIII. READING

18 Read the texts and decide which cruise company (A–C):

- caters especially for elderly travelers \_\_\_\_\_
- provides spas, sports clubs and salons onboard \_\_\_\_\_
- can change itineraries if necessary \_\_\_\_\_
- boasts high quality performances \_\_\_\_\_
- offers reasonable prices \_\_\_\_\_
- ensures a high quality medical service \_\_\_\_\_
- is proud of its navigational equipment \_\_\_\_\_
- is suitable for people of all ages \_\_\_\_\_
- provides service in unfavourable weather conditions \_\_\_\_\_
- offers enjoyable intellectually challenging events \_\_\_\_\_
- offers a choice of various vessels \_\_\_\_\_



### A. Disney Cruises

Given the notions associated with the Disney brand, it would be easy for one to assume that a Disney cruise would either be targeted directly at families with children or younger generations in general. But in fact, the Disney cruise line is suitable for parties both young and old, or big and small.



The Disney cruise line currently operates 4 different ships dubbed the Dream, Fantasy, Magic and Wonder. While each of these ships have their own unique distinctions, the on-board luxuries remain largely constant: restaurants that will be sufficient to feed even the most sophisticated of travelers, live shows of the quality similar to that of a Broadway performance and other forms of entertainment to partake in that will appeal to a varied audience.

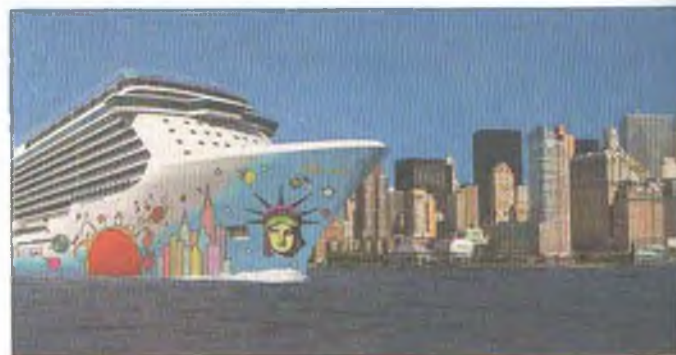
While it's true that virtually everything on a Disney cruise can be enjoyed by everyone, there are areas that cater specifically towards adults. First and foremost, there are world class spas and salons with world class massage centers and relaxing saunas, countless sports clubs, nightclubs, lounges and bars that each features their own unique characteristics.

### B. Cunard and Silversea Cruises

There are a handful of features in these cruises that rank them higher in the list of priorities for seniors. Let's take a look at some of them.

*The Itinerary:* This takes greater importance for seniors than for younger cruisers. Chances are the older folks have traveled to many destinations before. On their cruise, they want to go somewhere new, somewhere they've never been to before.

*Enrichment and Social Programs:* Active seniors are always looking for ways to keep their



grey matter in tip-top shape. One of the best ways to keep their brain active during a cruise is through numerous programs and quiz shows onboard.

decades younger! In light of that, cruise lines that have options for different age groups are prized-finds for seniors.

*Accessible and Top-Notch Care:* Due to age, older cruisers may suffer from mobility or health issues. It's no surprise that accessible and first-rate medical care and related services are high on their list.

### C. Caribbean Seasonal Cruises

Is it possible to cruise to the Caribbean during hurricane season?

Here's an example: Let's say you booked a cruise with an Eastern Caribbean itinerary. 'Thanks' to a raging hurricane, however, the ship's captain and crew may decide to sail to the Western Caribbean instead.

Absolutely! No matter what the season, cruising to the Caribbean can be a worthwhile, rewarding experience for both young and old. However, to repeat a well-known cliché, you should prepare for the worst and hope for the best.

Yes, during the hurricane season, it's possible to miss ports and cruise destinations you have prepared for in weeks or even months. And here's another important thing to take note of: you won't get compensated for the missed ports. Lines have the right to alter or scratch off certain ports and destinations. But hey, it's better to be safe than sorry! Besides, one thing cruisers can be really happy about is that, between mid-July and early October, discounts and affordable cruise packages abound!

If we are to talk about probabilities and statistics, the chances of your cruise being totally affected by terribly bad weather are next to nothing.

However, this is not the time to plan an occasion on a cruise like holding a family holiday or getting married in St. Thomas. As mentioned earlier, itineraries can change and it can foil your celebration plans.

With cruise ships built through top-notch engineering and equipped with advanced satellite devices, it's very easy for staff members and crews to keep tabs of a storm's path. And if necessary, they can quickly steer the ship to a safer, hurricane-free route. Well, it can be tricky for a cruise line to find safer and alternate places to dock especially if nearby docks are booked with other ships which are looking for shelter from the same storm. The most straightforward solution is to switch.



19 If you were to plan a cruise, which cruise company would you choose and why?

## IX. VOCABULARY

### TRAVELLING BY AIR

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• to check-in; a check-in counter</li> <li>• an excess baggage charge</li> <li>• a boarding pass</li> <li>• a window seat/ a middle seat/ an aisle seat</li> <li>• duty-free</li> <li>• a departure lounge/ an arrival lounge</li> <li>• jet lag</li> <li>• luggage claim</li> <li>• to delay a flight</li> <li>• to cancel a flight</li> <li>• a runway</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• to take off</li> <li>• to land</li> <li>• a bumpy flight/ landing</li> <li>• a flight attendant</li> <li>• luggage conveyor belt (Br E) = a baggage carousel [kæərə'sel] (Am E)</li> <li>• a connecting flight</li> <li>• an emergency exit</li> <li>• an emergency landing</li> <li>• a gate</li> <li>• an X-ray machine/ belt</li> </ul> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**20** Read the text and fill in the gaps with the words and phrases.

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• to board her plane</li> <li>• the duty-free shop</li> <li>• the luggage claim</li> <li>• the newsstand</li> <li>• the turbulence</li> <li>• the security check</li> <li>• to be loaded into the hold</li> <li>• carry-on luggage</li> <li>• the in-flight safety</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the departure lounge</li> <li>• to catch her plane</li> <li>• on the runway</li> <li>• a window seat</li> <li>• jet lag</li> <li>• an excess baggage charge</li> <li>• a boarding pass</li> <li>• flying weather</li> <li>• the check-in counter</li> </ul> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Alicia arrives at the airport (1) \_\_\_\_\_ to Tokyo. At (2) \_\_\_\_\_, a ticket agent looks at her passport, and her baggage is weighed on the scales. Alicia's suitcases are very heavy, so she has to pay (3) \_\_\_\_\_ for additional weight. Next she is given (4) \_\_\_\_\_ to get on the plane. It has a seat number written on it, and Alicia is given (5) \_\_\_\_\_. Her suitcases are labelled and sent off (6) \_\_\_\_\_ of the airplane.

While waiting for the flight to be called, Alicia goes to (7) \_\_\_\_\_ to buy a newspaper. Then she goes through (8) \_\_\_\_\_, where her (9) \_\_\_\_\_ that she is going to keep with her on the plane is searched. Then Alicia goes into (10) \_\_\_\_\_ where she has a chance to buy some things cheaply. The goods she buys here are cheap because they are not taxed.

In (11) \_\_\_\_\_, Alicia joins the other passengers who are sitting and waiting for their flight. After a few minutes, Alicia hears the announcement, "Flight 156 to Tokyo now boarding at Gate three," and she goes (12) \_\_\_\_\_.

Fortunately, there is no delay and soon the pilot greets the passengers. One of the flight attendants gives (13) \_\_\_\_\_ demonstration and asks the passengers to place their mobile phones in 'flight safe mode,' to turn off their laptops and tablet PCs and to fasten the seat-belts. The plane drives out (14) \_\_\_\_\_, speeds up and takes off. A few minutes later, the Captain turns off the fasten seat-belt sign, which means it's now possible to do some work on her laptop. Although they take off in perfectly (15) \_\_\_\_\_, the flight turns out to be quite bumpy as there is a storm over the Pacific. Alicia doesn't manage to get any work done because of (16) \_\_\_\_\_ and spends the entire flight watching in-flight entertainment programmes.

On arrival, Alicia picks up her suitcase at (17) \_\_\_\_\_, and catches a taxi to her hotel. She needs to get some rest because she knows full well that she won't suffer from (18) \_\_\_\_\_ after a good night's sleep.

21 Sort out the sentences according to the places.

1. At the check-in counter
2. At the security check point
3. In the departure lounge
4. On the plane

- Do you have your booking reference?
- Could you take off your coat, please?
- Last call for passenger Smith travelling to Miami, please proceed immediately to Gate number 32.
- Could you please put that in the overhead locker?
- Please take your laptop out of its case.
- Please turn off all mobile phones and electronic devices.
- We'd like to apologise for the delay of Flight 3056 to Edinburgh.
- Did you pack your bags yourself?
- I'm afraid you can't take that through.
- Please pay attention to this short safety demonstration.
- Flight 5678 to Rome has been cancelled due to the bad weather conditions.
- There's an excess baggage charge of £30.
- Could I see your passport and boarding card, please?
- Please fasten your seatbelt and return your seat to the upright position.
- "Would you like a window or an aisle seat?"
- Could you put any metallic objects into the tray, please?

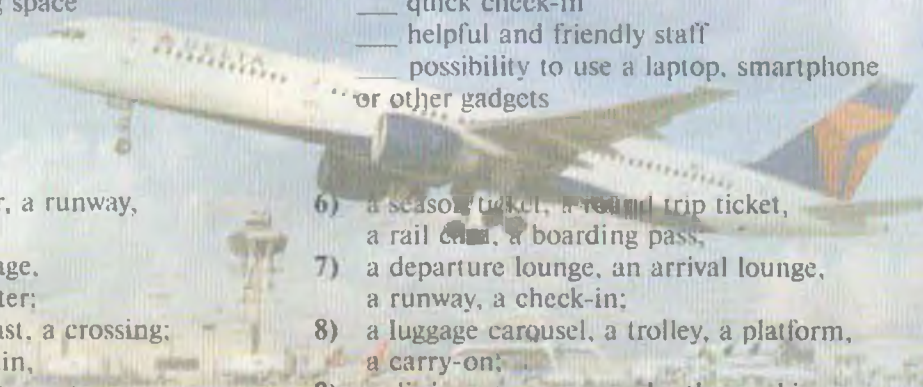


22 Which factors are the most important for you when travelling by air? Rank them (1–9) in order of importance. Give your reasons.

- flight schedule
- comfort of a seat, leg space
- ticket price
- luggage allowance
- free drinks
- in-flight entertainment
- quick check-in
- helpful and friendly staff
- possibility to use a laptop, smartphone or other gadgets

23 Find the odd one out.

- 1) a gate, an overhead locker, a runway, flight connections;
- 2) luggage claim, hand luggage, an overhead locker, a porter;
- 3) a life-jacket, a deck, a mast, a crossing;
- 4) a ticket inspector, a captain, a flight attendant, a ticket agent;
- 5) a cruise, a trek, a cabin, a ferry;
- 6) a season ticket, a return trip ticket, a rail card, a boarding pass;
- 7) a departure lounge, an arrival lounge, a runway, a check-in;
- 8) a luggage carousel, a trolley, a platform, a carry-on;
- 9) a dining car, an upper berth, a cabin, a commuter train.



## X. READING

24 Read the text and answer the questions.

1. What was the weather like?
2. How does the author describe the atmosphere at the airport?
3. Why was the customer service department of Meridian Airlines undermanned?
4. What did the customer service agent look like?
5. Why did Linda ask her husband to charter an airplane to London?
6. What was her husband's reaction?
7. Why was Jason Lao so careful of finances?

## Chicago O'Hare Airport

(from "Turbulence" by John J. Nancy)

Illinois 11:30 a.m.

The windy city awakened to the usual traffic mess of a weekday June morning with temperatures hitting the mid-seventies\* by eight. By noon, the thermometers were pushing  
 5 ninety\* and **rising at roughly the same rate as the tempers** of many of those converging on O'Hare by bus, van, taxi, and car through the medium of hopelessly jammed freeways.

The airport itself was in **a state of meltdown**.  
 10 O'Hare was overcrowded, overheated, and overused, with no relief in sight from the constant pressure to add more flights and more passengers, and keeping the intricate airport machine balanced, oiled, and running was a  
 15 daily battle. Any mistake could cause a cascade of **delayed and canceled flights**, the effects of ~~which would create gate holds~~ **gate holds**, delays, and more cancellations across the United States.

Passengers struggled through the sweltering  
 20 heat and crowded confusion of the sidewalk to get to the **ticket counters** inside, which were **grossly undermanned** and denned by unending lines. It was a depressing game understood by most.

25 Agents cost money, and Meridian Airlines wanted as few of them as possible. A Meridian **customer-service agent** in a wrinkled blazer and badly stained tie turned from his latest close **encounter** with a furious customer and checked  
 30 his watch, disappointed to see it was only fifteen minutes past twelve. He could see a **frazzled-looking** couple approaching from the right, their eyes locked on his red coat, but he raised his

eyes instead to the driveway outside, his attention caught by a stretch limo. Who, he wondered, 35 would emerge from the long, black Cadillac? It could be Madonna, who was in town, or some political superstar. But most likely it was just some unknown fool with too much money. In any event, it gave him an excuse to ignore the  
 40 obviously unhappy couple a few seconds longer.

He hated the customers. He hated Meridian. And he hated his job. More than anything else, he hated the fact that he'd worked for Meridian  
 45 too long to quit, and had too much invested not to care about being fired — something he and most of the contract employees were threatened with weekly.

The driver of the limo came around and opened the rear door, and the supervisor watched  
 50 a young Asian couple unfold themselves from the rear seat. The man and woman stood on the curb, trying **to come to grips with** the confusion.

It's nobody, the supervisor said to himself and turned to other oncoming customers. 55

At the curb, Jason Lao pulled his briefcase from the interior of the limo and nodded uncomfortably to the driver. He'd signed the invoice and paid a reasonable tip before getting  
 60 out, and now all he wanted was distance from the car before someone recognized him.

A **skycap** had turned and spotted them as likely candidates as they each pulled their large rolling  
 65 bags across the inner drive.

"Folks, can I help you?" he asked. 65

Jason nodded and let him take charge of the bags.

"Where are you going today?" the skycap added.

\*75 °F (Fahrenheit) — above 25 degrees Celsius.

90 °F (Fahrenheit) — above 35 degrees Celsius.

"London," Linda said with a toss of her head, not caring who knew how excited she was.

He nodded and began loading the bags on a handcart as Linda took Jason's arm and guided him through the automatic doors.

Linda Lao knew that whenever Jason had to go to the airport, he was tightly wound, demanding much of himself and others. He was successful because he lived and breathed customer service — a term that, in his words, had become an **oxymoron in commercial aviation**.

Every foray to the airport was an agony for Linda, who hated watching her husband angered and stressed by typically **hideous** service. Even the snowstorm of **post-flight complaint letters** he usually wrote wasn't as annoying as just watching the tension eat at him — which was why she had all but begged him **to charter a jet** for the trip to London.

The reaction had been predictable. Jason was a **frugal** man from a frugal family who had survived and prospered in Hong Kong by being frugal. A price tag approaching thirty thousand dollars for a chartered jet compared with **coach fares** under two thousand had horrified him.

"At least get us first class, then," she'd begged.

"Our employees don't fly first class, and neither do we," he'd said.

"But your company isn't paying for this trip. We are."

"All the more reason. We're not so good we can't fly coach."

"Jason, honey, coach is all right for domestic flights, but it's horrible for international!"

The limo was the only exception he'd make, and she knew she'd be hearing about that for the next two weeks: the cost, the embarrassment, **the wrong message it sent**. It amused her sometimes that he was so careful of finances and of his image as a leader. They had struggled for years in California to make it, and now they had. "But precisely when," she asked him on a regular basis, "are we planning on spending some of the fortune we've earned?"

"Over my dead body will we pay thirty thousand for transportation, and that's that," he'd said, and her years as the dutiful child of Chinese parents had kicked in, making her agree with her husband.

And now she regretted giving in.

"Which gate?"

Linda looked around, startled. "What?"

Jason was smiling. "Which gate?" he asked again as he pulled **the carry-ons** off the **X-ray belt**, snapping Linda back to the present. She realized they were already through the **checkpoint**, and it was disorienting to see her husband still calm.

"Gate... B-thirty-three," she replied, fumbling with the ticket. "Meridian Flight Six. I saw the screen. **It's showing on time**."

They changed course for the **adjacent** **concourse**...

25 Explain the highlighted words and phrases in the text in your own words.

26 Find the words and phrases in bold which mean the same:

- |                                                                              |                                                                                     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1) a confrontation, meeting;                                                 | 9) a price for a less expensive class of seating on an airplane;                    |
| 2) careful with money;                                                       | 10) to hire a plane to fly to a specific destination on a certain day;              |
| 3) very unpleasant, disgusting;                                              | 11) pieces of luggage suitable for being carried aboard an airplane by a passenger; |
| 4) a procedure where a takeoff is delayed because of bad weather;            | 12) an airport terminal area where gates leading to an aircraft are located;        |
| 5) extremely tired, exhausted;                                               | 13) to manage, to cope with.                                                        |
| 6) not having enough workers to do a job;                                    |                                                                                     |
| 7) a place at the airport where tickets are sold;                            |                                                                                     |
| 8) someone whose job is to help passengers with their luggage at an airport; |                                                                                     |

27 A) There were quite a lot of problems the ground personnel at O'Hare airport had to face on that particular day. Make a list of those problems.

B) Linda and Jason Lao are telling their friends about their experience at O'Hare airport. What do you think they could speak about?

## XI. SPEAKING

- 28** Student A from Ukraine is planning to spend his/ her summer holidays travelling around the UK. Student B, his/ her friend who is an exchange student at Leeds University, is helping Student A to plan the itinerary.

### STUDENT A

1. Say that your parents have given you some money for your birthday and you plan to visit the UK. Ask Student B to advise you on what you should start with.
2. Thank your friend for the idea. Mention that it's going to be your first experience of international travel, and ask for some useful tips.
3. Tell your friend how long you will be staying in London and what you would like to see.
4. Say that you can afford to visit one more town, and your dream is to see Oxford. Ask what the best way to get there is.
5. Ask if there are any student discounts on railway tickets in the UK.
6. Thank your friend for all the suggestions. Express hope to see him/ her in the summer.

### STUDENT B

1. Strongly recommend Student A to book a flight to London as early as possible. Suggest doing it online and explain why.
2. Talk about possible problems at the check-in counter, excess luggage, safety precautions at the airport and in-flight regulations.
3. Suggest that Student A should take a cruise on the Thames, and mention what sights he/ she should be able to see.
4. Inform your friend that he/ she can go to Oxford by bus or by train. Add that taking the night train is more convenient and explain why.
5. Show uncertainty. Advise to buy a round trip ticket, and suggest looking up information on other discounts on the internet.
6. Say that you have never been to Oxford, and would love to join Student A if he/ she goes there.



## XII. WRITING

### 29 Writing Letters of Complaint.

A) Fill in the gaps in the sample complaint letter to a travel agency for sending the wrong tickets.

- |                               |                                    |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| • book a ticket for           | • carelessness shown by your staff |
| • getting a waitlisted ticket | • a week in advance                |
| • confirm my travel plan      | • suffer inconvenience             |
| • was delivered a ticket      | • arrange for a confirmed ticket   |
| • an immediate response       |                                    |

Dear Sir or Madam,

I am writing to inform you that my travel plans have been jeopardized, on account of (1) \_\_\_\_\_ booking the tickets. I had requested your manager, Mr. Sharma, to (2) \_\_\_\_\_ Delhi by Shatabdi Express, for 9th September. Today to my horror, I (3) \_\_\_\_\_ for 11th September that is of no use to me.

I have to be in Delhi on the 10th morning to attend a seminar in which I am presenting a paper. It was on account of this, I had booked my ticket (4) \_\_\_\_\_, as I did not want to risk (5) \_\_\_\_\_. I am hereby returning the ticket and would like you to immediately (6) \_\_\_\_\_ for 9th by Shatabdi Express or any other suitable train. I shall expect (7) \_\_\_\_\_ confirming the status of my ticket by today evening. This is imperative, for I have to (8) \_\_\_\_\_ to my host. Besides, I have to make other necessary arrangements that I am unable to do now.

Meanwhile, you should investigate as to how this happened and ensure that this does not recur in future. This would be in your own business interest, so that clients like me do not (9) \_\_\_\_\_ on account of lapses at your end.

I would appreciate your special attention to this very serious issue.

*Sincerely,*  
*Kevin Ree*

B) Write a Complaint Letter to an Airline.

You booked an aisle seat for your British Airways flight in the economy class to ensure you would be sitting where you wanted and not where they put you and paid £37 for that service. Onboard, you found out that the airline had mistakenly given the same seat to another passenger. Write a letter of complaint to the management of the airline about the situation you found yourself in and the inefficient actions of the flight attendants. Follow the given guidelines. Begin your letter like this:

*To Whom It May Concern/ Dear Customer Relations Department,*

**Paragraph 1:** Briefly and clearly state the overall problem. Include details and dates of your flight.

**Paragraph 2:** Describe the incident as clearly as possible.

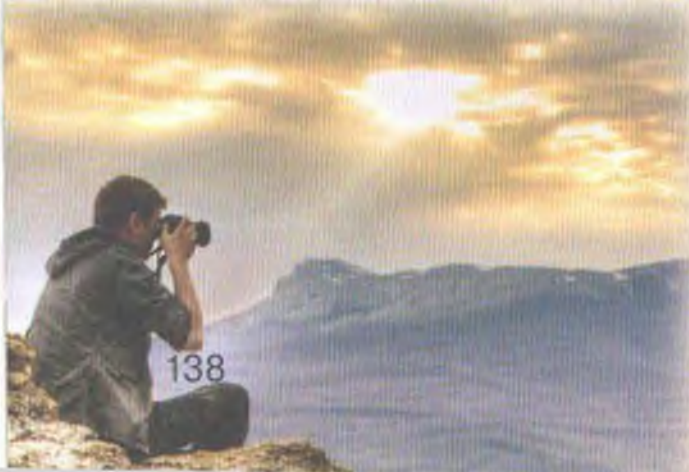
**Paragraph 3:** State what you expect the airline to do.

30 Write a letter to your friend and tell him/ her about your plans to go on a river cruise in Europe next summer. Describe what the travel agency offers and what your expectations are. (Find factual information on the Internet about river cruises in Europe.)

## XIII. REVISION TRANSLATION

31 Translate into English.

1. Ми трохи не спізналися на потяг. Коли ми потрапили на платформу, провідники просили всіх, окрім пасажирів, залишити потяг. На щастя, наш вагон був недалеко, і ми встигли сісти в потяг вчасно. Наш спальний вагон був заповнений, але в нашому купе не було інших пасажирів, і ми поклали речі під нижню полку і нарешті змогли простягти втомлені ноги.
2. Единбург був включений до списку міст, які неодмінно треба відвідати, отже ми вирішили поїхати туди, хоча від нашого міста не ходив прямий поїзд, і нам довелося двічі пересаджуватися. Але північну столицю варто було подивитися, і ми про це не жалкуємо.
3. Багато місцевих жителів, хто їздив на роботу потягом, змушені були пересісти на дешеві авіарейси, коли ціни на залізничні квитки підвищились. Залізничні компанії намагалися пояснити, що нові потяги та модернізовані колії забезпечили вищу швидкість і більшу ефективність, але ціна все ще була занадто високою навіть на сезонні або пільгові квитки.
4. Моя бабуся розповідала, що десь сорок років тому поїздка потягом була справжньою пригодою. Вона могла тривати декілька днів. Подорожуючи потягом, можна було лежати на верхній полиці та милуватися краєвидами. Можна було потоваришувати з супутниками, перекусити у себе в купе або піти поїсти до вагону-ресторану. Сьогодні не тільки потяги, а і пасажирі змінилися. Після того як провідник збере квитки та роздасть постільну білизну, багато з пасажирів проводять весь свій час з ноутбуками та телефонами і не спілкуються один з одним.



5. **Подорож літаком** може іноді приносити певні клопоти. Зробивши тільки декілька розсудливих приготувань перед тим, як ви сядете у літак, ви можете почуватися зручніше і менш напружено. Зайдіть на вебсайт авіакомпанії, та ознайомтесь з правилами і нормативами перевезення багажу, який ви будете реєструвати та здавати, і ручного багажу, та зважте ваші сумки перед тим, як ви подорожуватимете. Якщо ви купуєте свій квиток онлайн, ви можете роздрукувати ваш посадковий талон заздалегідь і це допоможе вам уникнути черги. Також, якщо ви віддаєте перевагу певному місцю на літаку — місцю біля вікна або місцю біля проходу, переконайтеся, що ви бронюєте місця на свій рейс заздалегідь. Упакуйте всі предмети першої необхідності у вашу ручну поклажу — не забудьте про ваші особисті документи і документи для подорожі та невеличкий набір (комплект) речей для подорожі на випадок, якщо ваш багаж буде втрачений або затримається. В цьому випадку вам доведеться звернутися до відділу видачі багажу. Якщо ви подорожуєте за кордон нічним рейсом, спіть! Синдром зміни часового поясу — не зовсім приємне відчуття.



6. **Минулого літа ми поїхали в круїз** навколо Аляски, і це було дійсно захоплюючим. Вибираючи круїз, ми вирішили обрати пакет «все включено» та вільну від стресів відпустку. Ми зарезервували каюту з балконом на верхній палубі. Це було трохи дорожче, але варто додаткових витрат. Усі члени команди були доброзичливі і професійні. Коли ми сіли на корабель, капітан розповів нам про усі правила безпеки, у тому числі, як користуватися рятувальними жилетами, і поділився деякими порадами, як подолати морську хворобу, якщо це станеться. Впродовж нашої подорожі ми захоплювалися дивовижними краєвидами і красою берегової лінії. Ми бачили китів, чудові заходи сонця, маяки і темну синяву води навколо. Розваги включали нічні клуби, бари, дискотеки і казино. Круїз був незабутнім!



# Unit 9

## DESTINATION: HOLIDAY

### I. LEAD-IN

- 1 Holiday quiz.  
Choosing where to go on holiday is a tough decision. After all, most of us have the opportunity to do it only once a year so you want to be sure you make the best choice. Try our fun holiday quiz to determine which type of holiday you should take and where.



## The Questions

1. It's time to start packing: what bag do you use?

- A: A full size suitcase of course, you never know what you might need.
- B: Hand luggage only; you don't need much and it's much cheaper to travel this way.
- C: A good sized rucksack which is easy to carry around.
- D: Whichever luggage bag comes to hand first.

2. What items go in first?

- A: Swimsuit, sun cream, sunglasses and painkillers to help with the hangovers.
- B: Camera, guide books and comfortable shoes.
- C: Sturdy shoes, water bottle and a first aid kit.
- D: All of the above; as the scouts say, "prepare for everything".

3. Which activity sounds like the most fun?

- A: Sunbathing, swimming, cocktails and relaxation sounds about right!
- B: Museums, historical buildings and plenty of culture ring my bell.
- C: White water rafting followed by a full day hike.
- D: A kayaking excursion, shopping at the local markets and a sunset dinner cruise.

4. Which season do you usually go on holiday in?

- A: High season, in the middle of July when the temperatures are at their highest and the majority of people are on holiday.
- B: Mid-season, you can still enjoy nice weather but it's a bit less crowded.
- C: Low-season, you prefer to have a destination all to yourself and not sweat for two weeks solid.
- D: It doesn't matter, just depends on when you can find the cheapest deal.

5. When you are on holiday you wake up:

- A: Usually mid-morning, the previous night was a heavy one!
- B: Bright and early; first in to the breakfast room and straight out to start sightseeing. There's no time to waste!
- C: About the same time as you wake up when you're at home; you have an internal body clock!
- D: Some early mornings and some lay-ins; you are on holiday after all!

6. Your holiday nightmare would be:

- A: Backpacking through Asia and sleeping in hostel dorm rooms with nice people but plenty of creepy crawlies.
- B: A road trip through the beautifully desolate Australian outback.
- C: An all-inclusive beach resort in the height of the summer season.
- D: No trip would be a nightmare for you; there are positives to enjoy in every destination.



## The Results

You've finished the quiz! Now, take a look at your result.

**Mostly As — You are a self-confessed sun worshipper.**

If you answered mostly A's, you're a beach lover through and through! The word holiday to you means golden sands, turquoise sea and plenty of sunbathing. Quite simply, if the sun isn't shining on holiday, you won't have a good time. A sun drenched beach is your idea of heaven!

**Mostly Bs — You are a city break obsessive.**

You're a culture vulture who loves nothing more than to explore a new city, from the cafes to the churches and everything in between. City breaks are your nectar and you probably go on a couple of them each year. After all, travelling with hand luggage only means you can nab some super cheap flights so we don't blame you.

**Mostly Cs — You thrive off fresh air.**

You're best friends with Mother Nature and nothing makes you happier than wandering around in the great outdoors. There are so many beautiful places in this world that you could pick just about any country and find beautiful panoramas.

**Mostly Ds — You like a bit of everything.**

You're a happy-go-lucky holidaymaker who enjoys a bit of everything on their annual trip. Sure one or two days spent on the beach is relaxing but you soon start to get bored and fidgety and set about exploring, first the old town and then further afield with one or two excursions to local beauty spots. Coastal cities are probably a good shout; they generally have a good atmosphere, bucket loads of history and of course a couple of beautiful beaches.

## II. VOCABULARY

### TYPES OF HOLIDAYS

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• a hitch-hiking holiday</li> <li>• a fishing holiday</li> <li>• a sightseeing holiday</li> <li>• a climbing holiday</li> <li>• a trekking holiday</li> <li>• a family holiday</li> <li>• a freebie holiday</li> <li>• a rowing and canoeing holiday</li> <li>• a beach holiday</li> <li>• a camping holiday</li> <li>• a cycling holiday</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• a self-catering holiday</li> <li>• a cruise</li> <li>• a hiking holiday</li> <li>• a horse-back riding holiday</li> <li>• a luxury holiday</li> <li>• an all-inclusive holiday</li> <li>• a fly-drive holiday</li> <li>• a honeymoon holiday</li> <li>• a backpacking holiday</li> <li>• a package holiday</li> </ul> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**2 Say what type of holiday this is:**

1. A long and difficult journey on foot when you carry your things in your rucksack.
2. A holiday given to somebody without payment, usually by a company.
3. A holiday organized by a travel agency at a fixed price.
4. An organized holiday that includes your air ticket, car rental and accommodation.
5. A holiday when you take long walks in the countryside or in the mountains.
6. A holiday on which while travelling from one place to another you get free rides from the drivers of passing cars.

**3 Arrange the types of holidays under the categories. Give reasons for your choice. Some holidays can fall into several categories.**

	Category	Type of Holiday
1	romantic	
2	adventure	
3	expensive	
4	cheap	
5	convenient	
6	relaxing	
7	educational	

**4 Match the types of holiday with the places you think people might stay at and sleep in. Think of all possible options.**

	Type of holiday		Place
1	a package holiday	a	a tent
2	a camping holiday	b	a hotel
3	a cruise	c	a resort
4	a skiing holiday	d	a youth hostel
5	a safari	e	a caravan (Br E) = a trailer (Am E)
6	a trekking holiday	f	a guesthouse
7	a sailing holiday	g	a boat cabin / a ship cabin
8	a sightseeing holiday	h	a villa / a chalet
		i	a ski lodge

5 Read the passages and decide which type of holiday is described. Translate the passages into Ukrainian.

1. Our operators offer a set itinerary including all flights, car hire and pre-booked accommodation, and tailor-made options for those who want to choose their own route or accommodation.
2. This unique trip is inspired by an elemental desire many people have for extreme living. You'll trek through dense lowland jungle, explore Borneo's deep cave systems and float down muddy rivers by raft.
3. These holidays are definitely good for the mind and soul! Immerse yourself in history and intrigue in Europe's world-known places. The continent's most beautiful city is certainly Prague. The Czech Republic capital is a maze of picturesque streets and ornate squares. Since 1992, it has been included in the UNESCO list of World Heritage Sites.
4. A fantastic family escape, the Bahia Principe Tenerife is a brilliant hotel with a friendly atmosphere and stylish design. Away from the busy resorts, it is perfect if you want a fun holiday together, with time to enjoy your very own suite, as well as pools, sports, and other hotel's attractions. Suites sleep up to 3 adults or 2 adults and 2 children, have private facilities, whirlpool bath, air-conditioning, ceiling fan, hairdryer, satellite TV, telephone, safe, minibar and a balcony or terrace with a sea view. Cots are available on request. Daily maid service with towel change, and linen changed twice a week.
5. Welcome! Visiting Vancouver, British Columbia? Want to experience staying outdoors? We offer affordable rental packages for recreational facilities, catering to individuals and families. All rentals include tents, sleeping bags, cooking equipment, dishes and much more... With your rental vehicle for as little as 5 nights or longer travel at your own pace, do what you want to do, inexpensively, while taking in the breathtaking beauty of the surrounding regions.

**Language Note**

**Holiday** *Br E* also holidays; *Am E* vacation

1. a time of rest from work, school etc;
2. a period of time when you travel to another place for pleasure;
3. a day fixed by law on which people do not have to go to work or school;
4. **the holidays** *Am E* the period between Thanksgiving and New Year; *Br E* the period in the summer when most people take a holiday.

British English speakers say "**holiday**" (**NOT "holidays"**) in the phrases **be on holiday**, **go on holiday** and **return/ come back from holiday**.



- to go on holiday
- to be on holiday
- to return from holiday = to come back home from holiday
- to set off on holiday
- to have a holiday = to take a holiday
- to book a holiday = to reserve a holiday
- to need a holiday

- to spend a holiday
- to cancel a holiday
- to deserve a holiday
- to enjoy a holiday
- to offer a holiday
- to be entitled to holidays
- to get a holiday

## Unit 9. Destination: holiday

### 6 Fill in the gaps with appropriate collocations in the correct form.

1. Young people with backpacks and habitual travellers may know what it means to go on a journey, but for most the romance of escape begins with deciding where \_\_\_\_\_ and then getting there as quickly as possible.
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ because I need to recharge my batteries, I need to get away from the stress.
3. It is already possible \_\_\_\_\_ direct from your sitting room by phone or through your home computer.
4. Under package holiday regulations you only have the right \_\_\_\_\_ if your organiser has made major changes to your holiday.
5. A family were shocked when they \_\_\_\_\_ to Spain and found a deadly scorpion hiding in their suitcase.
6. With most schools breaking up on or before 22 July, millions of families will be \_\_\_\_\_ in a few weeks' time.
7. Most employees \_\_\_\_\_ public \_\_\_\_\_ regardless of how long they've been working.
8. Tourists are \_\_\_\_\_ to various destinations across Europe. For popular destinations like Italy, there are packages to various regions within the country.
9. Jill and her daughter Heather recently \_\_\_\_\_ in Costa Blanca, Spain.
10. Politicians are human beings who \_\_\_\_\_ just like anyone else, David Cameron said on Sunday as he prepared to leave the country for a family getaway.
11. She says: "I feel guilty at the thought that I \_\_\_\_\_ since setting up my business five years ago, and I am desperate for one. But I work alone, so who will look after things while I'm away?"
12. Not surprisingly, people in the UK (along with most of the world's population) prefer \_\_\_\_\_ during the summer, and beach holidays are by far the most popular.

## III. READING

- 7 **A)** How would you plan for a perfect holiday?  
From the list below choose the most important steps in planning your holiday and justify your choice.

- Decide on your destination.
- Go to websites to browse travel photos, journals, and blogs sharing people's experiences.
- Plan your budget.
- Find a pet-sitter.
- Clean the house/ flat you live in.
- Decide what to pack.
- Plan your transportation.
- Do your laundry.
- Reserve your stay.
- Look for discounts.
- Plan activities and entertainment.



- B)** Do you agree with the following quotation: "A vacation is like love — anticipated with pleasure, experienced with discomfort and remembered with nostalgia"? Explain why.



8 Read the letter of Stephanie Spitler to an Internet magazine and complete the table.

The things the writer does to plan for a trip	What/ how she feels
1.	
2.	
3.	

### Vacation Anticipation: Waiting is the Hardest Part

I love every part of planning for a trip. I love researching places and dates and airfares. I can't get enough of obsessively checking reviews on TripAdvisor and playing around with fare finders ("If I leave Wednesday morning instead of Tuesday night, will I save any money? Would it balance out so I could stay an extra day?"). These kinds of scheduling maneuvers really get me excited. I feel like a super spy, or at the very least an extremely efficient travel agent. I love the feeling I get from finding a great deal, or discovering a way to beat the system and get a price much lower than everything else I've seen. It probably has something to do with our hunting/ gathering past but, whatever the reason, I'm addicted to it.

But there's a sad lull once the tickets have been booked and the hotel reservations have been made. When I've planned out my days and activities and the sights I'll see, an uneasy calm descends over me. After I've made a packing list and highlighted my guidebook and downloaded some apps, I feel a bit lost and adrift. In that quiet time when everything that can be done ahead of time HAS been done, I get antsy. I've prepped and washed and packed and planned, and now all that's left to do is sit and wait.

Sure, I could continue with my research, but I've found that that just adds confusion. Not long after confusion, doubt comes creeping in, and I start worrying. Am I really maximizing my time? Have I over-scheduled? Have I found the best things to see/ do/ eat?

I know from experience that once I start second-guessing, it can all go downhill quickly. I need to close the browser window, log out,

and have faith that I've done my best. The only problem with that? I'm left with nothing to do but wait. And waiting is THE WORST.

I hate surprises (This only applies to surprises that I know are coming. I would LOVE a surprise party, because I'd have no idea about it. Waiting is torture, because I know I have something to look forward to.). I have a love/hate relationship with anticipation. I get so singularly focused on something that it feels like I have to wait years for it to finally get here. Try as hard as I can, I cannot "take my mind off it" or "just think about something else." Forgetting is for things you don't care enough about to remember. And travel is pretty much the thing I care about most, so no; I can't just "put it out of my head."

I have, however, found some ways to cope with the excruciating torment of waiting. I continually check my packing list to make sure I have everything. I run through my to-do list in my head. I do things that I know I won't want to do right after I get back, things like stocking up on non-perishable groceries so I don't come home to only water and one lonely can of soup. I get my laundry under control so I don't come home to crazy piles of dirty clothes and nothing clean to wear. I clean my place, because I seriously won't want to do THAT anytime soon after I get home. Once I've prepared for my departure, the only thing left to do is prepare for my return, so that it's as easy as possible. And if all else fails, I start planning all the trips I'll want to take as soon as I get back.

How do you pass the time before a vacation?

9 Answer the questions.

1. What does the writer find challenging about her holiday?
2. What does the writer have doubts about when finishing her preparations and why?
3. What does she usually do to cope with her worries?
4. How does she describe her vacation anticipation?
5. What does she do to cope with her impatience while waiting for her trip?
6. Do you experience the same feelings as the writer describes when anticipating your vacation?
7. What do you like more: to go on holiday or to come back? Why?
8. Have you ever had any post-holiday blues (a type of mood — tiredness, loss of appetite, strong feelings of nostalgia, and in some cases, depression — that people returning home from a long trip may experience)? Are there any ways you've found to cope with post-travel depression?

10 A) Match the statements (1–9) with the replies (A–I) and translate the phrases in bold into Ukrainian.

HE SAID:	
1	I spend most of my life travelling, moving from one hotel to the other.
2	Can you recommend a good guesthouse in this area?
3	Last year I went to Australia, Canada, Brazil, Argentina and China.
4	How are we going to get home? We haven't got enough money for a taxi.
5	Last year, we went to one of those resorts where everything — food and drink — is included.
6	You don't have much luggage with you.
7	On my first visit to Indonesia, I found everything so different from England.
8	We left London at 7 o'clock in the morning and didn't arrive in Inverness until 8 in the evening!
9	I love going to busy, lively resorts for my holiday.

SHE REPLIED:	
a	Really? I prefer to go somewhere a bit quieter, <b>off the beaten track</b> .
b	Wow! I didn't realize you were such a <b>globetrotter</b> !
c	Poor you! You spent a whole day <b>on the road</b> .
d	Oh, I know what you mean. I <b>experienced</b> a similar <b>culture shock</b> when I went to Vietnam.
e	I would hate <b>to live out of</b> a <b>suitcase</b> like that.
f	Why don't we <b>thumb a lift</b> ?
g	It sounds great. I've never been <b>on an all-inclusive holiday</b> .
h	Yes, there's a nice <b>B&amp;B</b> around the corner.
i	Well, I prefer <b>to travel light</b> .



B) Describe your travel preferences using the phrases in bold. Give reasons.

## IV. LISTENING AND SPEAKING

11 You will hear five different people talking about their preferences in having a holiday. Match the speakers as you hear them with statements A–G. There are two extras that you do not need to use.

• Speaker 1	A. This person is a real party animal who loves holidaying in exotic places.
• Speaker 2	B. This person is not keen on going abroad as travelling long distances can be quite challenging with children.
• Speaker 3	C. This person only goes on package holidays and is very careful and cautious in foreign countries.
• Speaker 4	D. This person likes to make his/ her own travel arrangements and is really keen on action-packed holidays.
• Speaker 5	E. This person cannot always afford staying at 5-star hotels, but is a true social butterfly and prefers to spend holidays with friends.
	F. This person is a culture vulture who likes to take in the local atmosphere at a leisurely pace.
	G. This person prefers luxurious places that offer plenty of peace and quiet.

12 Answer the questions.

1. What kind of holiday have you recently been on? Tell your partner or group about it.
2. Which of the holidays described above would you like to go on? Why?
3. When on holiday what is more important to you: relax, de-stress, recharge or to explore new places and discover new things?
4. Do you agree with the view that some holidays can rather exhaust than refresh? Give reasons.



## V. READING

### Green Tourism in Ukraine

13 Answer the questions.

1. What is your idea of ecotourism?
2. What are the advantages of this form of tourism? Think in terms of:

- expenses
- health

- relaxation
- local attractions

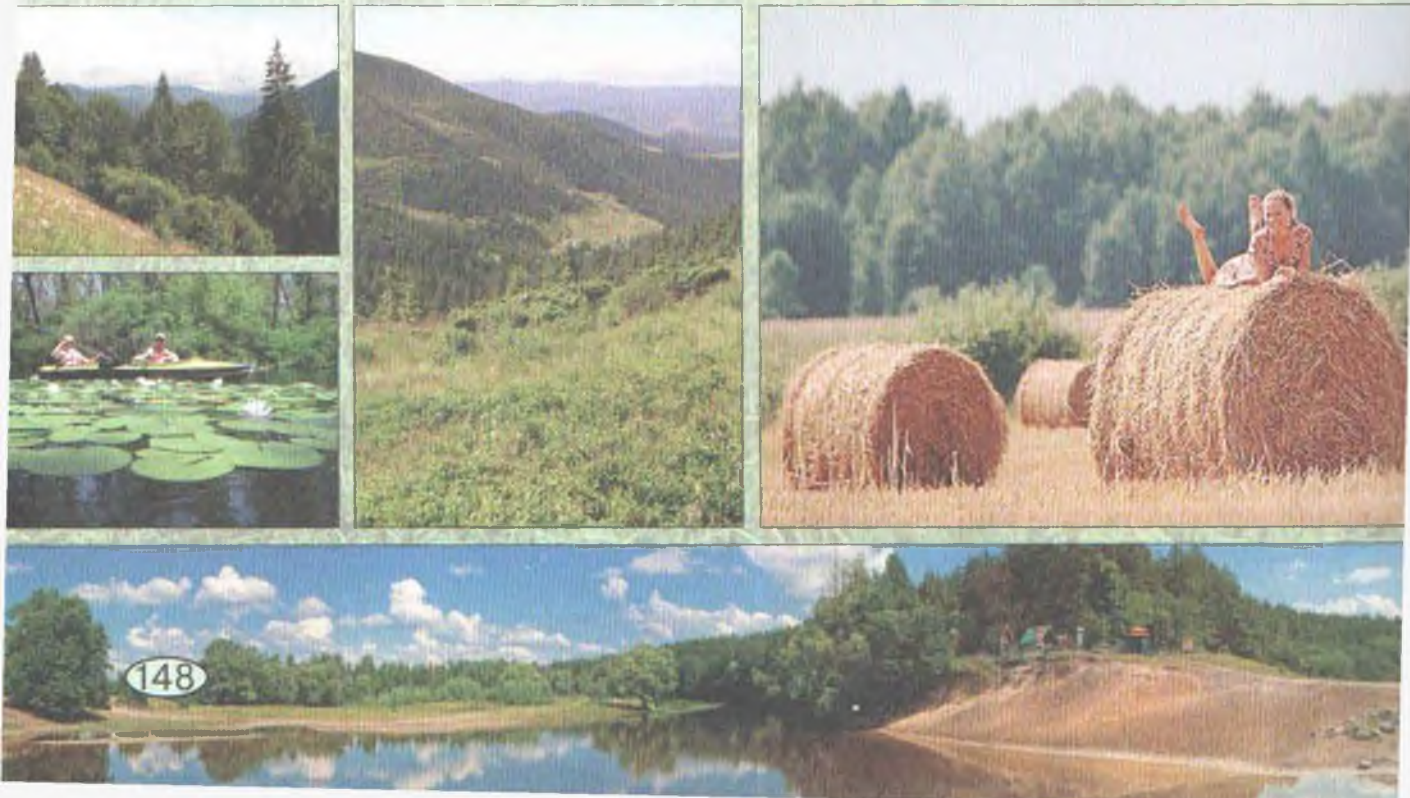
- local customs

14 Read the texts and fill in the gaps.

#### Text A Green Tourism

- foster • conservation • destinations • environment • pristine • purperts • intervention

'Green tourism' (also known as ecological tourism, or ecotourism) is a responsible travel to fragile, (1) \_\_\_\_\_, and usually protected areas. It (2) \_\_\_\_\_ to educate the traveller; to provide funds for conservation; to directly benefit the economic development and political empowerment of local communities; and to (3) \_\_\_\_\_ respect for different cultures and for human rights. Green tourism is considered important by those who participate in it so that future generations may experience aspects of the environment relatively untouched by human (4) \_\_\_\_\_. Green tourism typically involves travel to (5) \_\_\_\_\_ where flora, fauna, and cultural heritage are the primary attractions. Responsible green tourism includes programs that minimize the negative aspects of conventional tourism on the (6) \_\_\_\_\_ and enhance the cultural integrity of local people. Therefore, in addition to evaluating environmental and cultural factors, an integral part of ecotourism is the promotion of recycling, energy efficiency, water (7) \_\_\_\_\_, and creation of economic opportunities for local communities.



## Text B

• trained • protected • underestimated • required • untamed • needed • guided

In a country that still boasts large stretches of relatively (1) \_\_\_\_\_ natural areas, green tourism in Ukraine is fast becoming a big lure. The value of this kind of tourism can never be (2) \_\_\_\_\_ as not only does it provide the people of the country with much (3) \_\_\_\_\_ foreign currency, but it also helps to set up systems which protect the natural wildlife and help promote a more stable environment. Ukraine's green tourism is a popular travel option and is well worth looking into.

The majority of (4) \_\_\_\_\_ wildlife areas spread over large areas and this means that you will be (5) \_\_\_\_\_ to move about quite a bit. There are a few Ukrainian green tourism companies which offer guided tours on safari vehicles, there are guided hiking tours and (6) \_\_\_\_\_ mountain biking tours which are very popular with both Ukrainians and tourists from other parts of the world. Ecotourism guides are fully (7) \_\_\_\_\_ and qualified to present an informative and relatively safe environment where you will be able to enjoy the wonders of nature. They will be able to help visitors leave as small a mark on the environment as possible whilst at the same time providing a fascinating insight into the natural world around them.

15 Compare your ideas about green tourism with the information from the texts.

## VI. SPEAKING

## Event Tourism

Event tourism, or travelling for the purpose of attending a certain event, has become the ultimate discovery in the world of travel business in the 21<sup>st</sup> century. The world is becoming smaller and smaller thanks to information technologies and modern ways of travelling. People know what is going on on the other side of the planet at any given minute and they want to be there to witness the event and participate. Events make remote corners of the world and developing countries topnotch destinations. Here is a chart showing all kinds of events that can boost event tourism.

**CULTURAL CELEBRATIONS**

- festivals
- carnivals
- commemorations
- religious events

**POLITICAL AND STATE**

- summits
- royal occasions
- political events
- VIP visits

**ARTS AND ENTERTAINMENT**

- concerts
- award ceremonies

**BUSINESS AND TRADE**

- meetings, conventions
- consumer and trade shows
- fairs, markets

**EDUCATIONAL AND SCIENTIFIC**

- conferences
- seminars
- clinics

**SPORT COMPETITION**

- amateur/ professional
- spectator/ participant

**RECREATIONAL**

- sports or games for fun

**PRIVATE EVENTS**

- weddings
- parties
- socials

16 A) Match the pictures (1–7) with the events (A–G).

- A. Odessa International Film Festival
- B. Oracle Open World San Francisco 2014
- C. Rio de Janeiro Carnival, Brazil
- D. Venice Carnival, Italy

- E. International Dental Conference, Dubai UAE
- F. Tour de France
- G. South African Cheese Festival



B) Say what type of event each picture shows, what kinds of tourists/ visitors it can attract and why. What can visitors do while attending these events?

17 Answer the questions.

1. What kind of events are you interested in? Have you travelled anywhere with the sole purpose of attending a certain event?
2. What country/ countries are famous for their yearly events that attract tourists?
3. What event has Ukraine held recently that made it a popular sports tourism destination?
4. What cultural/ sporting/ educational events could be organized in your city/ town?
5. What countries have you visited or would you like to visit to attend
  - a state official event (a presidential inauguration; a royal celebration);
  - a religious celebration;
  - a scientific conference;
  - a trade/ gastronomic/ agricultural fair/ festival;
  - a concert/art festival;
  - a sports event?
6. What private events have you travelled for? How far did you go and how long did you stay?

## VII. READING

**18** Online 'travel communities', which enable you to explore both your own city and the rest of the world, meeting likeminded people along the way, are becoming more and more popular. Michele Legge, a veteran host and surfer from Perth, Australia, is sharing her experience and giving advice.

Read the text and fill in the gaps.

- to cook for them
- the keys to their house
- around your local area
- potential hosts
- hostel
- spare room
- on a night out
- without judgement
- safety
- daily life
- a general couch request



### Couchsurfing: More than just a free bed for the night

Couchsurfers are able to stay on a host's sofa or in their (1) \_\_\_\_\_ for free, and the host will often show the surfer round the city and welcome them into their (2) \_\_\_\_\_. Various websites exist which help to put surfers and potential hosts in touch, and all you need to do is sign up. The most popular website of its kind, the Facebook of couchsurfing if you will, is [www.couchsurfing.org](http://www.couchsurfing.org), which boasts 6 mln members in 100,000 cities worldwide. It's free to set up a profile, and before you travel you can either send out (3) \_\_\_\_\_ to the area or send a message to a specific host, searchable via the site.

Firstly try and fill in as many categories as possible. While information such as your favourite film may seem trivial, it all adds up to give a holistic picture of you as a real person, and therefore reassures (4) \_\_\_\_\_.

The key things that any host or surfer should focus on are the references an individual has been given by others. My advice to any student thinking of travelling is get involved before you leave home: join couchsurfing, invite travellers for coffee, show them (5) \_\_\_\_\_, take them (6) \_\_\_\_\_, go to local meetups and host if you can. This way you start building networks and get references which always looks good.

When I tell people I've been couchsurfing, their immediate concern is always (7) \_\_\_\_\_. People forget that the site enables a two-way exchange, with the risks extending both ways. It's a big deal for a host to give a stranger (8) \_\_\_\_\_, and I remember feeling reassured as soon as I realised that my first host, Silvia, was as nervous as I was about the exchange.

The biggest mistake for any surfer is to come to a host's house and treat it like a (9) \_\_\_\_\_. If you ask me who were the worst people I have hosted? Top contenders are: two German girls who spoke perfectly good English, but who would only speak to each other, in German, and a man who just disappeared without even leaving a note. So, as a surfer don't be rude. Another tip is to accept what your host has to offer (10) \_\_\_\_\_. This is certainly something I found useful during my second CS experience when staying in Munich. At first the realisation that Stefan, my host, got all his food from bins was a bit repulsive, but I soon came round to the eco-friendly notion of Dumpster Diving! Finally, hosts love it if you offer (11) \_\_\_\_\_, and you could even bring them a little present from your own country.

## VIII. SPEAKING

### 19 Speak on the topics.

1. Describe the best/ worst trip you have ever taken. Explain what made it so good or bad.
2. What is a holiday of your dreams?
3. Which do you like better: holidays in winter or in summer? Why? What are their advantages and disadvantages?
4. Describe your hiking or backpacking experience.
5. Some people prefer to travel alone. Others prefer to travel in a group. What about you?
6. What kind of person would be a good travel companion for you?

## IX. VOCABULARY

### TYPES OF ACCOMMODATION

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• a hotel</li><li>• a B&amp;B (abbreviation of 'bed and breakfasts' — a small low-priced hotel which includes breakfast)</li><li>• a self-catering apartment</li></ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• a youth hostel</li><li>• a campsite</li><li>• a holiday camp</li><li>• a motel</li><li>• an en-suite bathroom</li><li>• half board</li></ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• full board</li><li>• a single room</li><li>• a double room</li><li>• a twin room</li><li>• a triple room</li><li>• a suite</li></ul> |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### 20 Choose an appropriate word or phrase from the box.

1. It is a small property often managed by a family. \_\_\_\_\_
2. If you only want accommodation and no meals, you should book this. \_\_\_\_\_
3. If you want a room but plan to use local restaurants for lunch and dinner, you should book this. \_\_\_\_\_
4. If you want a room and all your meals served at the same place, you should book this. \_\_\_\_\_
5. This is the place where you can stay in your own tent. \_\_\_\_\_
6. If you want entertainment for the children, you should come here. \_\_\_\_\_
7. If you stay here, you may have to share a room. \_\_\_\_\_
8. This facility adjoins your bedroom at the hotel where you stay and you won't have to share it with other guests. \_\_\_\_\_
9. If you travel by car, this is the convenient accommodation for you because it provides an accessible outdoor parking area. \_\_\_\_\_
10. This room has two single beds to accommodate two adults. A third adult will require an extra bed. \_\_\_\_\_
11. This room has one single bed, strictly for one adult only. No extra bed will fit. \_\_\_\_\_
12. This room has one large (Queen or King sized) bed to accommodate two adults. A third adult will require an extra bed. \_\_\_\_\_





## X. READING

21 A) Read the text and explain the highlighted words.

## Benefits of Staying at a Bed and Breakfast

Travelers looking for a more intimate experience on their next vacation may consider steering away from the mainstream hotel and book a night or two at a bed and breakfast. Modern bed and breakfasts have steered away from the Victorian age décor for a more contemporary look and have added comforts often seen at boutique hotels. Whether you want a romantic getaway or travel on a shoestring, a road trip to a bed and breakfast can be a perfect quick escape.

As you shop around for accommodation pricing you will find that more often than not most bed and breakfasts are close in price range to hotels within the area. While a fancy hotel may look nice on paper, you may consider that a bed and breakfast also includes a home cooked meal. At times, you may even find that a bed and breakfast serves dinner as well. In addition to the meals, many places offer a guest

pantry with free access to snacks along with a complimentary wine and cheese social hour.

Most bed and breakfasts feature rooms that are uniquely decorated with a variety of amenities. You will often find rooms with fireplaces and maybe even a whirlpool tub, not a feature you will frequently find in your run of the mill hotel. The anomaly does not stop at the interior decorating, bed and breakfasts can be found throughout the US within retired fire stations, refurbished light houses and upon sprawling vineyards.

Innkeepers are passionate about their business, they love the area they live in, and they specialize at making you feel right at home. You are a guest within their home and they strive to give you a personal and memorable experience. Innkeepers are fabulous resources and can give you all kinds of priceless information about local attractions and restaurants.

B) Make a list of benefits of staying at a B&B mentioned in the text.



**22** Read the text and match headings (A–F) with paragraphs (1–4). There are two extra options.

- |                                |                          |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| A. Travelling with kids        | D. Seeking luxuries      |
| B. International travel        | E. Vacation destinations |
| C. Budget-conscious travellers | F. Travelling alone      |

### When to Stay in Motels vs. Hotels while Travelling

Whether you're taking a planned trip across the country, going on restful vacation, or embarking on a semi-spontaneous trip just to clear your mind, inevitably you will be presented with a choice for an overnight stay — motels or hotels. Though each option has its own set of benefits, which should you choose for your occasion?

1. \_\_\_\_\_

Motels are well known for many different things, but they are best known for being inexpensive, even when compared to moderately priced hotels. If you're on a tight budget or you're just looking for a comfortable place to sleep, national motel chains can give you a familiar overnight resting place for less money than you would spend on a hotel room for the evening.

2. \_\_\_\_\_

Usually, hotels are the best option for those going on a vacation. If you purchase a vacation package, there's a good chance that you will automatically receive hotel reservations with that package. Moreover, hotels tend to offer more facilities that allow you greater comfort and convenience for extended stays than motels do.

3. \_\_\_\_\_

If you're travelling with children, it is recommended that you seek out the nearest affordable hotel for your nightly stay. Though most motels can certainly accommodate travelling families with kids, hotels tend to offer more facilities, which can keep the kids preoccupied, and hotels are generally located near various stores, which can be a godsend when you're travelling with kids for a multitude of reasons.

4. \_\_\_\_\_

If you're travelling outside of your country, it's a good idea to stay away from motels in foreign lands, especially if they are off the beaten path. While motels certainly offer authenticity to your stay, they can also offer some unwelcoming situations, especially if you do not know the regional dialect well. For international travel, it's a good idea to stick with well-known hotels — they specifically cater to tourists, and not just locals, and as such can help you to feel more secure during your stay.

Motels can work wonderfully for what they are — a short-term resting place for the road-weary traveller.

**23** Look through the list of the tips for staying at a hostel and choose those pieces of advice that:

- you totally agree with;
- you partially agree with;
- you find strange.

**Explain your reasons.**



## 10 Tips for Staying at a Hostel

For first-time hostellers, the thought of staying in a hostel tends to be very intimidating.

So take our tips into consideration.

1. Get to know the place — after putting your stuff in your room walk around the hostel and get to know the common areas.
2. Choose your room wisely: female only rooms are usually cleaner and quieter but co-ed rooms tend to be a lot of fun and you make friends much faster.
3. Pick a bottom bunk — they are much easier to get and more comfortable.
4. Take a sleep sheet (two sheets sewn together to make a self-contained sleep sack) in case a hostel doesn't provide bed linens.
5. Bring the extras — towels, soap, shampoo and flip flops for the shower are usually not offered in hostels.
6. Bring earplugs to be fine in shared rooms which will never be completely noise-free.
7. Dress in layers when you go to sleep — even though it may seem cold, a room-full of people can generate a lot of heat from their bodies.
8. Do not leave your money, passport and other valuables lying around in your room.
9. Don't be shy — introduce yourself, join other people's conversations, make friends and share valuable travel tips.
10. Relax and enjoy the ride! In general, backpackers and budget travelers are a decent trustworthy bunch, so just relax, get to know people, have fun and enjoy the ride!

## XI. LISTENING

24 Listen to the text and choose the true options.

1. The author's first experience in staying in the hostel was so bad that she *promised never to use it again/ never again tried it.*
2. The author's children used to stay *at home all the time/ only at full-service hotels.*
3. The London Central Youth Hostel was situated in *a modern building with shining windows/ a shabby building with peeling off paint.*
4. In the entrance hall one could see *photos of several London landmarks/ a map of the London Metro system.*
5. There was free computer access *in all the rooms/ in the common room.*
6. When hostels appeared they were intended mainly *for people with tight budgets to stay in cities/ for people with low incomes to travel round British villages.*
7. Hostels are popular *for their friendly atmosphere/ for their location off the beaten track.*
8. The reception desk is manned *round the clock/ only when the doors to the hostel are locked at night.*



## XII. SPEAKING

### USEFUL LANGUAGE

#### MAKING A HOTEL RESERVATION

##### Checking availability

- Do you have any vacancies?
- I'd like a room with a double bed, please, for one night.
- Have you got a room facing the park/ overlooking the sea from now until Monday?
  
- Yes, I can offer you...
- You can have a ... room at the back.
- I can let you have a room on the... floor.
- Sorry, we are fully booked.

##### Asking about facilities

- Do you allow pets?
- Do you have wheelchair access/ a car park?
- Does the room have internet access/ air conditioning?
- Is there a swimming pool/ gym?

##### Asking about the price

- What does it cost?
- What's the price per night?
- Is breakfast included?
- Have you got anything cheaper?

**25** Student A is a hotel receptionist. Student B is looking for a room in the hotel. Make up a dialogue following the instructions.

#### STUDENT A

1. Greet the visitor. Offer your help.
2. You are not fully booked. Enquire what kind of room the customer needs and for how long.
3. Offer two rooms, mention what views they have, which is quieter/ cheaper/bigger, what floor they are on.
4. Say how much the rooms are and add what the price includes (breakfast, car parking, air conditioning).
5. Reassure that the guest can use wi-fi and other facilities (name what).
6. Ask the guest to fill in the form, give the card key to the room. Explain the customer when meals are served. Express hope that (she) will enjoy his/her stay.

#### STUDENT B

1. Greet the receptionist. Ask if they have any vacancies.
2. Express relief because there are some rooms available. Answer the questions.
3. You want to know the price per night for each of the rooms and what other services are included in the price.
4. Choose a room and explain why you want it. Ask if there is internet access in the room.
5. Show the receptionist your ID, and ask about the restaurant opening hours.
6. Thank the receptionist. Ask for help with your luggage.



## XIII. WRITING

### Writing Letters of Complaint to a Travel Agency

- 26** When you came back from your holiday, you decided to write a letter of complaint to your travel agency because you were really dissatisfied with the arrangements made by the agency and ask for a partial refund.

Dear [Company],

#### First paragraph

Why you are writing (your name, what service you hired for trip to..., date).

*I am writing to complain about.../ to express my dissatisfaction with... / to inform you of the problems...*

#### Second paragraph

Make reference to your expectations and describe the problems you had during your trip (e.g. room service, no entertainment for adults/children, unreliable pick up service, unfriendly and impolite hotel staff, no tour guides available, the catering).

*I was really dissatisfied with...  
...was not what I expected/ you promised.  
You can imagine my disappointment when...  
To make things worse...*

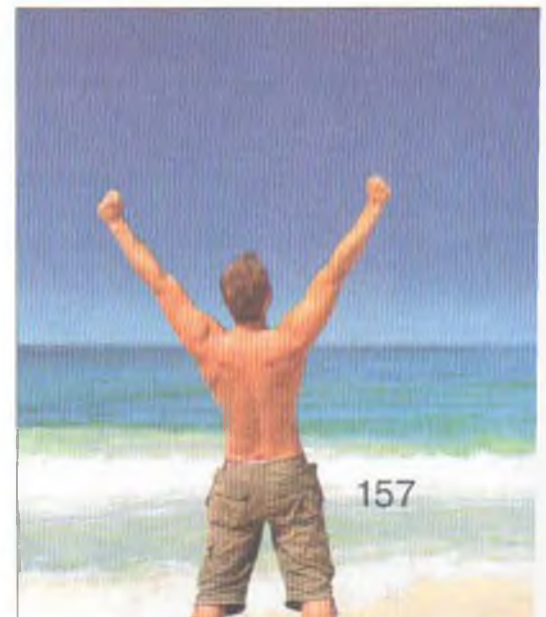
#### Third paragraph

Ask for a partial refund and give your contact information.

*I look forward to receiving...  
I expect you to...  
I think I am entitled to a partial refund.  
Please contact me as soon as possible to discuss how we may resolve this unpleasant situation.  
Please contact me by mail, at the above address, e-mail or by phone.*

*Thank you for your attention to this matter.*

Sincerely,  
Your Signature  
Your typed name



- 27** Describe your favourite type of holiday (120–150 words).

## XIV. REVISION TRANSLATION

28 Translate into English.

1. **Планування медового місяця** — дуже важливе завдання для вас як для подружжя, якщо ви хочете насолоджуватися **романтичною втечею** і разом милуватися прекрасними місцями. Є певні речі, які варто взяти до уваги, **плануючи вашу подорож**. Прийміть рішення щодо бюджету і зробіть вибір між **розкішним готелем із спа комплексом і авторською (gourmet) кухнею та скромнішим, але затишним номером із сніданком у домашньому готелі з задушевною атмосферою і унікальною можливістю відвідати цікаве місцеве свято**. Чи замість цього, ви, можливо, надаєте перевагу відпустці з елементами пригод у горах, щоб **надовго запам'ятати походи в екстремальних умовах**. Як би ви не спланували свій медовий місяць, ви впізнаєте і виявите багато нового, подорожуючи разом, і зможете звільнитися від стресу, розслабитися і поповнитися енергією.
2. Коли я їду у відпустку, я вважаю за краще замовити пакет «**все включено**». Мені подобаються **розкішні готелі** і все заплановане заздалегідь моїм **тур-агентом**. Комфорт і зручність — мої пріоритети, коли я **відпочиваю**. Я намагаюсь триматися подалі від місць, де треба самому готувати їжу, оскільки мені вистачає кухні вдома. **Мотелі або хостели, які більш доступні за ціною під час подорожі, також не для мене**. Я волію розслабитися та насолоджуватися життям на повну.
3. **Пошуки житла** можуть бути одним з найбільш дратівливих моментів **планування подорожей**. Є два шляхи вирішення проблеми житла: **замовляти заздалегідь** або знаходити місце для проживання безпосередньо в день приїзду. Замовити житло заздалегідь можна кількома шляхами: через інтернет, **тур-агента** або телефоном. Потрібно вирішити, який варіант проживання ви можете собі дозволити: якщо ви **подорожуєте з доволі обмеженим бюджетом**, тоді **мотелі, молодіжні гуртожитки або домашні готелі зі сніданком** можуть бути хорошим вибором. Вам, можливо, доведеться **змінити або зовсім відмінити замовлення**, якщо рейс вашого літака, потягу чи автобусу затримується або скасовується і ви таким чином **прибуваєте днем пізніше**.
4. Якщо вам подобаються **туристичні походи**, вам доведеться нести свій «дах та ліжко» з собою в **рюкзаку** або перевозити їх машиною. Ви ні від чого не залежите, коли **подорожуєте віддаленими маршрутами**, і є багато місць для встановлення наметів. На **туристичних маршрутах бази** часто розташовані на відстані, яку можна подолати за один день, і часто забороняється обладнувати табір між цими базами. Зазвичай на **базах** для туристів є всі необхідні зручності: душові і туалети, місця для вогнища, спеціальні місця для **встановлення наметів та столи для пікніку**. І звичайно, з вами буде вся захоплююча подих краса навколишніх **красвидів!**

# Unit 10

HEALTH  
IS THE  
GREATEST  
WEALTH

## I. LEAD-IN

**A)** Think over the given quotations about health. Which of them are just a good laugh and which give food for serious thought? Why?

Early to rise and early to bed makes a man healthy and wealthy and dead.

*(James Thurber)*

Be careful about reading health books. You may die of a misprint.

*(Mark Twain)*

The human body is the only machine for which there are no spare parts.

*(Hermann M. Biggs)*

Body and mind, like man and wife, do not always agree to die together.

*(Charles Caleb Colton)*

**B)** Answer the questions.

1. What are the symptoms of a common cold?  
Of appendicitis?
2. Have you ever been ill with anything serious like mumps, measles or chicken pox? How old were you? How did it go? How long did it take you to recover?
3. What types of injuries have you had? Were any of them serious? What treatment did you get?



## II. VOCABULARY **SICK/ ILL/ UNWELL**

<b>Sick</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In Br E <b>sick</b> is usually used in the expressions '<i>to be sick</i>', that is to have the food in your stomach come up through your mouth (synonyms: to vomit, to throw up), e.g. <i>Watch your step! Someone had been sick on the floor.</i></li> <li>'<i>To feel sick</i>' means to feel as if this is going to happen, e.g. <i>Slow down the car, I feel sick!</i></li> </ul> <p>In Am E '<i>to be sick</i>' means suffering from a disease or illness, e.g. <i>Lesly came from school early yesterday because she was sick.</i></p>
<b>Ill</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If someone has an illness or disease, you usually say that they are ill in Br E, and sick in Am E, e.g. <i>He missed a lot of school when he was ill (Br E)/ sick (Am E).</i></li> <li>In Am E <b>ill</b> suggests you have a more serious disease, from which you may not recover.</li> <li>In Br E <b>ill</b> is not used attributively, only predicatively, He is a very ill person. — <b>WRONG!</b> He is a very sick person. — <b>RIGHT!</b></li> </ul> <p>'Ill' can be used attributively only in some set expressions, e.g. <i>ill effects; ill treatment; ill health; ill feeling; ill will</i></p>
<b>Not well</b>	<p>If someone is slightly ill, you often say in Br E that they are <b>not well</b>, e.g. <i>I won't come out, I'm not very well.</i></p>
<b>Unwell</b>	<p><b>Unwell</b> is a more formal word for 'ill' or 'sick'.</p>
<b>Common collocations</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>to be sick/ ill/ unwell</li> <li>to feel sick/ ill/ unwell</li> <li>to become sick/ ill/ unwell</li> <li>to get sick/ ill/ unwell</li> <li>to fall sick/ ill</li> <li>to be taken sick/ ill (formal)</li> <li>to make smb sick/ ill</li> <li>to be off (work) sick/ ill</li> <li>to call in sick</li> </ul>

### 2 Fill in the gaps in the sentences. In some cases options are possible.

- One of the suspect's neighbors described him as "a very \_\_\_\_\_ man."
- Newspapers reported that the minister resigned because of \_\_\_\_\_ health.
- If you eat any more cake you'll make yourself \_\_\_\_\_.
- We don't have enough staff. Peter has been off \_\_\_\_\_ for two weeks and Emma has just called in \_\_\_\_\_.
- By lunchtime she was distinctly \_\_\_\_\_ and the school nurse told her she had a temperature and sent her home.
- In the morning Lady Gwendolyn was feeling very well but after dinner she was taken \_\_\_\_\_ suddenly.
- We both started to feel \_\_\_\_\_ shortly after the meal.
- She said she was feeling \_\_\_\_\_ and went home.
- A hospice is a hospital for terminally \_\_\_\_\_ people.
- All these diets are making you \_\_\_\_\_.



3 Translate into English.

1. Елізабет багато місяців опікувалася своєю матір'ю, яка була смертельно хвора на рак.
2. Старий дядько Генрі раптово захворів і помер два тижні потому.
3. Міс Геджес сьогодні захворіла, тому всі уроки замість неї проведе містер Келлер.
4. Батько Лінди серйозно хворий. Він вже більше місяця перебуває в лікарні Св. Луки.
5. Я дуже погано почувалася цілу добу, і Майклу довелося поратися з усіма хатніми справами і дітьми самому.
6. Я зателефонував своєму босу, щоб попередити, що не вийду на роботу через хворобу.
7. Недобре їсти чи пити щось прохолодне, коли ви захворіли, бо це може призвести до додаткових проблем, таких як застуда або ангіна.
8. Хворих та поранених евакуювали із зони військового конфлікту.
9. Кожного разу, коли я думаю про екзамени, мене буквально нудить.
10. Я не вийшов на роботу вчора через погане самопочуття.



Illness	Disease
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Illness</i> is a disease of the body or mind, or the condition of being ill.</li> <li>• <i>Illness</i> is more often used to refer to <u>the length of time or state of being unwell</u>, e.g. <i>He died in hospital after a long illness.</i></li> <li>• Do not use '<i>illness</i>' to talk about less serious problems such as headaches or colds.</li> <li>• <b>Common collocations:</b> <i>through illness (because of an illness)</i> <i>to recover from an illness</i></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Disease</i> is a particular kind of <i>illness</i>, especially one that spreads from one person to another or affects a particular part of your body, e.g. <i>infectious diseases; heart disease.</i> <i>E.g. She suffers from a rare disease of the brain.</i> <i>Heart disease runs in their family.</i></li> <li>• <i>Disease</i> [uncountable] can also be used to mean a lot of different diseases, e.g. <i>Cigarette smoking causes death and disease.</i></li> <li>• <b>Common collocations:</b> <i>to catch a disease = to contract a disease (formal);</i> <i>a disease spreads/ the spread of a disease; heart/ liver/ brain disease, or a disease of the brain/ stomach etc; a cure for a disease.</i></li> </ul>
<p><b>Both can be used in the following collocations:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>to have/ to suffer from a disease/ an illness</i>      • <i>the symptoms of a disease/ an illness</i></li> </ul>	
<p><b>Condition</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) [countable] an illness or health problem that affects you permanently or for a very long time: <i>People suffering from this condition should not smoke.</i> <b>heart/ lung/ skin condition</b></li> <li>2) [uncountable] how healthy or fit you are: <b>in (a) critical/ stable/ satisfactory condition</b> <b>physical/ mental condition</b></li> </ol>	

4 Match the medical terms with their definitions.

1	a symptom	a	a medical condition which causes discomfort, generally described from a patient's perspective
2	a complaint	b	a small living thing that causes infectious illnesses, or a type of infectious illness
3	a virus	c	an illness that is caused by bacteria and that affects one part of your body, such as your ears, throat, lungs, or skin
4	a bug	d	a change in your body or mind that shows that you are not healthy
5	a disorder	e	an illness that prevents part of your body from working properly or affects the way you behave, especially one that is permanent or continues for a long time
6	an infection	f	an illness that people catch very easily from each other but that is not very serious

Collocations with adjectives

a disease	chronic; contagious = infectious; fatal = deadly = lethal; incurable; inflammatory; serious; transmitted; tropical
an illness	acute; childhood; chronic; fatal; infectious; minor/ major; mental/ physical; serious; severe; terminal
a symptom	clinical; gastrointestinal; mental; mild; physical; psychiatric; respiratory; severe
a complaint	common; chest; minor; skin
a virus	chronic; deadly; ebola; live
a bug	flu; nasty; stomach; 24-hour flu
a disorder	eating; heart; lung; mental; stomach; psychiatric
an infection	mild; slight; severe

5 Fill in the gaps with the collocations from the box. In some sentences more than one option is possible.

- There's a \_\_\_\_\_ going around — four people in my office were sick last week. I hope I don't pick it up.
- \_\_\_\_\_ such as measles and chickenpox are highly contagious.
- The hospital specializes in successful treating \_\_\_\_\_ like meningitis.
- Travellers to India are advised to get vaccinated against \_\_\_\_\_ such as typhoid before they go.
- \_\_\_\_\_ such as coughs and colds are usually best left to get better by themselves.
- If you don't clean the wound properly, you could get a \_\_\_\_\_.
- Should, in your opinion, doctors always tell their patients that they have a/ an \_\_\_\_\_ such as cancer?
- The first \_\_\_\_\_ of hepatitis are tiredness, vomiting, and loss of weight.
- After two years of therapy, Duane was able to conquer his \_\_\_\_\_ and finally started to gain weight.
- This cream is normally used for treating minor \_\_\_\_\_.

6 Choose an option that does not fit the collocation.

- 1) to recover from *a disease/ a virus/ a symptom/ chicken pox*;
- 2) to become a chronic carrier of *a virus/ an infection/ an illness/ the flu*;
- 3) to be off school with *an eating disorder/ a chest complaint/ a clinical symptom/ a nasty bug*;
- 4) to pick up *a deadly virus/ the stomach flu/ a complaint/ an infection*;
- 5) to get vaccinated against *a physical symptom/ an infectious disease/ the flu*;
- 6) to catch *a cold/ an eye infection/ an allergy/ the stomach flu*;
- 7) to go down with *a cold/ a food poisoning/ a running nose/ malaria*;
- 8) to suffer from *a common complaint/ a disease/ a mental disorder/ an illness*.

III. LISTENING

FLU TIPS

7 A) Match the words in the table with their meanings.

1	a prescription	a	an illness or a medical condition in which you have a very high temperature
2	a complication	b	to be likely to suffer from a particular illness or be affected by a particular problem, antonym: to be immune
3	fever	c	an injection
4	a fluid	d	a drug that can be bought without a doctor's prescription
5	a shot	e	a written order from a doctor
6	to be susceptible to smth	f	a medical problem or illness that happens while someone is already ill and makes treatment more difficult
7	an over-the-counter medication	g	a liquid (for example, water or milk)

B) Listen to the radio programme on how to tackle the flu.

Number the recommendations in the order that you hear them.

There are two pieces of advice you will not need to use.

- The importance of hygiene.
- How to handle a fever.
- How to survive in the flu season.
- How to avoid dehydration.
- How to prevent the flu.
- Bed rest is the best remedy.
- How to take over-the-counter antibiotics.
- Medications and vitamins to fight the flu.

C) Using the recommendations speak about the ways to prevent and cope with the flu.



## IV. VOCABULARY

### 8 Match the words with their definitions.

- |            |           |             |              |
|------------|-----------|-------------|--------------|
| • a boil   | • a burn  | • an itch   | • a sprain   |
| • a bruise | • a cut   | • a rash    | • a swelling |
| • a bump   | • a graze | • a scratch |              |

- 1) an area of skin that is raised and has a slight swelling because you have hit it on something;
- 2) a wound caused by rubbing that slightly breaks the surface of your skin which does not bleed much;
- 3) an uncomfortable feeling on your skin that makes you want to scratch it with your nails;
- 4) an area of the body that has become larger than normal, because of illness, injury or infection;
- 5) a purple, blue or brown mark on your skin that later turns yellow;
- 6) a painful infected swelling under the skin which is full of a thick yellow liquid, called pus;
- 7) an injury to a joint caused by twisting it;
- 8) a wound that is caused when something sharp breaks your skin and you bleed;
- 9) a mark, a cut or an injury made by rubbing somebody's skin against something rough or sharp;
- 10) an injury or mark caused by fire, heat or acid;
- 11) an allergic reaction in the form of numerous small red spots.

### 9 Label the items in the First Aid Kit with the words and phrases from the box.

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• activated charcoal</li> <li>• antiseptic ointment</li> <li>• bandages</li> <li>• scissors and tweezers</li> <li>• hand cleaner = hand sanitizer</li> <li>• plasters (Br E) = band-aids (Am E)</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• disposable gloves</li> <li>• a cold pack/ an ice pack</li> <li>• adhesive tape</li> <li>• gauze pads</li> <li>• a face shield (for performing CPR*)</li> <li>• trauma dressing</li> <li>• a burn cream pack</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• a finger splint</li> <li>• sting relief cream</li> <li>• painkiller tablets/ pills</li> <li>• eye wash/ bath</li> <li>• cotton tipped applicators</li> </ul> <p>* CPR (cardiopulmonary resuscitation) – серцево-легенева реанімація</p> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|



### First Aid Kit

1



2



3



4



5



6



7



8



9



10



11



12



13



14



15



16



17



18



## Unit 10. Health is the greatest wealth

10 Read about the accidents that happened to some people. Say what is wrong with them. Suggest what they could find in the First Aid Kit to deal with the problem.

*E.g. "He/ she will definitely have a purple bruise under his/ her eye. An ice-pack could really come in handy in a situation like this."*

*"I guess this person is suffering from the flu. Painkillers can help with the fever."*

1. John fell awkwardly on the football pitch. Luckily, his wrist isn't broken but it hurts terribly.
2. Mike was cutting bread with a very sharp knife. Now, his thumb is bleeding.
3. Mary was trying to give her cat a bath which her cat wasn't quite happy about. As a result, the long bleeding lines appeared on her cheeks.
4. On seeing the nasty skin problem that Louise has on her left shoulder her doctor decides it needs puncturing and cleaning as it's full of pus.
5. Susan has just been stung by a wasp. She's crying because her foot is burning and swelling every passing minute.
6. Little Josh is in tears after hitting his head on the door. His mum is trying to calm him down saying it's nothing serious.
7. The doctor notices small red spots all over Annie's arms and legs and realizes at once that it's a symptom of an infectious disease.
8. Yesterday, Monica had a few pounds of strawberries for lunch. Then she couldn't sleep at night tossing and turning and scratching her cheeks and neck vigorously.

11 Translate into English.

- 1) заразне, інфекційне захворювання
- 2) глибока рана, поріз
- 3) підхопити вірус
- 4) розтягти щиколотку
- 5) невиліковна хвороба
- 6) зробити щеплення
- 7) дитячі хвороби
- 8) кишкова інфекція

- 9) застуда
- 10) розлад шлунка
- 11) порушення роботи серця
- 12) шкірні подразнення
- 13) серйозна травма
- 14) симптоми хвороби/ захворювання
- 15) припухлість



## V. SPEAKING

- 12 Student A is sharing with Student B the bad experiences his/ her group-mates had on the hiking trip they took during their spring break. Make up a dialogue following the instructions.

### STUDENT A

1. Greet your friend, say that you were on a hiking trip with your friends and couldn't wait to come back home because it turned out to be a real disaster.
2. Say how you feel and express concern that you might be coming down with the cold after hiking in rainy weather. Add that it wasn't the worst thing during the trip.
3. Tell your friend that on the very first day one of the girls badly cut her finger when making sandwiches.
4. Say what you had in your First Aid Kit to help the girl. Mention that you had another problem to solve — some students were allergic to mosquito bites. Describe their symptoms.
5. Tell Student B that two other students had blisters on their feet because of uncomfortable shoes. Express relief that you had everything you needed in your First Aid Kit to help them too. Give details.
6. Joke in return saying that there is almost nothing left after your hiking trip. Say what you are going to do about your cold.

### STUDENT B

1. Show sympathy. Comment on your friend looking unwell. Ask what happened.
2. Give a sympathetic response and ask what else went wrong.
3. Express your concern and ask what first aid Student A gave the girl.
4. Say that you know what should be done in a situation like this. Explain in detail.
5. Make a joke that a First Aid Kit is a very useful thing and you are going to take it with you wherever you go. Ask if there is anything in it to help Student A with his/ her cold.
6. Express hope that Student A will get well soon.

## VI. READING

### 13 Read the text and answer the questions.

1. What's the author's attitude to his being ill?
2. What symptoms does the author mention in the story? How does he manage to exaggerate the seriousness of his condition? Why does he do this? Find the expressions in the text aimed at revealing his tendency to exaggerate.
3. How does the author define the difference in attitudes of men and women to being ill? Do you share the author's opinion about women being filled with "the spirit of noble self-sacrifice"?
4. How do the women described in the story perceive their husbands' illnesses? What do they do to take care of their husbands?
5. What words and expressions does the author use to describe his tricks in a humorous way?
6. Pick up all the tips on how to seem ill, which the author provides in the text. Are you ready to use them? Or do you actually behave in the same way when you are ill?

### How to be ill

I hate being ill. I don't simply mean that I dislike the illness itself, although that's also true, but I hate what being ill does to my character. As soon as I have a headache or a cold, or the first signs of the flu coming on, I proceed to behave as if I were in the grips of some fatal illness and **wear an expression of martyrdom** which is supposed to indicate that I will bravely face the few days of life that are left to me.

The fact is that I have **developed into a fine art the ability to feel sorry for myself**, and which is more important, to ring sympathy out of the women who surround me. I love being nursed and **fussed over**, and I make a three-day cold last a good week by a combination of **carefully produced and well-timed groans and grimaces**. Of course, being a man, I have to show that I suffer my pain bravely, but I make it quite clear that I am, nonetheless, suffering.

I suffer beautifully. I am really good at it, and I can melt the hardest female heart the minute I show symptoms of, for instance, **migraine**, even though I'm probably suffering from nothing more serious than **a hangover**. The first thing you must do is to deny that you are suffering, because they will be reluctant to give you any sympathy, if they think that that's what you are after. But at the same time that you deny you're ill, you must furrow your brow and touch the part of you that is in agony to show that **the pain is overwhelming you**.

in spite of your efforts to put a brave front. Once you are into your pajamas and your bed, the battle is as good as won. Do not at first ask for anything — you do not want **to be a bother** to anyone, you are prepared to lie there alone and suffer in silence until the end comes. Under no circumstances should you ask for food — nobody can have a really worthwhile illness and an appetite. At no time at all they are all over you — full of concern, stroking you brow and destroying themselves in an attempt to restore you to health.

Most men are naturally good at this sort of things and will **exploit a minor illness to good effect**. But men are not hypochondriacs — sufferers from imaginary illnesses as most women believe. The fact is that most men are fully aware that they are performing a valuable social service by making out that they are more ill than they really are. You see, women love illnesses. They do not on the whole like to be ill themselves, although they will occasionally take to their beds **on some flimsy pretext**, just to make sure that they are not being taken completely for granted. No, a wife actually likes her husband to be ill from time to time, so that she can **show off her talents as an amateur Florence Nightingale**. It is the spirit of noble self-sacrifice that really fulfils her. Even if she's encouraged by all the television commercials she sees, which show a calm, caring mother, wife, who gives mopping to fevered brows, administering patent



65 medicines, preparing **soothing potions**, and generally behaving like an angel. And when she shakes the thermometer before prodding it into your unprotesting mouth, well, you would think it was a magic wand and she a fairy god-mother.

70 Still, as I said before, it is nice to be ill once you **get the hang of** it. If, in addition, you

want to make your loved one happy, keep her awake night after night with your **moans and groans** and your requests for hot drinks and cold compresses. As for her there is a bonus. When you are better and back at work, think of all the pleasure she's going to get out of telling her neighbours about the hell she's been through.

14 A) Explain the highlighted phrases in your own words.

B) Use some of them to complete the sentences. Change the pronouns and verb forms where necessary.

1. I will not go to hospital \_\_\_\_\_! I'd rather die in my own bed!
2. When Jeremy was suffering from the mumps he made his mother \_\_\_\_\_ him, never allowing her to have a moment's rest.
3. I don't usually drink much because I hate suffering from \_\_\_\_\_ in the morning.
4. When Granny fell off the stairs and broke her leg, her grandchildren offered to stay at her place and look after her, but she refused point blank. She said she didn't want to \_\_\_\_\_ to anyone. Moreover, she could afford a real nurse.
5. Hue didn't exactly understand how the accident happened. The only thing he was aware of was that he was lying on the ground, not being able to move a limb because \_\_\_\_\_. Later it turned out he had five broken and fractured bones.
6. Once Andrew fell ill while visiting his old aunt in an Essex village. Instead of feeding him with dozens of different pills, as his mother usually did, his auntie prepared some \_\_\_\_\_ for him to drink, and he got better in a couple of days.
7. Marianne often stays home from school. She wakes up in the morning and starts \_\_\_\_\_ to show that she has a bad \_\_\_\_\_. With the help of \_\_\_\_\_ she, of course, softens her mother's heart. But I think, she is just playing truant.
8. In this two-day first-aid course, ladies, you will have to \_\_\_\_\_ how to give injections and bandage injuries.



## VII. SPEAKING

15 People often complain about their health to their friends and acquaintances. It's a good idea to know how to respond to these complaints with sympathy.

A) Match the common complaints given below with the suitable responses. Options are possible.

	Common complaints		Sympathetic responses
1	I feel a bit under the weather.	a	Maybe you're going down with something. There's a bug going around.
2	I'm not feeling very well.	b	Why don't you go home and have a lie-down?
3	I think I'm going down with a cold. I've got a sore throat.	c	Maybe you should go home and get some rest.
4	I've got a slight headache.	d	You don't look very well.
5	I feel a little faint.	e	I'm sorry to hear that.
6	I've got a nagging pain in my shoulder.	f	You look a little pale.
7	I've got a splitting headache.	g	I hope it's not a migraine.
8	I have a bit of a stomach bug.	h	You look poorly.
9	I think I've got a bit of a temperature.	i	You look like death warmed up.
10	I have a touch of flu.	j	You're looking peaky.
11	I've got a nasty cough. I'm afraid I'm coming down with a cold.	k	Why don't you go to the doctor?
12	I feel really rough. / I'm shattered. / I'm on my last legs.	l	Hmm, you'd better stay at home today.
13	My head is spinning, my mouth feels like cotton, and I have a scratchy throat.	m	You really look a bit run-down.
14	I'm not sleeping very well at the moment.		
15	I've sprained / dislocated / twisted my ankle / wrist.		
16	I've broken my arm. I'll be in plaster for weeks.		
17	My back aches / I've got backache.		
18	I feel sick. / I'm feeling nauseous. / I've got a terrible stomachache / I think I've got food poisoning. / I've eaten something bad and I feel unwell.		
19	I've got a temperature, a sore throat and a runny nose. I think I've got a really bad cold.		

B) Mark both the complaints and responses F (formal) and I (informal). Note that it's better to use the formal phrases when you speak to older people and those in authority.

C) Work with a partner. Make up 3 mini-conversations about your health.

- 16 Somehow, there are fewer expressions to praise your own or someone else's health. Still, they exist. Use three expressions to speak favourably about your and your group-mates' health.

## USEFUL LANGUAGE

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• I feel great!</li> <li>• I'm on top of the world!</li> <li>• I feel like a million dollars!</li> <li>• I couldn't feel any better!</li> <li>• He's glowing with health.</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• He looks very well.</li> <li>• He is the picture of health. (Note the definite article!)</li> <li>• There's nothing at all wrong with me.</li> </ul> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## VIII. LISTENING

- 17 You are going to listen to a text about therapeutic humour and laughter. Before listening read the following statements and try to guess what words are missing. Then listen and check.

1. Laughing (1) \_\_\_\_\_ the way your immune system functions and (2) \_\_\_\_\_ your response to stress.
2. Laughing for even a few minutes raises your (3) \_\_\_\_\_. As a result, you can (4) \_\_\_\_\_ and lose weight.
3. Watching (5) \_\_\_\_\_ helps sick children tolerate pain.
4. Thanks to humour more natural killer cells are produced by our body, so watching funny TV shows will generally help you (6) \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Humour has a positive effect on the immune system which can help prevent such a serious disease as (7) \_\_\_\_\_.
6. When you are in a good mood, you tend to do (8) \_\_\_\_\_ like exercise and eat food that is good for you.



## IX. READING

18 You are going to read five jokes about doctors and their patients. Eight sentences have been removed from them. Choose from sentences A—J the one which fits each gap (1—8). There are two extra sentences which you do not need to use.

- A. A doctor was addressing a large audience...
- B. Still no response, so he moves to five feet.
- C. Try this test to find out for sure.
- D. Now, I'll speak about the eating disorders caused by this food.
- E. But there is one thing that is the most dangerous of all.
- F. After his checkup, the doctor called the wife into his office alone.
- G. The patient realized that his disease was fatal.
- H. The doctor's office was crowded as usual, but the doctor was moving at a snail's pace.
- I. If you can do this for the next 10 months to a year, I think he will regain his health completely.
- J. She wasn't talking to me.

### 1. Problems with Hearing

A man goes to his doctor and says, "I don't think my wife's hearing is as good as it used to be. What should I do?" The doctor replies, "(1) \_\_\_\_\_." When your wife is in the kitchen doing dishes, stand fifteen feet behind her and ask her a question, if she doesn't respond keep moving closer asking the question until she hears you." The man goes home and sees his wife preparing dinner. He stands fifteen feet behind her and says, "What's for dinner, honey?" He gets no response, so he moves to ten feet behind her and asks again. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ Still no answer. Finally he stands directly behind her and says, "Honey, what's for dinner?"

She replies, "For the fourth time, I SAID CHICKEN!"

### 2. Wife's Diagnosis

A woman accompanied her husband to the doctor's office. (3) \_\_\_\_\_ He said, "Your husband is suffering from a very severe stress disorder. If you don't follow my instructions carefully, your husband will surely die. Each morning, fix him a healthy breakfast. Be pleasant at all times. For lunch make him a nutritious meal. For dinner prepare an especially nice meal for him. Don't burden him with chores. Don't discuss your problems with him; it will only make his stress worse. Do not nag him. (4) \_\_\_\_\_." On the way home, the husband asked his wife, "What did the doctor say?" "He said you're going to die," she replied.

### 3. A Comforting Nurse

A man was wheeling himself frantically down the hall of the hospital in his wheelchair, just before his operation. The head nurse stopped him and asked, "What's the matter?" The patient said, "I heard the nurse say, 'It's a very simple operation, don't worry, I'm sure it will be all right.' The head nurse replied, 'She was just trying to comfort you, what's so frightening about that?' The patient continues, "(5) \_\_\_\_\_." She was talking to the doctor!"

### 4. A Queue Longer than Life

(6) \_\_\_\_\_ After waiting for two hours, a very old man slowly stood up and started walking towards the door. "Where are you going?" the receptionist called out. "Well," the old man said, "I figured I'd go home and die a natural death."

### 5. He Knows It

(7) \_\_\_\_\_, "The material we put into our stomachs is enough to have killed most of us sitting here, years ago. Red meat is awful. Soft drinks can rot your stomach lining. Chinese food is loaded with chemicals. High fat diets can be disastrous, and none of us realizes the long-term harm caused by the germs in our drinking water. (8) \_\_\_\_\_! Can anyone here tell me what food it is that causes the most grief and suffering for years after eating it?" After several seconds of quiet, a 75-year-old man in the front row raised his hand, and softly said, "Wedding Cake."

## X. WRITING

19 Write an article of 200–250 words on benefits and risks of the alternative kinds of medicine. Choose one of the suggested groups (1–4).

1.
  - Chiropractic Medicine
  - Massage
  - Accupuncture
2.
  - Music Therapy
  - Dance Therapy
  - Art Therapy
  - Sound Healing Therapy
  - Colour Healing Therapy
3.
  - Energy Healing Therapy
  - Yoga and Meditation
  - Hypnotherapy
  - Breathing Therapy
4.
  - Flower Essence Therapy
  - Aromatherapy
  - Herbs and Herbal Therapy
  - Mud Therapy

## XI. REVISION TRANSLATION

20 Translate into English.

- 1 Лікарі стверджують, що ця нова вакцина захищає від гепатиту В, який є надзвичайно заразливим вірусом. Тому необхідно зробити це щеплення всім дітям дошкільного віку.
- 2 У дитини висока температура, нежить і болить горло. — На вашому місці я б викликав лікаря. — Навіщо? Скоріше за все, це банальна застуда. — Береженого бог береже.
- 3 Ден був сильно травмований під час минулої гри. Я сподівався, що це лише розтягнення зв'язок, але з'ясувалося, що він зламав ліву руку. Лікар каже, що хлопець буде в гіпсі 3 тижні.
- 4 — Ти не дуже добре виглядаєш. Щось трапилось? — У мене дуже болить голова. — Сподіваюся, це не мігрень. — Я так не думаю. Боюся, я зараз занадто багато працюю і не дуже сплю. — Ну що ж, мабуть, твоя голова каже тобі, що час скинути оберти.
- 5 — Ти подивися на Марка! Він просто втілення здоров'я. — Так, він може бути зразком для кожного, хто розуміє, що здоров'я — це найбільше багатство. А ось я почуваюся жахливо. У мене дере горло і сильний кашель. Боюся звалитися із застудою. — Кажуть, що ходить вірус. Чому б тобі не піти додому і не полежати?
- 6 — Гей, що це з тобою? Виглядаєш пригніченим. — Так, я досить погано почуваюся. У мене болить горло, голова йде обертом, у роті пересихає, і, гадаю, у мене невеликий жар. — Х-м-м, краще залишися на кілька днів удома і полеж. Ти ж знаєш, що постільний режим — найкращі ліки. Пий побільше гарячого з лимоном. Підтримуй водний баланс. Окрім того, вітамін С допоможе тобі підвищити імунітет і побороти вірус. — Спасибі тобі за поради і турботу. Я напевно зателефоную завтра на роботу і скажу, що захворів.
7. Майже всім може коли-небудь знадобитися аптечка. Домашню аптечку звичай використовують для лікування незначних травм, таких як опіки, порізи, садна, укуси, розтяги зв'язок і м'язів. В аптечках мають бути ліки для полегшення (to alleviate) симптомів вірусних респіраторних інфекцій, включаючи підвищену температуру, нежить, кашель, біль у горлі; незначного болю, проблем шлунково-кишкового тракту, проблем зі шкірою і алергій. Упевніться, що ви знаєте, як правильно використовувати усі засоби у вашій аптечці, особливо ліки. Перевіряйте аптечку двічі на рік і замінійте ліки, термін вживання яких сплив.

# Unit 11

## MEDICINES CURE DISEASES, DOCTORS CURE PATIENTS

The body is a wonderful thing, until it goes wrong...

### I. LEAD-IN

- 1 When was the last time you went to see a doctor? Tell your partner about your visit using the questions below as guidelines.
1. Did any pain or illness bother you or did you go for a regular check-up?
  2. What symptoms were you developing?
  3. Did you decide to go to the doctor or did anyone advise you to do that?
  4. Did you go to a walk-in clinic or did you have an appointment? Was it a government-funded or private clinic/ medical centre/ hospital?
  5. What questions did the doctor ask you?
  6. Did the doctor give you a physical examination?
  7. Did the nurse or the doctor take your vital signs (temperature, blood pressure, pulse, rate of breathing, etc)?
  8. Did the doctor recommend you to have any tests (blood, urine, X-ray) taken?
  9. Did the doctor refer you to any other medical specialist?
  10. Did the doctor give you prescriptions for any medications?
  11. Did you have to see that doctor again?
  12. Did the doctor's recommendations help you?



## II. VOCABULARY

2 A) Match the words to form collocations.

- |               |             |
|---------------|-------------|
| • medical     | • form      |
| • insurance   | • pressure  |
| • reception   | • signs     |
| • bacterial   | • condition |
| • examination | • effects   |
| • blood       | • area      |
| • side        | • infection |
| • vital       | • rooms     |

B) Use the collocations to fill in the gaps.

### My Last Visit to the Doctor

I was feeling a little unwell the other day, so I decided to visit my doctor before things got worse. I called her in the morning, and I made an appointment for 9:30 a.m. When I arrived at her office, I had to fill in some \_\_\_\_\_ (1) and a questionnaire asking about my current and past \_\_\_\_\_ (2), along with the symptoms I was developing. After

a few minutes, the receptionist called my name and took me back to one of their \_\_\_\_\_ (3). She took my \_\_\_\_\_ (4) including my temperature and \_\_\_\_\_ (5), and then I waited until the doctor came in. After looking me over and asking a few questions, the doctor's diagnosis was that I had a \_\_\_\_\_ (6). She wrote me out a prescription for some medication, which I was supposed to take two times a day. I asked her if there were any \_\_\_\_\_ (7) to taking that medicine as I didn't want to run the risk of having complications. The doctor assured me that the drug she prescribed would help me feel better and not make my condition worse. After that I went back to the \_\_\_\_\_ (8) and got my prescription.



## Unit 11. Medicines cure diseases, doctors cure patients

3 A) Read the dialogues and match the words and expressions in bold with their Ukrainian equivalents from the box.

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• мікоз (грибкова інфекція)</li><li>• тупий біль</li><li>• хворе горло</li><li>• полегшити симптоми</li><li>• накладати пов'язку</li><li>• льодяники від кашлю</li><li>• гострий біль</li><li>• страждати від безсоння</li><li>• милиці</li></ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• полегшити біль</li><li>• покритися висипом</li><li>• свербіж</li><li>• виписати рецепт</li><li>• втирати мазь</li><li>• позбавитися запалення</li><li>• задихатися</li><li>• прискорити одужання</li><li>• нервовий зрив</li></ul> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

- A. Doctor, I've been **suffering from insomnia** (1) lately. Do you think I might be heading for a **nervous breakdown** (2)? — No, of course not. But I'll prescribe some sleeping pills to help you get a good night's rest. OK? — Thank you, doctor.
- B. I can't stop scratching this place on my foot. Do you think it's **athlete's foot** (3)? — Possible. Try this lotion for a few days to stop the **itching** (4); then start putting on this powder at night.
- C. I've got a rather **sore throat** (5); and I keep feeling a bit flushed. Do you think it could be the flu? — Unlikely, but I'll let you have some cough mixture **to relieve the symptoms** (6). You can get yourself some **cough lozenges** (7), if you like.
- D. I keep getting **shooting pain** (8) down my shin and ankle. Is it possible that I've broken or sprained something? — Well, the X-ray didn't show anything. If it's so painful, you'd better have some **crutches** (9) to walk with and some painkillers **to ease the pain** (10).
- E. I've got a **dull ache** (11) in my arm and occasionally I get a spasm. Could it be a minor fracture or something? — It's just possible. I'll **strap it up** (12) anyway and put it in a sling. That should reduce your discomfort quite a lot.
- F. I've **come out in a rash** (13) on my chest. Do you think it could be a skin disease like impetigo or dermatitis? — Oh no. I'll give you some **ointment to rub in** (14) **to get rid of the inflammation** (15).
- G. I keep **getting short of breath** (16). Is there any way I could be suffering from asthma? — Mm, sounds a bit like it. I'll **make you out a prescription** (17) for some antibiotics, and some menthol inhalations might **speed up the recovery** (18).

B) In the dialogues find the words and phrases that can be grouped under the following headings:

*symptoms/ complaints*

*a doctor's actions/ recommendations*

C) Work in pairs and act out a dialogue using words and expressions from the list above.

Student A is a patient who is visiting a doctor and complaining about some health problem.

Student B is a doctor who is giving recommendations to the patient on how to cure the illness.



### III. LISTENING

4 Listen to 5 people talking on health issues and choose the best answer to the questions.

1. **Why does the common cold occur so frequently?**
  - a) Because it is an infectious disease caused by various bacteria.
  - b) Because it is caused by thousands of cold viruses.
  - c) Because the human body cannot fight against new viruses.
  - d) Because there is no treatment of rhinovirus it is caused by.
2. **How do people 'catch pneumonia'?**
  - a) They breathe in airborne bacteria or viruses.
  - b) They drink water containing organisms that cause pneumonia.
  - c) They are infected when they cough and sneeze.
  - d) They contract it when bacteria enter their stomachs.
3. **What kind of treatment do chiropractors provide?**
  - a) Patent medicine to relieve pain.
  - b) Psychotherapy to help patients return to full health.
  - c) Manual therapy focusing on the spine and other joints.
  - d) Physiotherapy to increase mobility.
4. **What profession is the speaker talking about?**
  - a) A hospital nurse.
  - b) A general practitioner.
  - c) An anesthesiologist.
  - d) A hospital attendant.
5. **What is the reason to get an annual physical examination?**
  - a) To have various medical tests.
  - b) To look into the family health history.
  - c) To receive additional checks.
  - d) To have a medical problem diagnosed in time.



## IV. VOCABULARY

5 Fill in the gaps in the table with the words from the box.

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• acne</li> <li>• AIDS</li> <li>• anemia</li> <li>• anorexia</li> <li>• atherosclerosis</li> <li>• autism</li> <li>• bronchitis</li> <li>• colitis</li> <li>• conjunctivitis</li> <li>• dandruff</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• dermatitis</li> <li>• hypertension</li> <li>• influenza (flu)</li> <li>• kidney stones</li> <li>• kleptomania</li> <li>• leukemia</li> <li>• malaria</li> <li>• mumps</li> <li>• nicotine addiction</li> <li>• Parkinson's disease</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• pneumonia</li> <li>• pyelonephritis</li> <li>• quinsy</li> <li>• stomach ulcer</li> <li>• stroke</li> <li>• tonsillitis</li> <li>• tuberculosis</li> <li>• whooping cough</li> </ul> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

A. Infectious diseases		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• chickenpox</li> <li>• cholera</li> <li>• diphtheria</li> <li>• dysentery</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• encephalitis</li> <li>• measles</li> <li>• meningitis</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• plague</li> <li>• scarlet fever</li> <li>• typhoid</li> <li>• _____</li> <li>• _____</li> <li>• _____</li> <li>• _____</li> <li>• _____</li> </ul>

B. Heart and blood vessels diseases	C. Stomach and intestines diseases	D. Lungs and respiratory diseases	E. Blood diseases	F. Kidney and urological diseases
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• a cardiac arrest</li> <li>• aneurism</li> <li>• angina</li> <li>• heart failure</li> <li>• hypotension</li> <li>• varicose veins</li> <li>• _____</li> <li>• _____</li> <li>• _____</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• enteritis</li> <li>• pancreatitis</li> <li>• _____</li> <li>• _____</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• asthma</li> <li>• emphysema</li> <li>• lung cancer</li> <li>• _____</li> <li>• _____</li> <li>• _____</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• hemophilia</li> <li>• thrombophlebitis</li> <li>• _____</li> <li>• _____</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• adenoma</li> <li>• cystitis</li> <li>• nephritis</li> <li>• _____</li> <li>• _____</li> </ul>

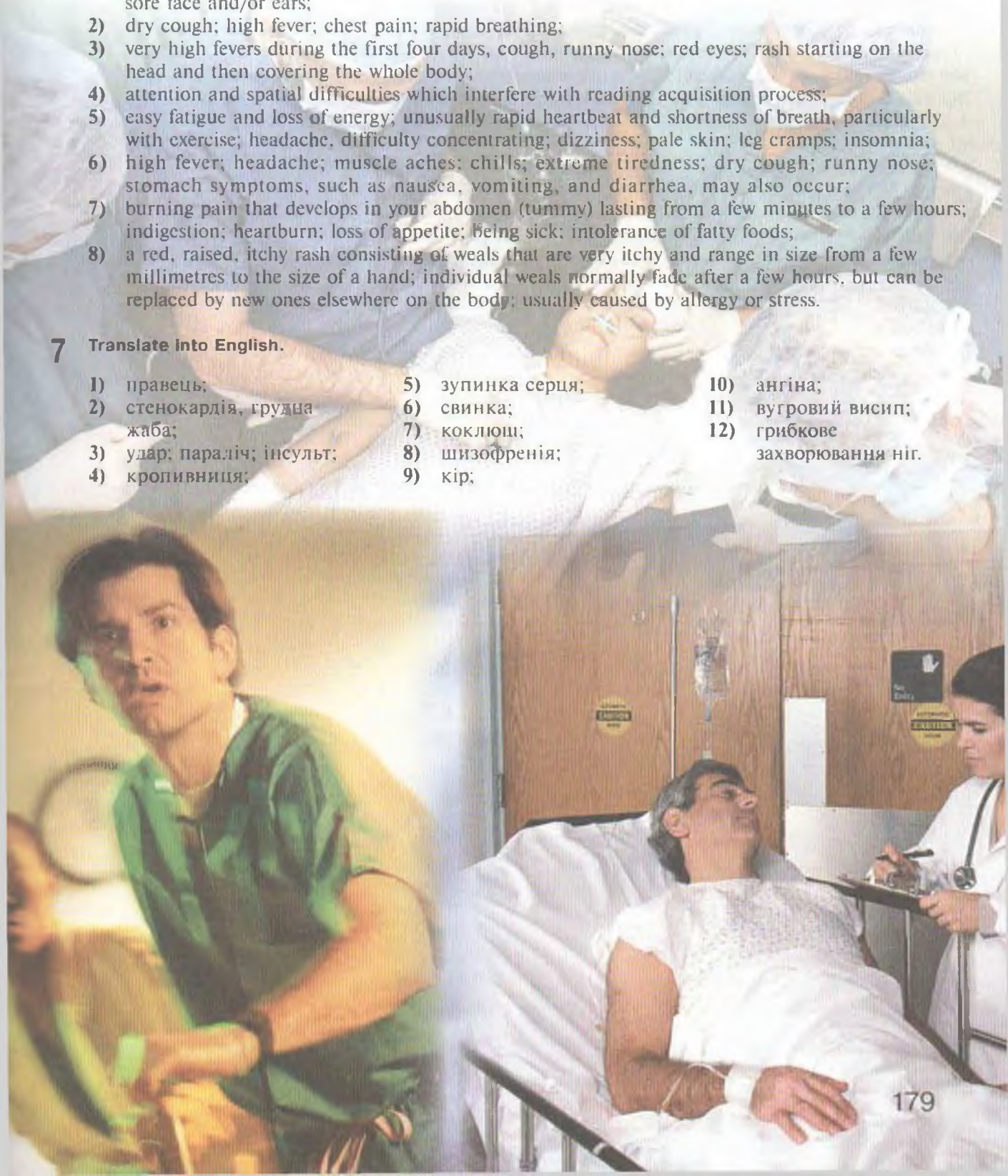
G. Neurological diseases	H. Mental disorders	I. Eye diseases	J. Skin diseases	K. Ear, nose and throat diseases
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Alzheimer's disease</li> <li>• cerebral hemorrhage</li> <li>• epilepsy</li> <li>• multiple sclerosis</li> <li>• poliomyelitis</li> <li>• rabies</li> <li>• tetanus</li> <li>• _____</li> <li>• _____</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• agoraphobia</li> <li>• alcoholism</li> <li>• Down syndrome</li> <li>• manic depression</li> <li>• paranoia</li> <li>• schizophrenia</li> <li>• _____</li> <li>• _____</li> <li>• _____</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• astigmatism</li> <li>• cataracts</li> <li>• glaucoma</li> <li>• myopia</li> <li>• _____</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• athlete's foot</li> <li>• cold sores</li> <li>• eczema</li> <li>• hives</li> <li>• scabies</li> <li>• shingles</li> <li>• warts</li> <li>• _____</li> <li>• _____</li> <li>• _____</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• antritis</li> <li>• laryngitis</li> <li>• otitis</li> <li>• rhinitis</li> <li>• sinusitis</li> <li>• _____</li> <li>• _____</li> </ul>

6 What diseases and disorders are the following symptoms typical of?

- 1) painful swelling of the salivary glands, particularly when chewing; fever; headache; dry mouth, sore face and/or ears;
- 2) dry cough; high fever; chest pain; rapid breathing;
- 3) very high fevers during the first four days, cough, runny nose; red eyes; rash starting on the head and then covering the whole body;
- 4) attention and spatial difficulties which interfere with reading acquisition process;
- 5) easy fatigue and loss of energy; unusually rapid heartbeat and shortness of breath, particularly with exercise; headache, difficulty concentrating; dizziness; pale skin; leg cramps; insomnia;
- 6) high fever; headache; muscle aches; chills; extreme tiredness; dry cough; runny nose; stomach symptoms, such as nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea, may also occur;
- 7) burning pain that develops in your abdomen (tummy) lasting from a few minutes to a few hours; indigestion; heartburn; loss of appetite; being sick; intolerance of fatty foods;
- 8) a red, raised, itchy rash consisting of weals that are very itchy and range in size from a few millimetres to the size of a hand; individual weals normally fade after a few hours, but can be replaced by new ones elsewhere on the body; usually caused by allergy or stress.

7 Translate into English.

- |                              |                   |                                |
|------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1) правець;                  | 5) зупинка серця; | 10) ангіна;                    |
| 2) стенокардія, грудна жаба; | 6) свинка;        | 11) вугровий висип;            |
| 3) удар; параліч; інсульт;   | 7) коклюш;        | 12) грибкове захворювання ніг. |
| 4) кропивниця;               | 8) шизофренія;    |                                |
|                              | 9) кір;           |                                |



8 Read the poem by Shel Silverstein and say what diseases/ illnesses and complaints the author has mentioned.

## Sick

"I cannot go to school today," said little Peggy Ann McKay.  
"I have the measles and the mumps, a gash, a rash, and purple bumps.  
My mouth is wet, my throat is dry. I'm going blind in my right eye.  
My tonsils are as big as rocks. I've counted sixteen chicken pox.  
And there's one more — that's seventeen! And don't you think my face looks  
green?  
My leg is cut, my eyes are blue — it might be instamatic flu.  
I cough and sneeze and gasp and choke. I'm sure that my left leg is broke.  
My hip hurts when I move my chin, my belly button's caving in,  
My back is wrenched, my ankle's sprained, my 'pendix pains each time it rains.  
My nose is cold, my toes are numb. I have a sliver in my thumb.  
My neck is stiff, my spine is weak. I hardly whisper when I speak.  
My tongue is filling up my mouth. I think my hair is falling out.  
My elbow's bent — my spine ain't straight. My temperature is one-o-eight.  
My brain is shrunk. I cannot hear, there is a hole inside my ear.  
I have a hangnail, and my heart is — ...WHAT?  
What's that? What's that you say? You say today is... Saturday?  
G'bye, I'm going out to play!"



**Who treats what**

*Medical specialists are experts in certain fields of medicine. They either treat specific parts of the body, such as the spine or the brain, or they specialize in certain diseases, such as cancer. Family doctors keep a list of local specialists and can help patients choose the right specialist for each medical issue. In many cases, specialists require a referral from a family doctor before they see a patient.*

**9** Match each specialist with the medical issue that they deal with and speak about them as in the example:

*E.g.: A dermatologist is a doctor who treats skin problems.*

1) a dermatologist	a) determines food and environmental allergies
2) a neurologist	b) prevents pain during surgery
3) a pediatrician	c) treats heart diseases
4) a psychiatrist	d) treats physical problems by pressing on and moving the bones in the back and joints
5) an ophthalmologist	e) specializes in the diagnosis and management of hormonal conditions
6) an allergist	f) treats skin problems
7) an oncologist	g) deals with medical conditions and illnesses that affect only females
8) an otolaryngologist	h) treats patients using things such as plants, rather than drugs
9) a urologist	i) deals with the birth of children
10) a psychotherapist	j) treats eye diseases
11) a cardiologist	k) treats babies and children
12) a chiropractor	l) specializes in digestive diseases/ disorders
13) a gynecologist	m) deals with malignant diseases and tumours
14) an anesthesiologist	n) treats ear, nose and throat diseases
15) an obstetrician	o) specializes in diseases of the urinary organs in females and the urinary tract and sex organs in males
16) a naturopath	p) specializes in nervous diseases
17) an endocrinologist	q) treats mental illnesses by discussing patients' problems rather than giving drugs
18) a gastroenterologist	r) treats people with mental illnesses through medication

## V. SPEAKING

10 Your friend is complaining about the symptoms s/he or his/her relatives have. Advise him/her what specialist to turn to. Use the phrases from the **USEFUL LANGUAGE** box.

E.g.: *I've been having this terrible earache for three days!* — *Why don't you go and see a good otolaryngologist/ eye, nose and throat specialist?*

### USEFUL LANGUAGE

- |                                          |                            |                         |
|------------------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| • If I were you... I would               | • Perhaps you'd better...  | • I think you should... |
| • Have you thought of...?                | • I'd really advise you to | • Better not...         |
| • Don't you think it's a good idea to... | • I think it's worth...    | • How about...?         |
|                                          | • Why don't you...?        | • You could/ might...   |

- I don't know what to do! My father's snoring is getting worse and worse!
- My mum has grown very irritable and has got recurrent nightmares.
- My granny is having problems with her back and joints.
- My older sister is having problems with her first pregnancy.
- My younger brother has got a terrible rash on his arms and legs after he played with a stray cat.
- Sorry, I can't eat this food, I think it gives me hives.
- Oh, I'm afraid my eyesight is not so good!
- The test results show that his aunt has an advanced form of blood cancer.
- My dad still can't walk and it's been three months since his accident. He hates being stuck in a wheelchair.
- I don't want to take any drugs that will cause me to become addicted to them, but I do need some sort of pain relief.
- I'm afraid my mum is suffering from depression and she doesn't sleep well of late.
- My grandpa keeps having high blood pressure.
- My recent tests showed high blood sugar levels.
- I often feel sick after meals.

## VI. VOCABULARY

11 Make collocations and use them in sentences of your own.

HAVE	a temperature sb's temperature
TAKE	sb's pulse sb's blood pressure
MAKE	tests a prescription
WRITE OUT	an injection a check-up
LISTEN TO	an appointment a deep breath
DO	sb's chest (sound)/ lungs (sound)/ heart beat
GIVE	a blood/ urine sample
GET	a diagnosis medication

12 Translate into English.

- мати температуру;
- міряти кров'яний тиск;
- зробити ін'єкцію;
- поставити діагноз;
- приймати ліки;
- зробити глибокий вдих;
- проходити обстеження;
- міряти пульс;
- прослуховувати биття серця;
- давати ліки;
- записатися на прийом до лікаря;
- робити аналізи;
- бути на прийомі у лікаря;
- міряти температуру;
- прослуховувати легені;
- виписати рецепт.

## VII. READING

### 13 Read the information and discuss the question.

*Being a doctor gives a person certain rights and privileges. In return, he or she must fulfill certain duties and responsibilities. The principles of good medical practice and the standards of competence, care, and conduct in all aspects of their professional work are described in hospitals' rules and regulations. Here are some of them.*

*All doctors must:*

- provide an adequate assessment of the patient's condition, based on the case history and physical examination;
- provide the patient with appropriate treatment;
- respect the patient's right to decline treatment;
- give patients the information they request about the diagnosis, treatment and prognosis;
- prescribe only the drugs and treatments that will serve the patient's needs;
- abide by the hospital rules, protocols and standard practice;
- be willing to consult with colleagues;
- work within the limits of their professional competence...

*If you were a doctor, would you act against the hospital rules to save someone's life in case of emergency?*

### 14 You are going to read a passage from the famous novel "Doctors" by an American writer Erich Segal. Before you read, match the words and phrases from the text with their meanings.

- 1) to peer
- 2) to alert
- 3) to be smeared
- 4) to strip off
- 5) to put up a fight
- 6) to give a hand
- 7) stat
- 8) to acknowledge
- 9) to screw up

- a) to help
- b) to have a coating or marks of a greasy or sticky substance
- c) immediately, without delay
- d) to accept
- e) to warn someone about a problem, danger
- f) to make a bad mistake
- g) to look closely
- h) to offer resistance
- i) to remove clothing



15 Read the text and answer the questions.

1. What was the alert in the E.R. about?
2. What had happened to the patients?
3. What injuries did they get?
4. Which of them was in a worse condition? Why?
5. Why was the second E.R. team doing nothing when Seth entered the second trauma room?
6. What steps did Seth take when he heard that the patient was dead?
7. Why do you think Seth ordered the younger doctor to inject the drug into the patient's heart instead of doing it himself?
8. Why did Tim feel guilty?
9. How do you understand Seth's words at the end of the story?



Doctors

It had been a relatively quiet night in the pit, as doctors often referred to the E.R. — the usual broken bones, febrile babies, car crash victims, etc.—until the police suddenly alerted the Admissions nurse that two victims of a particularly brutal mugging, both of whom had received multiple stab wounds and were bleeding badly, were on their way to the hospital.

In a matter of minutes, Seth heard ambulances and police cars and a split second later, there was bedlam in the E.R. There may have been only two patients, but the attendants and policemen rushing them in on stretchers were themselves smeared with blood.

“Who’s in charge here?” barked a police sergeant.

“I am,” Seth said. “Tell me quickly, I don’t think we have much time to lose.”

“Sorry, Doc, sorry. From what I could see, the woman got the worst of it. She seems to have more wounds—and I think she’s been raped, too.”

“Thanks, Sergeant,” Seth said quickly. “I’ll take care of her myself.”

He motioned to a pair of nurses and Tim Bluestone, an intern, to take the man into the second trauma room. Meanwhile he, another intern and a third nurse would work on the woman in Room 1.

Before the wheels of the trolley had even stopped revolving, Seth’s assistant was starting an I.V. in one arm,

while he himself started a second and began transfusing blood.

The nurse had stripped off what was left of the woman’s torn garments. Though she was spouting blood everywhere, the patient lay so comatose with shock that she seemed beyond pain.

As he tried to gauge the quantity and severity of her wounds, Seth heard angry and indignant voices around the table saying, “Animals, absolute animals. How could anybody do a thing like that?”

“She obviously put up a hell of a fight,” Seth remarked quietly “She’s mostly cut up on her arms and shoulders. There are only two lacerations on her abdomen and they’re well below the heart and too superficial to have damaged an organ.”

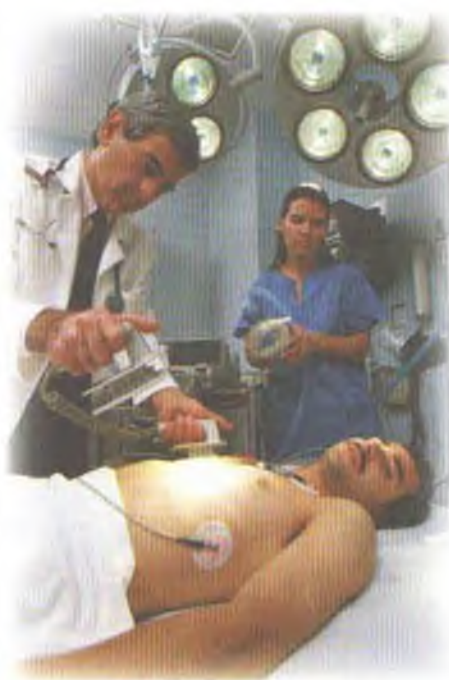
He looked at the younger doctor. “Check her for internal bleeding and start sewing. I’ll give you a hand as soon as I see how Tim is doing.”

He walked quickly across the corridor and opened the door to find the other E.R. team strangely motionless.

“What’s happening?” Seth asked.

Tim Bluestone answered hoarsely. “He was knifed right in the heart. He’s dead.”

Seth looked at the cardiac monitor: the printout looked like a straight line. The victim lay immobile on the table,





a small red stream leaking slowly from a cut on the left side of his chest.

"Take his blood pressure again," Seth ordered as he withdrew a tiny flashlight from his pocket to peer into the man's eyes.

"I've already checked them," Bluestone commented. "His pupils **were dilated** and didn't react at all."

Almost as if he had not heard, Seth asked, "What's the blood pressure?"

"Zero," Bluestone answered. "I told you, he's dead."

Again Seth seemed to ignore his colleague's verdict. "Give me a needle and a **syringe** stat."

"With what, Doctor?" the head nurse inquired.

"Just a hypodermic," he snapped.

The syringe was placed in his hand. To the astonishment of all present—especially young Dr. Bluestone—Seth swiftly plunged the needle into the man's chest, almost as close to the heart as the wound itself. Slowly he let the syringe fill with blood, relieving pressure from around the man's heart.

"I'm starting to get a heartbeat," said the incredulous nurse at the monitor.

Seth nodded slightly to acknowledge her report and turned to the other nurse. "Give Dr. Bluestone ten mils of epinephrine." He then glanced at the younger doctor and said, "Put it straight into his heart, rim."

Without another word, Seth reached into the instrument tray, withdrew a scalpel, **slit open** the man's chest, and with a wide retractor **snapped** two of his ribs. Now there for all eyes to see was the heart—beating.

Seth covered the knife wound with one hand and **squeezed** the heart with the other. The head nurse dashed out to see if the surgeons on call had arrived to complete the work Seth had already begun.

Bluestone was speechless. All he could manage was, "Jesus, that was quick thinking." And then it occurred to him. "But it's against hospital rules for anyone but a surgeon to open a patient's chest."

"I know," Seth replied in quiet annoyance. "But try telling that to his widow."

Seth's hands continued to pulsate the heart, his eyes fixed on the man's face.

After a few minutes the patient began to groan, "Ellen, where's my Ellen?"

"She's all right," Seth whispered. "I'm Dr. Lazarus and your wife's in the other room. You're both going to be all right."

An hour later, when the two doctors had managed to wash the blood off their hands (though their jackets were still streaked with red), they had a chance to reflect on what had happened.

"I don't know what to say, Seth. I feel so goddamn guilty. If you hadn't come in—"

"Forget it, Tim. We all screw up sometimes."

"Not you. I've been watching you for a whole year now and I've not seen you miss a single thing."

Seth smiled. "That's a procedure they never teach you in Med School, Tim. It's called C.Y.A."

"What?"

"Covering Your Ass."

*From "Doctors" by Erich Segal*

16 Match the words and phrases in bold with their definitions.

- 1) a part of a hospital that immediately helps people who have been hurt in an accident;
- 2) loosing blood inside your body;
- 3) through or into a vein;
- 4) to inject blood into a blood vessel;
- 5) someone who has nearly finished training as a doctor and is working in a hospital;
- 6) to make a straight long cut;
- 7) a type of a bed for carrying someone who is too injured or ill to walk;
- 8) an instrument for injections;
- 9) cuts in the skin.

17 Find words or phrases highlighted in the text which mean the same as:

- 1) to flow;
- 2) not serious;
- 3) feverish;
- 4) to test/ measure;
- 5) to become wider;
- 6) to press;
- 7) to break.

18 Find in the text all collocations with the words *blood* and *heart* and use them in sentences/ situations of your own.

19 Find English equivalents in the text.

- |                                         |                                       |
|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1) чисельні колоті рани;                | 10) його вдарили ножом прямо в серце; |
| 2) рвані рани;                          | 11) поміряти тиск;                    |
| 3) медсестра в приймальному відділенні; | 12) зіниці розширені;                 |
| 4) забруднені кров'ю;                   | 13) ввести голку в грудну клітину;    |
| 5) зробити укол внутрішньовенно;        | 14) наповнити шприц кров'ю;           |
| 6) шприц для підшкірної ін'єкції;       | 15) зробити розріз грудної клітини;   |
| 7) відчайдушно чинити опір;             | 16) серцебиття;                       |
| 8) кров лилася струмком;                | 17) проаналізувати, що трапалося.     |
| 9) внутрішня кровотеча;                 |                                       |

20 Speak about the emergency case described in the text as if you were:  
 • Dr. Lazarus; • the nurse; • the young doctor (Tim Bluestone).

## VIII. SPEAKING

21 Project work  
 Vitamins and minerals are essential nutrients our bodies need in sufficient amounts to work properly. Choose one of them from the list and make a presentation using the guidelines.

Vitamins and minerals		Guidelines
• Vitamin A	• Folate	1. What is this vitamin/ mineral and what does it do?
• Vitamin B <sub>12</sub>	• Iodine	2. How much of this vitamin/ mineral do people need?
• Vitamin B <sub>6</sub>	• Iron	3. What foods provide this vitamin?
• Calcium	• Vitamin K	4. What happens if a person doesn't get enough of this vitamin/ mineral?
• Chromium	• Magnesium	5. What are the effects of this vitamin/ mineral on health?
• Vitamin C	• Phosphorus	6. Can it be harmful?
• Vitamin D	• Selenium	
• Vitamin E	• Zink	

E.g.: Vitamin B<sub>6</sub>

Vitamin B<sub>6</sub> is involved in the process of making serotonin and norepinephrine, which are chemicals that transmit signals in the brain. It also takes part in more than 100 enzyme reactions. Vitamin B<sub>6</sub> is involved in brain development during pregnancy and infancy as well as immune function.

The amount of vitamin B<sub>6</sub> depends on the age. Average daily recommended amount for adults 19–50 years is 1.3 milligrams.

Major sources of vitamin B<sub>6</sub> include cereal grains, legumes, vegetables (carrots, spinach, peas, and potatoes), milk, cheese, eggs, fish, liver, beef, poultry and bananas.

B<sub>6</sub> is effective against more than 100 health conditions. It's used against rheumatoid arthritis, protects the body from cardiovascular diseases, promotes cell growth, reproduction and division, helps the digestive system work properly, maintains healthy muscle tone and skin, improves memory, reduces depression, moodiness, irritability, forgetfulness, bloating, and anxiety. It can even help prevent the formation of kidney stones!

Vitamin B<sub>6</sub> deficiency may cause health problems affecting the nerves, skin, muscles. It also causes anemia, itchy rashes, cracks on the corners of the mouth, a swollen tongue, depression, weak immune system.

## Dentistry

Some tortures are physical, and some are mental.  
But the one that is both is dental.

(Ogden Nash)

### 22 Answer the questions.

1. How often should people have a dental check-up? Do you follow this rule?
2. What do you like and dislike about going to the dentist?
3. Do you remember the first time you went (were taken) to the dentist? Speak about your experience.

## IX. VOCABULARY

### Teeth and dental problems

- |                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• a bad/ affected / aching/ rotten tooth</li> <li>• top/ bottom teeth</li> <li>• a loose tooth</li> <li>• milk teeth</li> <li>• molar teeth</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• canine teeth</li> <li>• wisdom teeth</li> <li>• incisors</li> <li>• crooked teeth</li> <li>• disintegrated teeth</li> <li>• tooth enamel</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• dental plaque</li> <li>• a root canal</li> <li>• a cavity = tooth decay</li> <li>• gums/ inflammation of the gums/ gum swelling</li> </ul> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### Treatment and hygiene

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• to remove the decay</li> <li>• to prevent the decay</li> <li>• to put a crown/ cap on the tooth</li> <li>• to drill a tooth</li> <li>• to pull out/ to extract a tooth/ to have (get) a tooth pulled out/ extracted</li> <li>• to remove plaque</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• to put a filling</li> <li>• to implant a tooth/ to have (get) a tooth implanted</li> <li>• to fill/ to stop a tooth (a cavity)/ to have (get) a tooth stopped/ filled</li> <li>• to floss teeth</li> <li>• to put braces (wires) on crooked teeth</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• an orthodontist</li> <li>• a denture/ a false tooth</li> <li>• to straighten teeth</li> <li>• a dental bridge</li> <li>• a local/ general anaesthetic</li> <li>• a drilling machine</li> <li>• dental hygiene</li> <li>• dental floss</li> <li>• a mouthwash</li> </ul> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### 23 Read the text and fill in the gaps.

Dentists recommend that you go for a \_\_\_\_\_ (1) at least twice a year. The dentist checks that your teeth are in good condition. If you have a \_\_\_\_\_ (2), you may need a filling. Many adults have one or more fillings — often in their back teeth or \_\_\_\_\_ (3).

You may have more serious problems with your teeth and occasionally the dentist may have your teeth X-rayed to see the damage more clearly. For example, a tooth may be so \_\_\_\_\_ (4) that the dentist recommends an \_\_\_\_\_ (5), when the tooth is removed, or you may need root \_\_\_\_\_ (6) work. In both cases, you will need an \_\_\_\_\_ (7) not to feel the pain. Unfortunately, you will still be able to hear the sound of the dentist's \_\_\_\_\_ (8).

Some adults also have problems with their \_\_\_\_\_ (9) teeth. There are four of them: two top teeth, and two \_\_\_\_\_ (10) teeth at the extreme left and right of the mouth. If they don't cut properly, they can become painful and need to be removed.

If you fall over and knock out one of your front teeth, the dentist can fit a \_\_\_\_\_ (11) tooth. The dentist can also repair teeth which have disintegrated, by putting a \_\_\_\_\_ (12) on the tooth or fixing a denture if necessary.

Specialist dentists, called orthodontists, can \_\_\_\_\_ (13) teeth which are crooked. They put \_\_\_\_\_ (14) on the teeth to do this. Many children need to have this work done.

Finally, "prevention is better than cure". Dentists recommend that you brush your teeth twice a day, and \_\_\_\_\_ (15) your teeth to remove any food between your teeth. An antibacterial \_\_\_\_\_ (16) will help to avoid the build-up of plaque.

## X. READING

24 Read the text and write out all the words connected with toothache and dentistry.

### Seeing the Dentist

People have never been tired of talking about their teeth. This is probably due to the fact that Nature is always supplying new teeth to talk about. The actual time of suffering in the dentist's chair is only a fraction of the whole affair. The preliminary period, about which nobody talks, is much the worse. This dates from the discovery of the cavity and extends to the moment when the dentist places his foot on the automatic pedal and plugs 'that buzzer thing' into your mouth. Using anaesthetics for tooth extraction may be humane in its way, but the true time for it is when the patient first decides that he must go to the dentist.

There is probably no moment more appalling than that in which the tongue, running idly over the teeth, comes suddenly upon the ragged edge of space from which the old familiar filling has disappeared. The world stops for a moment. Then quickly you draw the tongue away, and try to laugh the affair off, saying to yourself, "Stuff and nonsense, my good fellow! There is nothing the matter with your tooth!" Having decided this to your satisfaction, you slyly, and with poor attempt at being casual, slide the tongue back along the line of adjacent teeth... and there it is! There can be no doubt about it this time. A cavity! The tooth simply has got to be filled by someone, and the only person who can fill it with anything permanent is a dentist. This much decided, all that is necessary is to call him up and make an appointment.

Let us say that this resolve is made on Tuesday. That afternoon you start to look up the dentist's number in the telephone book.

A great wave of relief sweeps over you when you discover that it isn't there. How can you be expected to make an appointment with a man who hasn't got a telephone? And how can you have a tooth filled without making an appointment? The whole thing is impossible. God knows you did your best.

On Wednesday the tooth didn't bother you. You wouldn't be surprised if by being careful, you could get along with it. A man has to think of his business, after all, and what is a little personal discomfort in the shape of an unfilled tooth to the satisfaction of work well done at the office?

But the euphoria didn't last long — it was over on Friday morning when you decided to have crunches for breakfast. By Saturday you are fairly reconciled to going ahead but you genuinely believe Monday is really the time.

Bright and early Monday morning, you make another try at the telephone book, and find, to your horror, that sometime between now and last Tuesday the dentist's name and number have been inserted into the directory. There is really nothing left to do but to call him up... An appointment is arranged for Tuesday afternoon at 3:30.

As Tuesday morning dawns, your tongue has taken up a permanent resting place in the vacant tooth, and is causing you to talk indistinctly and incoherently. Somehow you feel that if the dentist opens your mouth and finds the tip of your tongue in the tooth, he will be deceived and go away without doing anything. Besides, the whole left side of your jaw has suddenly developed an acute sensitiveness and the disaffection has spread to



the four teeth on either side of the original one. You doubt if it will be possible for the dentist to touch it at all. Perhaps all he intends to this time is to look at it anyway. You might suggest it to him. You could very easily come in again soon and have him do the actual work.

Three-thirty draws near. You take one look about you at the happy people in the street and step into the building where the dental parlor is.

Too often has the scene in the dentist's waiting room been described for me to try to do it again. They are all alike. The antiseptic smell, the ominous hum from the operating rooms, the ancient magazines, and the silent, sullen groups of waiting patients...

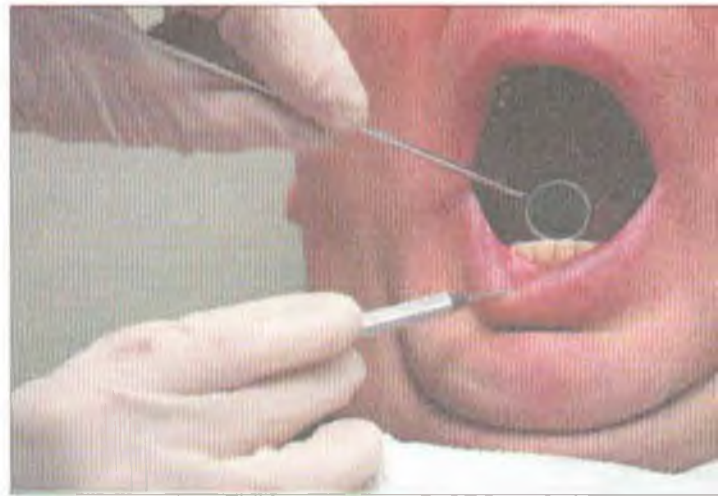
The nurse appears, and looks inquiringly at each one in the room. Each one in the room evades the nurse's glance in one last, futile attempt to fool someone and get away without seeing the dentist. But she spots you

and nods pleasantly, "The doctor will see you soon".

Smiling feebly, you trip over the extended feet of the man next to you, and stagger into the delivery-room, where you sink into the chair and close your eyes...

...But now let us consider the spiritual exaltation that comes when you are at last let down and turned loose. It's all over, and what did it amount to? Why, nothing at all. A-ha-ha-ha-ha-ha!

You suddenly develop a particular friendship for the dentist. You ask him questions about his instruments... And the dentist's family, how are they? Gaily you shake hands with him and straighten your tie. Forgotten is the fact that you have another appointment with him for Monday. There is no such thing as Monday. You are through for today, and all's right with the world.



## 25 Answer the questions.

1. In what way did the author find a cavity in one of his teeth? What did he feel at that moment?
2. What did he do to postpone the visit to the dentist?
3. How did the author plan to fool the dentist and make him do nothing during the first visit?
4. What did the dentist's waiting room look like?
5. How did the author's mood change after the visit to the dentist?
6. Explain what the author means by saying that "the actual time of suffering in the dentist's chair is only a fraction of the whole affair."
7. Give the chronology of the events mentioned by the author.
8. Are you afraid of visiting a dentist as well? Do you behave in the same way whenever you have any problems with your teeth?

## XI. VOCABULARY

26 Match the 'dental' idioms with their explanations and meanings.

1) to fight smb/ smth tooth and nail (to go at smth tooth and nail);	a) to want smth very much;
2) to have a sweet tooth;	b) to get something that is very disappointing or upsetting that happens when you need support;
3) to be/ to get long in the tooth;	c) to be/ to get too old (humorous connotation);
4) to do smth by the skin of one's teeth;	d) to experience difficulties in the early stages of a project/ activity;
5) to give one's eye teeth for smth;	e) to only just succeed in doing smth, and very nearly failed to do it;
6) to lie through one's teeth;	f) to say something that is completely untrue in a bold manner;
7) to get a kick in the teeth;	g) to start to do something with a lot of energy and determination;
8) to have teething problems;	h) to like things that taste of sugar;
9) to get one's teeth into smth;	i) to use all determination to continue in spite of difficulties;
10) to grit one's teeth.	j) to try very hard to do or achieve something, or to prevent something.

27 Give the English equivalents.

1) закусити вудила;	7) бути ласуном/ ласунею;
2) боротися не на життя, а на смерть;	8) ледь-ледь (встигнути, врятуватися);
3) не першої молодості;	9) мати проблеми, пов'язанні зі зростанням чи становленням;
4) спати й бачити що-небудь;	10) завзято, рішуче братися за якусь справу.
5) нагло, безсоромно брехати;	
6) одержати плювок в обличчя;	

28 Fill in the gaps with the most suitable idiom.

- Gregory is rich now, but he had to \_\_\_\_\_ for it for a long time.
- Just \_\_\_\_\_ and hang on — it'll be over soon.
- If the boss breaks his promise, it will be \_\_\_\_\_ for all our team.
- That actor is getting \_\_\_\_\_ to play the romantic lead.
- It's things like chocolate and cake that I can't resist — I've got \_\_\_\_\_.
- Daniel will \_\_\_\_\_, saying anything he needs to get what he wants.
- Thank goodness classes begin next week. I can't wait \_\_\_\_\_ into the new course.
- I don't think we'll have any time to sit back and relax. The project is moving forward too fast and has many \_\_\_\_\_ that we must deal with.
- The car broke down on the way to the airport and they just caught the plane \_\_\_\_\_.
- The little boy would \_\_\_\_\_ to have a little puppy.

## XII. LISTENING AND READING

29 Listen to the conversations and fill in the gaps.

### Conversation 1: At the Dental Reception

Mr. Hummer: Morning. I have 1) \_\_\_\_\_ with Dr. Peterson at 10.30.

Receptionist: Good morning, can I have your name, please?

Mr. Hummer: Yes, it's Mr. Hummer.

Receptionist: Yes, Mr. Hummer. Is this the first time you're seeing Dr. Peterson?

Mr. Hummer: No, I had my 2) \_\_\_\_\_ cleaned and checked last year.

Receptionist: OK, just a moment. I'll get your chart. Is there anything in particular you'd like the dentist to check today?

Mr. Hummer: Well, yes. I've been having some 3) \_\_\_\_\_ recently.

Receptionist: Alright, I'll make a note of that.

Mr. Hummer: ...and I'd like to have my teeth cleaned as well.

Receptionist: Of course, Mr. Hummer, that'll be part of today's dental 4) \_\_\_\_\_. Please, have a seat and Dr. Peterson will be with you momentarily.

Mr. Hummer: Thank you.

Receptionist: You're quite welcome.

### Conversation 2: Dental Check-up

Mr. Hummer: Hello, Doctor.

Dr. Peterson: Good morning, Mr. Hummer. How are you doing today?

Mr. Hummer: I'm OK. I've been having some gum pain recently.

Dr. Peterson: Well, we'll take a look. Please recline and open your mouth... that's good.

Mr. Hummer: (after being examined) How does it look?

Mr. Peterson: Well, there is some 5) \_\_\_\_\_ of the gums. I think we should also do a new set of X-rays.

Mr. Hummer: Why do you say that? Is something wrong?

Dr. Peterson: No, no, it's just a standard procedure every year. It looks like you may have a few 6) \_\_\_\_\_ as well.

Mr. Hummer: Hm, that's not good news.

Dr. Peterson: There are just two and they look superficial.

Mr. Hummer: I hope so.

Dr. Peterson: Here, put on this protective apron.

Mr. Hummer: OK.

Dr. Peterson: (after taking the X-rays) Things look good. I don't see any evidence of further 7) \_\_\_\_\_.

Mr. Hummer: That's good news!

Dr. Peterson: Yes, I'll just get these two 8) \_\_\_\_\_ taken care of and then we'll get your teeth cleaned.



**30** Read the conversations and choose A–D to answer the questions. There can be more than one answer.

- A. Jonathan
- B. Dr. Blake

- C. Mr. Stone
- D. Dental Hygienist

1. Which of the dentist personnel shared their personal preferences with the patient?
2. Which of the patients could choose their treatment?
3. Which of the patients wanted the dentist to do two jobs on them?
4. Which of the patients couldn't endure dental pain?
5. Which of the dentist personnel discovered something that shocked them?
6. Which of the patients might lose a tooth?
7. Which of the patients is about to fall asleep?
8. Which of the patients has just had a dental job done on him?

_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____

### Conversation 3: Complications

**Jonathan:** Hi, Dr. Blake!

**Dr. Blake:** So, what seems to be the problem today?

**Jonathan:** Well, I just came in for a check-up and a dental cleaning.

**Dr. Blake:** Hum. Open up. Let's take a look...

**Jonathan:** Okay. Uh...

**Dr. Blake:** Hm... Wow! I've never seen one like THIS before. Let me try this.

**Jonathan:** Uhhh!.. Ouhhhh [*screaming in pain*]

**Dr. Blake:** Well, besides a lot of plaque buildup, there is a major cavity in one of your wisdom teeth. Hasn't this given you any trouble?

**Jonathan:** Well, the tooth has been bothering me, and it sometimes hurts when I drink something cold. Does it look that bad?

**Dr. Blake:** Well, we're going to remove the decay, and then we'll either put a filling in, or if the decay is extensive, and we can't repair it, we might have to put a crown on your tooth. Or, as a last resort, we may have to extract the tooth.

**Jonathan:** Uh, well, that sounds painful!

**Dr. Blake:** Don't worry. I've done this... once before. Nah, just relax.

**Jonathan:** Wait! Will you give me something to dull the pain?

**Dr. Blake:** Oh, I almost forgot. We can either use a local anesthetic or laughing gas. Or you can just grin and bear it.

**Jonathan:** Nah, nah, nah! Put me under! I can't stand pain. And, if I need a filling, can I get one that looks like my other teeth?

**Dr. Blake:** If we can save the tooth with a filling, I recommend a composite filling instead of a porcelain one. It'll probably last longer.

**Jonathan:** Okay, well, whatever. Let's get it over with.

**Dr. Blake:** Okay, pleasant dreams. Drill please.





### Conversation 4: Dental Hygiene

**Mr. Stone:** Good morning.

**Dental Hygienist:** Hello, Mr. Stone. I'm Gina. I'll be cleaning your teeth today.

**Mr. Stone:** Dr. Peterson has just filled two cavities. Why do I need a cleaning?

**Dental Hygienist:** Well, we have to make your teeth and gums clean and disease free.

**Mr. Stone:** I guess that makes sense.

**Dental Hygienist:** Oral health leads to trouble-free teeth. I'll start off by removing plaque. Please lean back and open wide.

**Mr. Stone:** OK, I hope it's not too bad.

**Dental Hygienist:** Everybody gets plaque, even if they floss regularly. That's why it's important to come in twice a year for check-ups. OK, now that I've finished, please take a drink and rinse your mouth.

**Mr. Stone:** Ah, that's better.

**Dental Hygienist:** OK, now I'll apply some fluoride. Which flavour would you like?

**Mr. Stone:** Do I have a choice?

**Dental Hygienist:** Sure, we have mint, orange or bubble-gum — that's for the kids.

**Mr. Stone:** I'd like to have the bubble-gum!

**Dental Hygienist:** Fine. Now, let me give your teeth a final flossing.

**Mr. Stone:** What type of floss tape do you recommend?

**Dental Hygienist:** Personally, I like the flat tape. It's easier to get between the teeth.

**Mr. Stone:** OK, I'll remember that the next time I buy floss. How often should I floss?

**Dental Hygienist:** Every day! Twice a day if possible! Some people like to floss after every meal, but that's not absolutely necessary.

**Mr. Stone:** I feel much better now. Thank you.

**Dental Hygienist:** My pleasure. Have a pleasant day, and remember to floss every day — at least once a day!



## XIV. WRITING

31 Choose a topic from the list and write an article to one of health-related magazines "Health and Balance".

### Managing lifestyle diseases

Lifestyle diseases affect many people across the country and the world; however, they are easy to manage with a few tips. You can write about:

- how to outsmart diabetes;
- how to make healthier food choices;
- how to have a good night's sleep each night.

## XIII. SPEAKING

32 Two students are discussing a visit to the dentist. Student A is having a dental problem and Student B is trying to persuade him/ her to see the dentist he/ she knows.

### STUDENT A

1. Complain to Student B about your difficulty to study because you have a toothache.
2. Reply to Student B. Explain why you are afraid to go to the dentist.
3. Ask what dental problems Student B had, and if there was anything serious.
4. Express concern that it could be too painful.
5. Pay a compliment to Student B on how white his/ her teeth are. Ask if he/ she goes to the same dentist for regular check-ups.
6. Express willingness to make an appointment with the dentist that Student B is recommending. Mention what complications you might have if you do not go immediately.

### STUDENT B

1. Show sympathy. Find out what the problem is (which tooth is hurting, how long).
2. Express understanding. Tell Student A that you had similar feelings until you once met a really good dentist that you have been seeing ever since.
3. Say that you had one of your teeth filled, and another one extracted. Describe the procedures in detail.
4. Tell Student A how the dentist can dull the pain. Mention a few options.
5. Thank your friend for the compliment and explain what tips the dentist has given you concerning dental hygiene.
6. Give the dentist's telephone number to Student A. Say you are glad that you could help. Show support and express hope he/ she will feel better next time you see him/ her.

## XV. REVISION TRANSLATION

## 33 Translate into English.

1. Чи слід мені йти до лікаря, якщо у мене ниючий біль у боку справа або болить горло? Може бути важко вирішити, які симптоми є достатньо серйозними, щоб записатися на прийом. По-перше, важливо визначити, чи потрібна невідкладна допомога. Якщо вам важко дихати, або є біль у грудях, гострий біль у шлунку, кровотеча, травма голови або втрата свідомості, набирайте 911 або звертайтеся до відділення невідкладної допомоги у лікарні. В іншому випадку ви можете зателефонувати вашому терапевту за порадою і отримати деякі рекомендації по телефону. Онлайн-сайти, присвячені здоров'ю, можуть допомогти вам визначитися з вашими симптоми перед тим, як звернутися до лікаря; але пам'ятайте, що багато нездужань або захворювань, деякі з яких легкі, а деякі серйозні, мають подібні симптоми. Краще зателефонуйте та запишіться на прийом до лікаря, щоб він міг оглянути вас, зробити аналізи і, якщо необхідно, дати направлення до вузьких спеціалістів.
2. **Превентивна медицина** включає заходи для попередження хвороби до того, як вам доведеться її лікувати. На ваше здоров'я впливають зовнішні чинники, генетична схильність і стиль життя. Ви можете запобігти і уникнути серцево-судинних хвороб, хронічних захворювань органів дихання, різних травм, діабету, раку і певних інфекційних захворювань. Є багато методів попередження хвороби. Рекомендується, щоб дорослі і діти відвідували свого сімейного лікаря для регулярних обстежень, навіть якщо вони почуваються здоровими, щоб виявити чинники ризику для хвороби, обговорити поради для здорового і збалансованого стилю (способу) життя і своєчасно робити щеплення.
3. Мені не подобається відвідувати стоматолога. Але одного разу в мене виник жакхливий (сильний) зубний біль. Зуб болів всю ніч. Мені довелося прийняти болезаспокійливий засіб, щоб зменшити біль. Терпіти було незмога, тому я зателефонував своєму стоматологу, і записався на прийом. Коли я зайшов до кімнати очікування, я побачив багато пацієнтів, які чекали на свою чергу. Здавалося, що більшість з них відчуває сильний біль. У деяких навіть напухли щоки. Незабаром мене провели до стоматологічного крісла. Зазвичай я би біг геть із жакхливого кабінету зі страшними борами та шипцями, але я так не зробив. Стоматолог сказав, що є каріозна порожнина в зубі, яку треба запломбувати. Він зробив мені ін'єкцію, але це було нічого порівняно із зубним болем. Скоро, на диво, увесь біль зник. Знеболювальний засіб, без сумніву, подіяв дуже швидко. Потім він просвердлив мій зуб і поставив пломбу. Час від часу він змушував мене полоскати рот водою. Він порекомендував, щоб я регулярно обстежувався і проходив зубні гігієнічні процедури кожні шість місяців. Я був щасливий, що стоматолог не вирвав мені зуба, і біль пройшов.
4. Якщо у вас є проблеми із спиною або шиєю, вам, ймовірно, треба проконсультуватися з мануальним терапевтом. Перед консультацією треба надати базову інформацію про ваші симптоми і фізичний стан. Коли і як почався біль? Де він локалізується? Біль різкий чи тупий? Він періодично проходить чи є постійним? Вас також попросять надати інформацію про ваш сімейний анамнез, будь-які попередні проблеми зі здоров'ям або травми, попереднє лікування або те, що ви отримуєте зараз. Всебічне хіропрактичне обстеження включає загальні аналізи, такі як вимірювання тиску, пульсу, дихання, рефлексів, а також рентгенологічне обстеження, певні ортопедичні та неврологічні тести. Все це необхідне для того, щоб більш точно діагностувати ваш стан та призначити відповідний план лікування, щоб допомогти вам полегшити біль.

# Unit 12

ALL  
SPORTS  
FOR ALL  
PEOPLE

## I. LEAD-IN

1 Discuss the questions.

1. What do you think is more enjoyable: to attend a live sporting event or watch the same event on television?
2. Why do you think some people are attracted to dangerous sports or other extreme activities?
3. If you could meet a famous athlete, who would that be and why?
4. Do you think that physical exercise should be a required part of every school day? How much time should students spend on it?
5. Some famous athletes earn millions of dollars every year. Do you think these people deserve such high salaries?

2 Brainstorm in groups and write the names of summer and winter sports that you know.



Summer



Winter

## II. VOCABULARY

3 A) Study the words and collocations and use them in the appropriate form to complete the sentences.

sports

- car
- equipment
- days
- venue
- coverage
- commentator
- centre/ club
- ground/ field
- channel
- event
- facilities
- goods

sporting

- activity
- tradition
- life

sportsman  
sportswoman  
sportsperson  
sportswriter

1. The college offers a wide range of \_\_\_\_\_ such as track and field, swimming, tennis and others.
2. At one time, for example, she was reported to have been racing around Melbourne in a brand new pink \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The hotel has four restaurants, a bar and a disco, as well as an impressive range of \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Expert advice from a local gym or \_\_\_\_\_ can be very helpful when you are starting with weights.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ are events staged by many schools and offices in which people take part in competitive sporting activities, often with the aim of winning trophies or prizes.
6. The Italian Grand Prix is one of the great \_\_\_\_\_ of the year.
7. Redgrave has already won two gold medals and will become Britain's most successful current Olympic \_\_\_\_\_ if he wins his third.
8. Greece as a motherland of Olympic Games has a great \_\_\_\_\_.
9. You can buy \_\_\_\_\_ at most \_\_\_\_\_ stores and the styles are limitless.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ must take care not to show bias for any team in their \_\_\_\_\_.
11. The trophy is presented annually to the most promising young \_\_\_\_\_ who receives training at Meadowbank.

**B) Translate into English.**

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• спортивний клуб</li> <li>• спортивна площадка</li> <li>• місце проведення спортивної події</li> <li>• зірка спорту</li> <li>• спортивна команда</li> <li>• вболівальник</li> <li>• спортивний коментатор</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• спортивний канал</li> <li>• спортивна сторінка (в газеті)</li> <li>• спортивна травма</li> <li>• спортивне знарядження</li> <li>• спортивна сумка</li> <li>• спортивний репортаж</li> </ul> |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

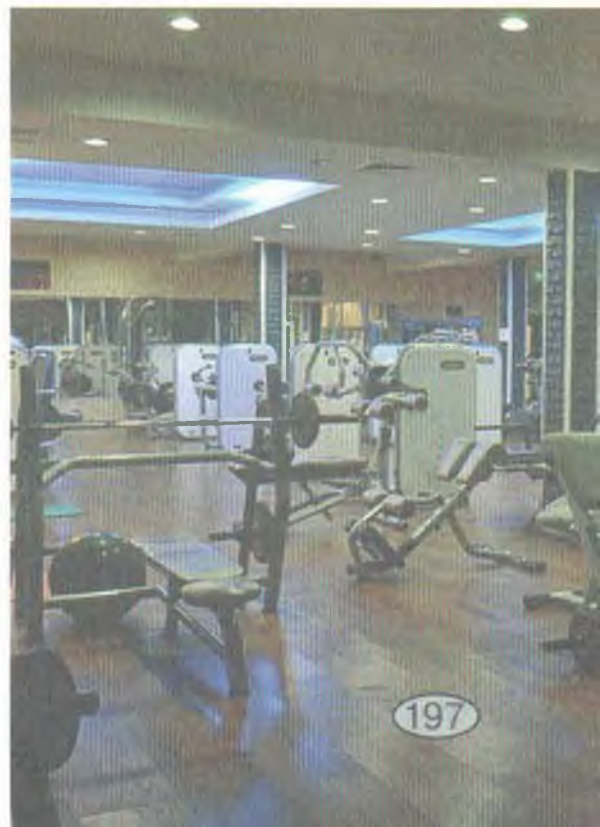
**C) Using the words and collocations speak about:**

- the sports events you watched or attended;
- the sports achievements you heard or read about;
- the athletes you admire;
- the sports club you joined;
- the sporting traditions of your university.

**For example:**

This is the best gym in the city. I switched to it from the Arena sports club a few months ago. Although the Arena has a lot more locations and is more convenient to where I live, the crowds and the long time for equipment to get fixed were frustrating. I don't think that the Arena is bad; I was looking for something else.

The Viva sports club is really clean and there is never a wait for equipment. It's a lot bigger, plus there is a pool. There is also a sauna and a steam room which are both clean. The services are nice and the trainers are great — if you're training for tri's, I recommend trying to get in with Alex. Great guy and the training yields results.



## Unit 12. All sports for all people

4 A) Study the words in the table and group them under the categories. Some words may go under several categories.

• INDOOR: • OUTDOOR: • INDIVIDUAL:	• TEAM: • SPORTS: • GAMES:	• MARTIAL ARTS: • FIELD: • WATER:	• BOARD GAMES:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• aerobics</li> <li>• aikido</li> <li>• angling</li> <li>• archery</li> <li>• badminton</li> <li>• baseball</li> <li>• biathlon</li> <li>• bowling</li> <li>• boxing</li> <li>• chess</li> <li>• cricket</li> <li>• cycling</li> <li>• draughts/ checkers</li> <li>• fencing</li> <li>• figure skating</li> <li>• football/ soccer</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• go-kart racing</li> <li>• golf</li> <li>• gymnastics</li> <li>• high (long) jump</li> <li>• hockey (ice)</li> <li>• ice skating</li> <li>• judo</li> <li>• karate</li> <li>• kayaking</li> <li>• marathon</li> <li>• mountaineering</li> <li>• pole vault</li> <li>• polo</li> <li>• riding</li> <li>• rock climbing</li> <li>• rowing</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• rugby</li> <li>• sambo</li> <li>• scuba diving</li> <li>• skiing</li> <li>• skydiving</li> <li>• snooker/ billiards</li> <li>• softball</li> <li>• squash</li> <li>• synchronized swimming</li> <li>• taekwondo</li> <li>• triathlon</li> <li>• water polo</li> <li>• weightlifting</li> <li>• wrestling</li> <li>• wushu</li> </ul>	

B) Label the pictures on page 199.

5 A) Make collocations.

badminton, golf, aerobics, swimming, yoga, cycling, billiards, mountaineering, skateboarding, skiing, gymnastics, judo, bowls, chess, karate, the long jump, the pole vault, wrestling

to do	to go	to play
aerobics	swimming	chess

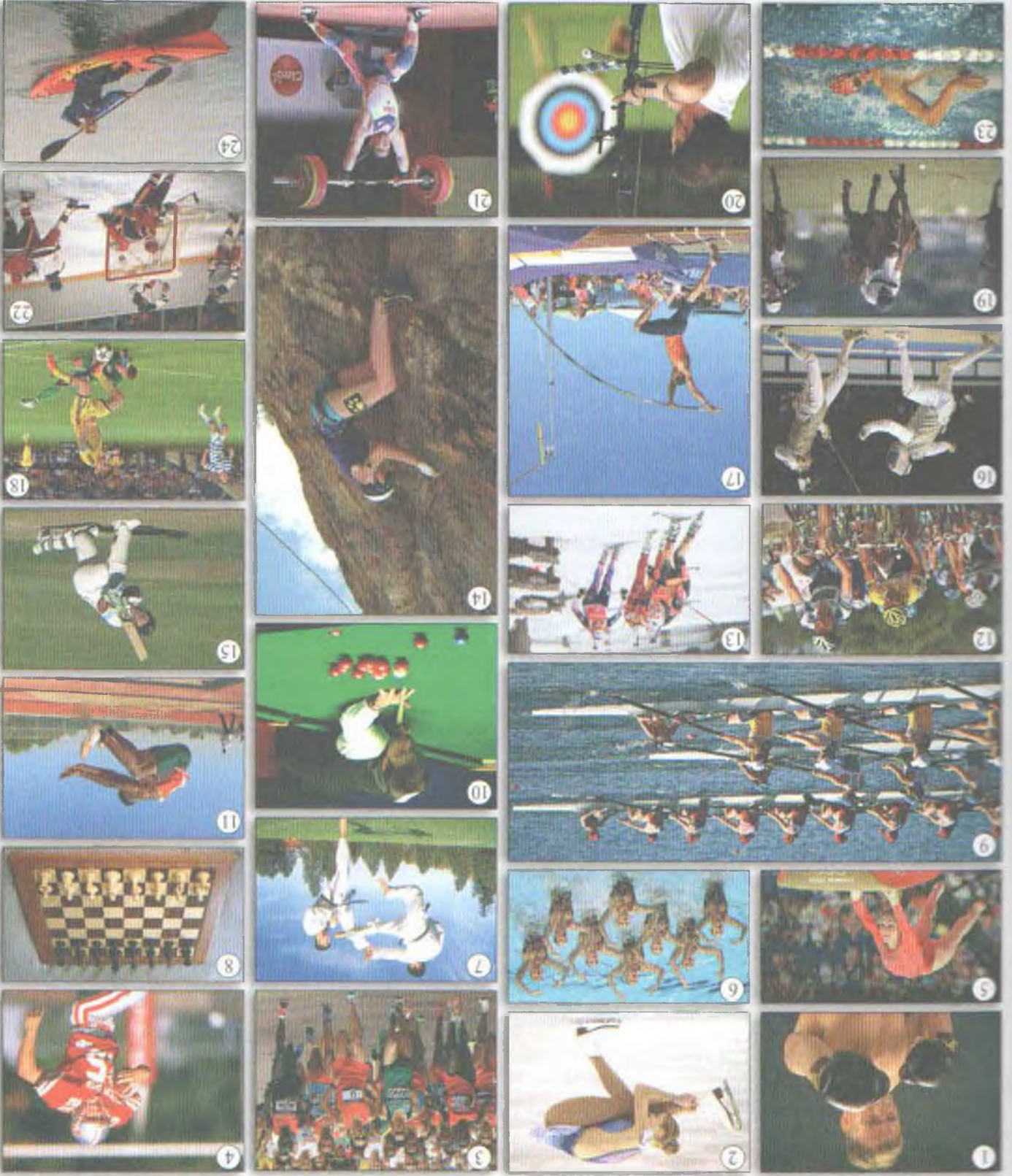
NOTE: You can **do** a sport or **play** sports.  
 go to aerobics, judo, etc (to your aerobics class, etc)  
 play against smb  
 play for a team

B) Translate into English.

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• грати (виступати) за волейбольну команду</li> <li>• займатися ушу</li> <li>• ходити на заняття з йоги</li> <li>• грати в хокей проти...</li> <li>• займатися велоспортом</li> <li>• займатися важкою атлетикою</li> <li>• грати в більярд</li> <li>• займатися рибальством</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• займатися верховою їздою</li> <li>• займатися стрибками з жердиною</li> <li>• займатися легкою атлетикою</li> <li>• грати в шашки</li> <li>• почати займатися фехтуванням</li> <li>• займатися фехтуванням</li> <li>• ходити на заняття (тренування) з фехтування</li> <li>• кататися на скейтборді</li> </ul>
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

C) Answer the questions.

1. Which of the games/ sports do you do/ play?
2. Which of them are you good at/ keen on/ interested in?
3. Which is the most/ least popular in our country?



Unit 12. All sports for all people

### III. READING

6 Answer the questions.

1. Can you skate?

If yes,

a) When and where did you learn to skate?

How old were you?

b) Who taught you how to skate?

c) How long did it take you to learn to skate?

d) Where did you skate?

If no,

a) Would you like to learn to skate?

b) Who would you like to teach you how to skate (e.g. your friend, your parents, or an instructor)? Explain your choice.

2. Do you think skating is a good sport to take up? Why? Why not?

7 Read the text and choose the correct answer.

### On Skating

(by Cornelia Otis Skinner)

It is my cross in life to be completely unathletic. At college I was a member of the seventh hockey team. Hockey was compulsory; there were only seven teams and the seventh rarely met, because there was no one bad enough to meet them. The instructor who taught us fencing, after the first lesson, advised me to take up folk dancing, and the night after I got over the horse in gym, my class gave me a dinner. True, at school I was at the head of an awkward squad that had to do deep-breathing exercises, but after a month a new athletic teacher decided we weren't worth the trouble. I ought to realize that it is a fruitless quest, but now and again the urge re-awakens and I embrace some new sport with desperate ambition, wondering if perhaps I'm not suffering from rickets. However, there seems to be nothing wrong with me physically. My heart is the kind doctors call in other doctors to listen to; my blood pressure is doing whatever a blood pressure should.

Elise listened to me with compassion. She had been eating too well, was losing the bouncing quality and felt that something should be done about it.

It was a cold day and we were walking in the Park. The long

clean hiss of skates cutting new ice rose from the pond. It sounded fresh and wholesome above the roar and rumble of the Great City. A handful of people was gliding about the white surface below us.

"Do you know how to skate?" asked Elise.

"Do you know how to walk a tight rope?" I replied. We admitted neither of us knew how to do either but would like to learn and of the two pastimes skating seemed the more practical.

"It seems a lot to learn for so short a season," I ventured.

After twenty-four hours I timidly entered the chilly building.

An orchestra was playing the "Blue Danube," some two dozen couples were twirling swiftly and gracefully about a vast arena. Silent pairs glided around the outer edge, a wild youth was racing past them. My heart was pounding with what I told myself was delight. "What a sport! What a sport!" I thought. I was standing near the instructors.

Elise arrived. She was going to a wedding later and was wearing a chiffon-velvet dress, a broadtail coat and white kid gloves.





The young lady in the dressing room was colored and bored with life. She asked us resentfully what size skates we wore. (She might as well have asked what size diving belt I required.) Glancing scornfully at my foot she called, "Marie! Send up a large pair!" After a bit she returned with **two objects of torture**. Having thrust my feet into the boots she laced them so tightly I was about to scream.

"How do your new shoes hurt?" croaked Elise.

"Very well, thank you," I replied. "I suppose we'd better go on in."

And I sprang courageously to my feet, which turned out not to be where they usually were — **a surprise that precipitated me back onto the bench**.

"A well-equipped place like this ought to have wheel chairs," I said savagely.

"Hold the wall," came the tired voice of the young lady.

"How can you hold a wall!" snarled Elise.

She had risen and was swaying like a sailor in a gale.

"If worse comes to worst we can always crawl," I said and wondered what one did in case of fire.

Lurching, clutching at benches and one another, we managed to progress down the passageway with the grace of trained bears and emerge near the group of instructors in Lincoln green.

"I hate to bother you," I murmured.

"It's a pleasure," replied my instructor and steered me toward the ice. Here he paused, crossed my arms and, after doing the same with his own, seized my hands in a vise-like grip. For a few moments things looked very bad indeed and the instructor and I looked even worse. We bent violently to one side, then to the other, then bowed forward several times. Now I was ahead of my partner, now behind him; the next second found me wrapped about him like a drunkard about a lamp-post. He meantime was maintaining his equilibrium and murmuring "Steady! Steady!" **I was progressing on the side of my shoe**.

We had traversed the length of the room and were pausing for breath.

"Come on," said my coach and we started the second lap. This was as spectacular as the first. Something seemed to be pulling my feet forward and my head backward and a mirror showed me the unfortunate image of myself executing. Once more we paused for breath. In the interval I caught sight of Elise. She was bending forward and was walking, lifting her foot a good six inches with every step. I called to her in what I considered a cheery tone but she **gave me in reply only a dirty look**.

"Shall we try again?" the coach was saying, and once more we lurched forth. This time I managed to steer a straighter course. "You'll do all right," he said not unkindly.

"Oh, do you think so?" I simpered.

Fired with ambition I started again. By now both of my feet had gone to sleep, and the calves of my legs were only half awake. I was quite numb all over and cheered myself with the thought that no fall could be more painful than the present state of my person. **With the courage of despair I set forth at a swifter pace**.

Faster and faster we flew in a movement that must be difficult for even the most expert. I was aware of people stopping to watch, of flying bits of ice, of Elise's horrified face. Then, in perfect unison, we struck the surface and landed, facing each other. Firm hands seized and lifted me onto that completely uncontrollable part of my anatomy, my feet, and somebody said "There you are!" as if I didn't know. Unfortunately no bones were broken, so I had to continue my lesson; but Elise, who had **witnessed my tumbling act**, suddenly remembered she had a date, waved a mitten at me and departed.

The remainder of the time passed uneventfully enough. After half an hour that seemed interminable, the coach expressed the opinion that I had done enough for the day. I was only too relieved to be shoved to the edge and deposited on the wooden runway. Thence I was made my way to the dressing-room.

Elise and I have lately discussed taking up some sport that doesn't hurt so, to re-establish our self-confidence; and, the season being winter, and the month for such things being no nearer than June, we are considering canoeing.

## Unit 12. All sports for all people

1. The main character was not good at sport because she
  - a) often got ill.
  - b) didn't follow her trainers' advice.
  - c) was totally unfit.
2. The main character's friend Elise wanted to take up a sports activity because she
  - a) wanted to lose weight.
  - b) wanted to win a competition.
  - c) was a passionate athlete.
3. The young lady in the dressing room was
  - a) helpful.
  - b) annoyed.
  - c) friendly.
4. Wearing her skates and heading to the skating arena Elise
  - a) was walking with confidence.
  - b) could barely walk straight.
  - c) was very excited.
5. Teaching the author how to skate the instructor was
  - a) holding the girl's hands tightly.
  - b) not holding her hands at all.
  - c) holding her hands gently.
6. Starting the second lap on the skating arena the girl
  - a) was making a lot of progress in skating.
  - b) was trying new moves on the ice.
  - c) seemed still hopeless on the ice.
7. At the next attempt to progress in skating the girl and her instructor
  - a) fell down on the ice together.
  - b) continued gliding on the ice in complete accordance.
  - c) successfully completed a difficult pirouette.

8 Look through the text again and find the words that denote a sport or a recreational activity. Give their definitions.

9 Explain in your own words what the phrases in bold mean. Which of them do you find humorous? Find more examples of the author's humour in the text.

10 Match the verbs of motion with their definitions. Use them in sentences of your own.

1) to race	a) to move smoothly and quietly, as if without effort
2) to glide about/ around	b) to move across, over, or through something
3) to sway	c) to turn around and around
4) to lurch	d) to move very quickly
5) to crawl	e) to move slowly from one side to another
6) to twirl round/ around	f) to move along on your hands and knees with your body close to the ground
7) to spring	g) to move forward slowly
8) to progress	h) to move suddenly and quickly in a particular direction, especially by jumping
9) to steer	i) to walk or move suddenly in an uncontrolled or unsteady way
10) to traverse	j) to move controlling the direction of the motion

## IV. VOCABULARY

- a pitch
- a track
- a court

- a rink
- a ring
- a course

- a piste
- an alley
- a gym

- 11 Study the words in the box and say what kinds of sport can be practiced in these places?  
 E.g. A pitch is an area painted with lines for playing particular sports, especially football, hockey and cricket.

### Sports equipment

- an arrow
- a bow
- a glove
- a shuttlecock

- a target
- a shin guard
- a mask
- a bat

- a racket
- a club
- a puck
- a rapier

- a ball
- a stick
- an oar
- goggles

- 12 Study the words in the box and say in what sports people use this equipment and how.  
*You need... to play...*  
*You can't do without... if you want to...*  
*...is a must in...*

- E.g. a) Playing hockey a goalkeeper should wear a mask to protect his face from injuries.  
 b) You need a racquet and a shuttlecock to play badminton.

## V. LISTENING

- 13 Listen to the story of Jesse Owen's life and write down what happened at each of these times:

1913 \_\_\_\_\_

1922 *Jesse Owen and his family moved to Cleveland*

1926 \_\_\_\_\_

1935 \_\_\_\_\_

1935 \_\_\_\_\_

1936 \_\_\_\_\_

1976 \_\_\_\_\_

1979 \_\_\_\_\_

1980 \_\_\_\_\_

- 14 A) Listen to the story again and write down the jobs that Jesse Owen had throughout his life.

- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

- B) Tick the personal qualities which characterize Jesse Owen according to the text.

- honesty
- shyness
- courage
- punctuality
- purposefulness
- patriotism

- 15 Speak about Jesse Owen's life and his career in sport.



## VI. READING

16 Do you know the man in the pictures? What do you know about him? Read the text to find out more about this famous sportsman.

### Michael Jordan: A Global Icon

Mid-jump, Michael Jordan appears as though he can actually take flight. From his famous basket shots that earned him the nickname 'Air' Jordan, to the millions of fans who emulate him, Michael Jordan transcended the sport of basketball to become one of the 20th century's greatest global icons.

The forces that shaped Michael's extraordinary talent began at an early age. He was born into a middle-class black family. His father was an army officer and Michael learned to abide by his parents' rules. His father and mother taught their children to work hard and not waste their talent. Michael's parents continually raised their expectations for their children, letting them know that more was expected from them.

Michael's relationship with his older brother, Larry Jordan, was a key force in his early years. Larry had the same strength, athletic ability and ambition as Michael, but Larry didn't have the build to excel in sports. Michael competed ferociously to win against his older brother. Larry's domination over his younger brother pushed Michael's determination to catch up and win — and finally, one day he did. Though Michael had gone far beyond Larry as an athlete, he never let it affect his feelings for his brother — his emotional connection and his respect for his brother were very strong.

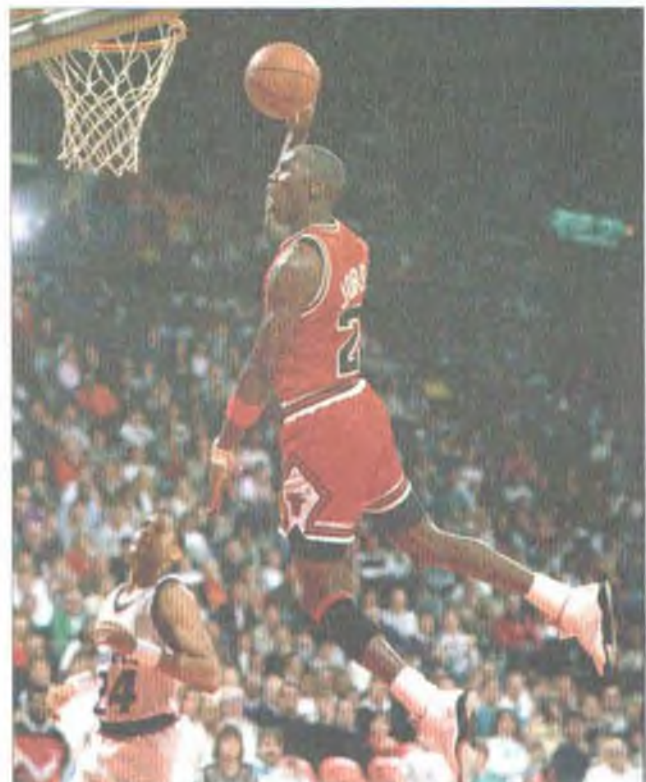
Michael displayed the first signs of his athletic ability in baseball. Although basketball attracted him from an early age, his small

stature made the sport seem like a distant dream. He was reportedly frustrated about his height and started hanging from a chin-up bar to stretch his body.

The worst day of Michael's young life occurred when he found out he hadn't made the cut for his high school basketball team — although he was a good player and quick, he was still too short. But Michael didn't give up. Finally, in his late high school years, Michael began to grow — much taller than anyone else in his family (and most people in general). He began to excel at basketball.

Michael went to college in North Carolina, played for the college team for three seasons and was named College Player of the Year in 1984. In his junior year, Michael declared that he was eligible for the NBA draft. Before he went on to the NBA, he went to Los Angeles where he was co-captain and star of the gold-medal-winning U.S. Olympic basketball team in 1984.

After the Olympic win, Michael was chosen to play for the Chicago Bulls and it helped launch Michael into stardom. Michael could have



played equally well in either place, but his rise to stardom would not have been as swift as it was in Chicago. Michael led the Bulls to three World Championships before he announced his first retirement.

Michael's life off the courts had been going well — he married Juanita and they had three children. But **things began to fall apart** when his father was murdered while driving home from a friend's funeral. The grief of his father's death left Michael with little motivation. Tired of the intense scrutiny, Michael left the NBA in 1993 to play professional baseball.

The world applauded when Michael returned to the NBA in March 1995. It was time for a comeback. Although his first season was shaky, even his critics had to admit Michael's talent shone through. He had been away from the game for 18 months. After that first season, Michael knew he was going to have to work extra hard to get back into his previous basketball shape. His coach says Michael never took his talent for granted. **He put in gym time in the off-season**, shooting hundreds of shots each day. He studied his opponents, learned their moves and dedicated himself to mastering the techniques necessary to stop them. He **had also rekindled the fire** that drove him on court. He guided

Chicago to the best regular-season record in NBA history. He was named the league's Most Valuable Player for the 4th time and brought the team to their 4<sup>th</sup> World Championship in six years. Michael was rewarded with the largest one-year contract in the history of professional sports. He had become one of the most **high profile celebrities** on the planet.

Nike, Coca-Cola and McDonalds courted Michael for lucrative product advertisements. He was even approached by Air Jordan, the national airline of the country of Jordan, to appear in a commercial for the airline. Although he turned hundreds of deals down, he did follow fellow NBA superstar Shaquille O'Neal to the silver screen. They appeared together in several Nike commercials and the Warner Brothers cartoon comedy Space Jam. The popularity of sports celebrities in the media and the marketing genius of companies like Nike transformed Michael into a myth.

On January 13, 1999 Michael announced his final retirement from basketball. His legacy is that he showed that true greatness comes from within. He was aware of his success, but he never stopped trying to be better. As superstar Magic Johnson said, "There's Michael, then there's all the rest of us."

17 Find in the text the words and phrases that mean the same.

- 1) to try to be like someone you admire;
- 2) to become good at sports;
- 3) a basketball player's private life;
- 4) to accept and obey the rules;
- 5) to help smb to become a famous player;
- 6) to accept smth as true, without any proof or doubts;
- 7) not to practice active sports, not to play professionally;
- 8) to be physically strong, fit, and good at sport(s).

18 Explain in your own words what the phrases in bold mean.

20 What is Michael Jordan referred to as in the article? Why? Give your reasons.

21 According to the article, whose example and in what area did Michael Jordan follow?

19 Insert prepositions where necessary.

1. This coach failed to lead his team ... another championship.
2. He has not been expected to excel ... football.
3. The teacher expected quite a lot ... her.
4. Nobody believed that she would retire ... biathlon so soon.
5. Is it true that she competed ... the best athletes in Europe?
6. His injury affected ... his performance in the match.
7. He turned ... the proposal to join the rival team even though they promised to pay him a better salary.
8. The new athlete did not only catch up ... them but also went far ... other members of the team.

## VII. SPEAKING

22 Have you ever heard about any siblings known as sports celebrities? Surely, our Ukrainian sportsmen Vitaliy and Vladimir Klitchko are among them. Speak about their lives and achievements. Try and compare their story with that of Larry and Michael Jordan's. What is common and what is different? Speak about:

- their childhood;
- studies;
- victories and titles;
- their personal lives.

## VIII. READING

23 A) Think of five sports that, in your opinion, are dangerous. Make a list of them beginning with the most dangerous one.

1. (most dangerous) \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_

B) Is boxing among the dangerous sports you have mentioned? Why or why not?

24 Read the text and find 5 facts the author provides to prove that boxing has become popular again in schools and clubs in the UK.

- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

### Off the ropes, and back into the ring — boxing makes unlikely comeback in schools and clubs

A decade ago there were calls for the sport to be banned on safety grounds. Now even its harshest critics have been won over. Boxing is making a comeback, with tens of thousands of people boxing in schools and gyms across the country each week. The number of people registered with amateur clubs in England has nearly tripled since 2005.

The number of schools teaching boxing has jumped from 20 in 2005 to 1,934 in 2009. Politicians and education experts who once said boxing was too violent are now saying the sport is a good thing.

"Twelve years ago I thought boxing was too dangerous to be a mainstream sport," said Tessa Jowell, the Olympics minister. "The British Medical Association at that time often called for boxing to be banned."

But she said boxing's safety record had got much better and it was now ranked 75th by the Royal Society for the Prevention of Accidents on its list of the most dangerous sports, behind rollerblading, gymnastics and horse-riding.

"In my own area, it's probably the number one sport that young people want to do.

It gives them self-esteem, it helps them get rid of aggression, yet at the same time is a highly disciplined sport. We know it can be a way of getting kids away from gangs and carrying knives," added Jowell.

According to the latest national school sport survey, boxing is now available in 34% of secondary schools in England. The same survey showed that 5% of primary and 26% of secondary schools have a formal link with an amateur boxing club.

"It has become so popular in schools, quite simply, because it works," said Rebecca Gibson, head of development at the Amateur Boxing Association of England.

"It has had an impact on everything here from behaviour and attendance to pupils doing well in lessons," said Gregg Morrison, of the Harris academy in Merton, south London. "It has been one of the best things we have done to help pupils. It has been particularly successful for students with behavioural or self-esteem problems."

Female Ghanaian boxing champion, Isola Akay, said, "It is really amazing how many youngsters want to come and box. We have

300 people who come here each week and there are queues of boys and girls each night waiting for a chance to join in. I have known for years what boxing can offer people and it seems others  
55 are now beginning to understand that too."

Women's boxing, which was included in the London Olympics for the first time in 2012, is one of the sport's biggest growth areas. According to Sport England's Active People  
60 survey, 37,000 women now box. The number

of registered female boxers in the UK has risen from 50 in 2005 to more than 642 in 2009. In the past year the biggest increase in boxers had been among girls aged between 11 and 17.

"Girls want more choices and boxing is  
65 becoming interesting," Gibson said. "They want something different and that is what boxing offers. Many women find it an empowering activity."

(From *The Guardian*) 70

**25** Use the words or phrases from the article to fill in the gaps in the sentences. The reference to the paragraph they are used in will help you.

1. When someone or something becomes successful or popular again, it makes a \_\_\_\_\_ (paragraph 1)
2. An adjective relating to an activity that is done for pleasure and not as a job; the opposite of professional is \_\_\_\_\_ (paragraph 1)
3. Something that is \_\_\_\_\_ is considered normal, and having or using ideas, beliefs, etc. that are accepted by most people. (paragraph 3)
4. When we say that something is \_\_\_\_\_, we mean that people are officially forbidden to do it. (paragraph 3)
5. The information about how safe something has been is called \_\_\_\_\_. (paragraph 4)
6. The belief and confidence in your own ability and value is called \_\_\_\_\_. (paragraph 5)
7. Hostile or violent behavior; readiness to attack or confront smb is \_\_\_\_\_. (paragraph 5)
8. Someone who is \_\_\_\_\_ is well-organized and follows rules or standards. (paragraph 5)
9. \_\_\_\_\_ is another word for an effect or an influence. (paragraph 8)
10. Something that is \_\_\_\_\_ makes you feel very strong and more confident. (paragraph 11)

**26** Match the halves of the sentences.

1.	Boxing is much more	a.	away from gangs and carrying knives.
2.	Politicians and teachers no longer	b.	women a feeling of power.
3.	The Royal Society for the Prevention of Accidents says that	c.	effect on behaviour and academic performance.
4.	Boxing can get kids	d.	popular than it was four years ago.
5.	Boxing is now available	e.	event at the 2012 London Olympics.
6.	Boxing has had a positive	f.	think the sport is too violent.
7.	Boxing teaches young people	g.	in 34% of secondary schools in England.
8.	Women's boxing was an official	h.	boxing is less dangerous than rollerblading, gymnastics and horse-riding.
9.	The number of women amateur boxers	i.	self-esteem and discipline.
10.	Boxing gives many	j.	has increased dramatically in the past four or five years.

## IX. LISTENING

- 27 Listen to the response to the article by Peter McCabe published in *The Guardian* five days later. Note down the speaker's arguments against boxing.

• \_\_\_\_\_  
• \_\_\_\_\_

• \_\_\_\_\_  
• \_\_\_\_\_

## X. WRITING

- 28 Choose the statement you most agree with and write an argumentative essay.

- Boxing is violent and dangerous and should be banned.
- Boxing teaches discipline and is good for self-esteem.
- Boxing is an exciting sport for both men and women.

You can make use of the comments published in response to both articles on the Internet.

- I agree with this, and not from a nanny state angle, more from a moral and ethical angle. If 2 people want to batter themselves, fine, but the state doesn't need to fund it. Tax money for boxing? We'll be paying people to kill people next.
- Why this ridiculous need to control people, like an overbearing parent? Are you going to ban cars? Bicycles? These cause a lot of brain injuries as well. What about football injuries? Jogging is harsh on the knees as well. Never mind the damage done by alcohol and cigarettes. You can't wrap everyone in cotton wool.
- The major difference between blood sports (fox hunting, dog fighting, etc.) and boxing is that animals are incapable of deciding whether or not to participate. Humans can.
- And what about rugby? I've been involved with both sports, and witnessed a great deal more 'thuggery,' and head injuries, in rugby than I did in boxing. At least in the latter the combatants wear gloves and can't use their feet and heads to maim opponents.
- Absolutely true, it is barbaric. But after I learned to box the bullies left my brain alone. What to do, eh?
- My grandad was a boxer. A cabbage brain by 40. I would like to think we have evolved. Martial 'arts' should be banned full stop! It is only a further step in the civilisation of mankind, since the eye-gouging of ancient Greek wrestling and Roman gladiatorial fights are both a thing of the past, and rightly so. The world is all the better for it.
- Well... get everyone to box, in that case. Once everyone is suffering from Parkinson's, peace will descend upon the world.
- Boxing promotes discipline, control, athleticism and confidence — it can turn tear-aways into honest hard working young adults.
- As far as most boxers are concerned, they have not got a single brain cell to lose in the first place. Funding should rather be directed to make common people's living conditions better and improve their chance to compete successfully in a non-violent way.
- I think that absolutely every sport or other active pastime should be banned forthwith — either you could be injured or someone somewhere won't like it. In the interests of public health, I might be willing to make an exception for gentle walking on entirely flat surfaces covered in rubber matting, on the condition that there are no obstacles on which walkers could stub a toe, and teams of paramedics are on hand in case of any nasty tumbles, which could result in a grazed knee.



## XI. SPEAKING

29 Student A has recently joined a sports club and is trying to convince Student B to join him/ her.

### STUDENT A

1. Tell Student B that you have joined a sports club. Explain why you don't like going there alone.
2. Say that you want to take up squash. Suggest that you could do it together. Describe what the club offers (the coaches, facilities and equipment).
3. Express regret that Student B is not keen on your idea. Suggest some other team sports available at the club. Add what personal and physical qualities these sports help develop.
4. Speak about the membership benefits (unlimited access to all facilities, annual subscription fee discounts, guest passes etc.) Tell him/ her how much it costs you.
5. Describe the indoor and outdoor swimming pools and explain the entry requirements and safety guidelines for using them.
6. Say on what days you usually go to the club but mention you can change the days and time if Student B can't make it.

### STUDENT B

1. Show interest and add why you think it is a good idea. Ask Student A what sport he/ she has taken up.
2. Show lack of enthusiasm. Explain why you are not interested in that particular kind of sport.
3. Show your excitement and choose a sport you like. Ask a few questions to get more information about the fees, discounts and membership terms.
4. Say that you find the fees affordable. Ask for more information about the swimming pool.
5. Express eagerness to go to the swimming pool at the weekend. Find out on what days you can join Student A to play the team sport you have agreed on.
6. You can make it on the same days but you would prefer a later time. Suggest meeting at the club next week. Thank your friend for the great idea.

## XII. REVISION TRANSLATION

30 Translate into English.

1. Наш університет славиться великою кількістю спортивних споруд, тому, якщо ви думаете про те, щоб організувати спортивну команду або просто пограти з друзями, ми можемо запропонувати високоякісні спортивні споруди з новим спортивним обладнанням за доступними цінами.
2. Надати можливість якомога більшій кількості дітей зайнятися гімнастикою в школах, центрах відпочинку та гімнастичних клубах стане частиною національної програми.
3. Якщо ти захоплюєшся спортом і вмєєш чудово спілкуватися, тоді ти можливо захочеш стати спортивним коментатором. Спортивні коментатори сповіщають про спортивні події у телевізійних і радіотрансляціях, описують те, що відбувається, і висловлюють власний погляд на гру. Спортивний репортаж часто буває емоційним, але має залишатися об'єктивним.
4. Бадмінтон — вид спорту з ракетками, в якому беруть участь два гравця (одиначний розряд) або дві пари (парний розряд), які розмішуються на двох протилежних половинах прямокутного майданчика, що розділено сіткою. Гравці заробляють очки, так вдаряючи ракеткою по волану, щоб він перелетів через сітку і торкнувся землі на половині корту суперників. Бадмінтон — такий же змагальний і виснажливий вид спорту, як і інші. Гравці у бадмінтон знаходяться у такій самій, а може навіть і в кращій спортивній формі, як і тенісисти, футболісти або будь-які інші спортсмени і спортсменки. Бадмінтон — це гра, в якій демонструють швидкість, стійкість, спритність, силу і делікатні рухи. Це також гра стратегій, тактик і сили розуму. Ця гра також відома як фізичні шахи.
5. Боксерський поєдинок, як правило, складається з певної кількості трихвилинних раундів — до 12 (раніше до 15). Між раундами є хвилинна перерва, під час якої бійці у відведених кутках отримують поради і увагу від своїх тренерів і команди. Бій контролює рефері, який здійснює суддівство на ринзі і контролює поведінку бійців, примушує їх битися за правилами і рахує бійцям нокауту.
6. Денис Мінін — спортсмен з Дніпропетровська, завдяки якому молодь з усієї України залучилась до масового руху під назвою Street Workout. Денису захотілось щось змінити в типовій картині звичайного двора, де молоді люди і часто з ними маленькі діти сидять на лавочках, палять сигарети, п'ють пиво, або ще гірше — приймають наркотики. Сотні тисяч людей, які спочатку слідували за регулярними відеотренуваннями Дениса в Інтернеті, а потім і самі стали частиною армії «воркаутерів», довели, що для побудови гарного і міцного тіла не потрібні дорогі тренажери і фітнес-клуби. Достатньо турника, ваги власного тіла і бажання вести здоровий спосіб життя.



# Unit 13

SWIFTER,  
HIGHER,  
STRONGER

## I. LEAD-IN

### 1 A) Do the quiz.

1. In which sport can you score a waza-ari, ippon and yuko?
2. Which sport, though created in Asia, is named after the country seat of the Duke of Beaufort?
3. Which athletics discipline was revolutionised by Dick Fosbury?
4. What colour is the innermost zone in an archery target?
5. What is the difference in paddles between canoeing and kayaking?
6. As well as skiing, which other sport takes place on a piste?
7. How many players are there in an ice hockey team?
8. Which country invented volleyball?
9. What is the flat rubber disc known as in ice hockey?
10. In which sport is the Davis Cup awarded?
11. In which Olympic sport is the wearing of a beard prohibited?
12. Which country did baseball originate from?
13. What is the most valuable piece in a game of chess?
14. In the Winter Olympic sport of curling, what type of rock are the curling stones made from?

### B) Answer the questions.

1. What countries (cities) that hosted the Summer and Winter Olympics do you know?
2. What Olympic champions do you know?
3. Did you watch any Olympics on TV or on-line?
4. Do you remember any Olympic events that impressed you most?



## II. VOCABULARY

### 2 Say how the following sports are similar to and different from each other.

- |                                |                                  |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| • basketball — volleyball      | • high-jump — pole vault         |
| • tennis — table tennis        | • biathlon — triathlon           |
| • football — American football | • speed skating — figure skating |
| • surfing — windsurfing        | • boxing — wrestling             |

## Unit 13. Swifter, higher, stronger

- 3 A) Form the nouns that denote people who do these sports.

golf	<i>a golfer</i>
cycling	<i>a cyclist</i>
football	<i>a football player/ a footballer</i>
archery	
boxing	
badminton	
snooker	
rowing	
chess	
go-kart racing	
wrestling	
skydiving	
ice skating	
gymnastics	
judo	
draughts/ checkers	
sambo	
pole vault	
mountaineering	
riding	
skiing	

- B) What do you call a person who:

- drives cars in races?
- throws the discus/ javelin?
- rides horses in races?
- plays rugby?
- competes in sports competitions, especially running, jumping, and throwing?
- does sumo?
- plays curling?



- 4 Find the odd-one-out and explain why it doesn't belong to the group.

- 1) motor-racing — darts — croquet — stopwatch;
- 2) trophy — cup — helmet — medal;
- 3) judge — fan — referee — umpire;
- 4) fitness instructor — coach — groundskeeper — spectator;
- 5) race — stadium — gym — court;
- 6) championship — competition — tournament — stands.

## III. READING

- 5 Read the text and decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

1. The Games were part of a religious festival.
2. The earliest Olympic athletes competed in running from one end of the stadium to the other.
3. At the 14 Olympic Games athletes competed in more than one sporting event.
4. The pentathlon initially consisted of four sporting events.
5. The pancration is often described as one of the bloodiest sports.
6. Women were allowed to participate in horse races.
7. All athletes had to be professionals.
8. Winners were awarded crowns of sacred laurel branches.
9. The Romans cherished the Olympiad tradition of the Greeks.

### The History of the Olympic Games

- The Olympic Games originated long ago in ancient Greece. The Greeks idealized physical fitness and mental discipline, and they believed that excellence in those areas honored Zeus, the greatest of all their gods. According to a legend, Zeus once fought his father, Kronos, for control of the world. To honor Zeus's victory a temple and an immense statue were built in the valley which was called Olympia. Soon religious festivals developed there as people came to worship Zeus and eventually that led to the famed Games of the Olympics.
- The earliest recorded Olympic competition occurred in 776 B.C. It had only one event, a single race of 192 meters, approximately the length of the stadium, which was won by

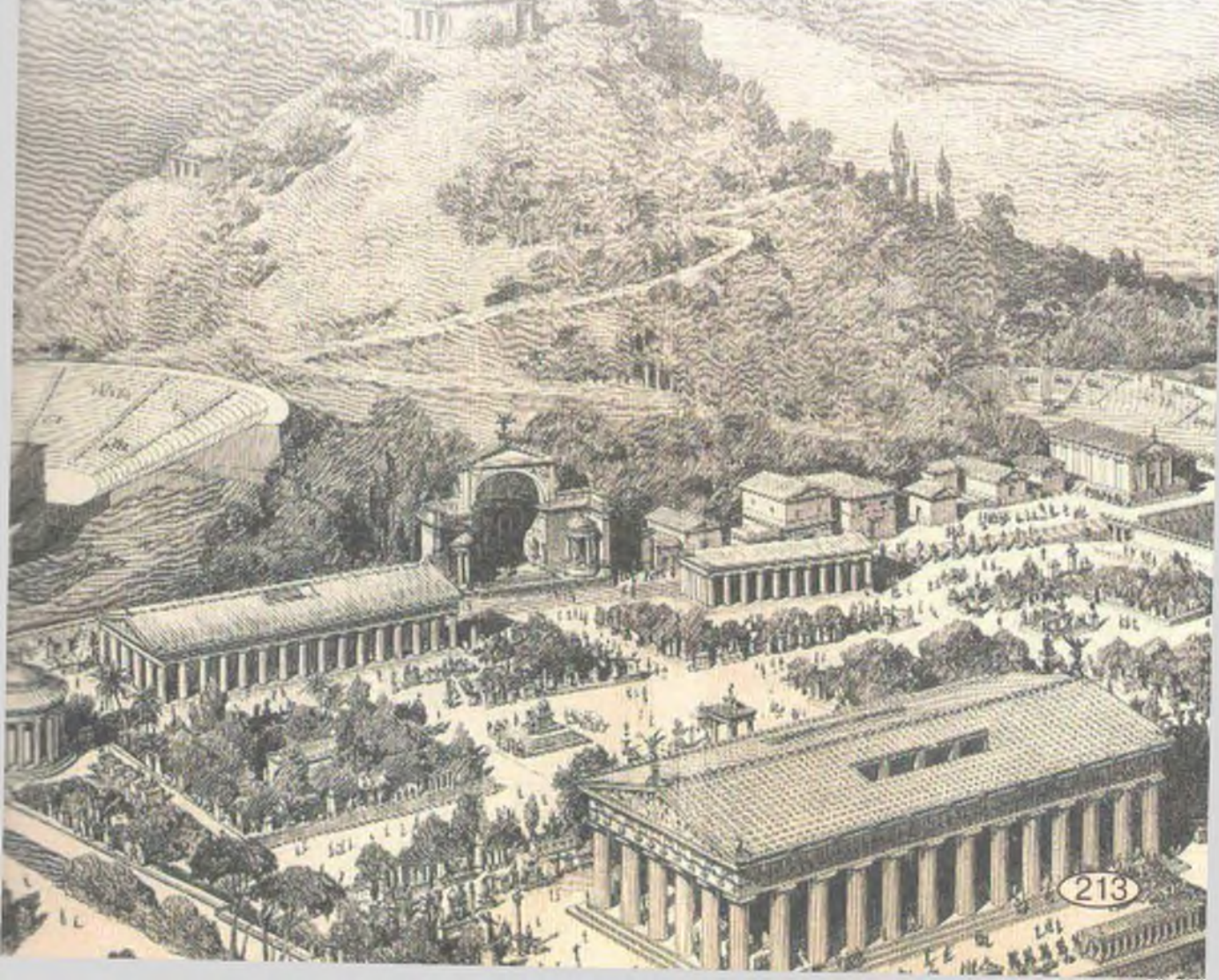
a cook named Coroebus. This was the start of the first Olympiad, the four-year period by which the Greeks recorded their history. Athletic competition became so important to the Greeks that they used to stop wars until the Games were over before sending fighters into battle.

For the first 13 Olympic Games the only event was a one-stade run. But over the years, new sports were added to the Games. The hoplitodrome was a footrace the athletes ran wearing full armor. In the pentathlon, which was introduced in 708 B.C., the athletes who jumped a certain distance qualified for the spear throwing. The four best then sprinted the length of the stadium, the three best then threw the discus, and the two best then engaged in a wrestling match to the finish. The pancration was added in 648 B.C. This brutal sport had no rules and combined boxing and wrestling.

Generally, only freeborn men and boys could take part in the Olympic Games (servants and slaves were allowed to participate only in the horse races). Women were forbidden, on penalty of death, even to see the Games. However, they could enter equestrian events as the owner of a chariot team or an individual horse and win that way.

All athletes were required to take an oath that they would observe all the rules and standards. In spite of the luxurious facilities offered to athletes, all had to remain amateurs. Winners of the Games were crowned with wreaths of olive leaves and hailed as heroes.

After Rome conquered Greece in the 100's B.C., Olympic standards began to decline. Later the Roman emperors ordered them stopped and all the temples destroyed. Natural disasters helped finish what ancient Greeks had started. The once-great city was eventually buried.

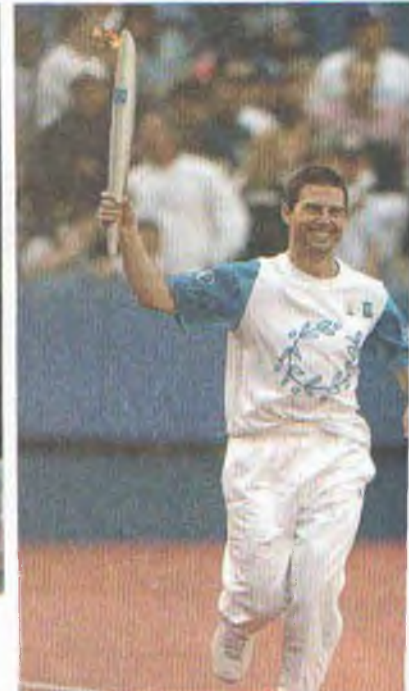


## IV. VOCABULARY

- the Olympic Games
- the Summer Olympics/ the Winter Olympics
- the Paralympics
- the Olympic opening/ closing ceremony
- a multi-sport event
- a motto
- the Olympic anthem
- the Olympic mascot
- to raise the Olympic flag
- an Olympic athlete
- to qualify for
- to be disqualified (for)
- doping
- to ignite/ to light the Olympic flame
- to extinguish the Olympic flame
- an Olympic torch relay
- to carry the Olympic torch
- to get on a podium

### 6 Fill in the gaps with words from the box in the correct form.

1. The Olympic \_\_\_\_\_ is *Citius, Altius, Fortius* (Faster, Higher, Stronger).
2. All athletes must \_\_\_\_\_ the Olympic Games during international and national competitions.
3. The Olympic Games are a major international \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Well-known sportsmen and other famous people take part in a/an \_\_\_\_\_ on the territory of their country.
5. Traditionally during the opening ceremony the Olympic flame \_\_\_\_\_.
6. All the people stood up to listen to the \_\_\_\_\_ and the national \_\_\_\_\_ of the host country.
7. During the 2012 \_\_\_\_\_ Michael Phelps became the most decorated \_\_\_\_\_ of all time, winning his 22nd medal.
8. She \_\_\_\_\_ twice to receive medals in 200-metre race and in high-jump.
9. This athlete was \_\_\_\_\_ taking drugs. Unfortunately, he is not the first in the team whose test for \_\_\_\_\_ proved positive.
10. The most famous athletes and public figures get the right \_\_\_\_\_ on the pole at the main stadium.



7 Choose the right answer.

1. Handover to the next host country means...
  - a. extinguishing the Olympic flame by the next host city representative.
  - b. igniting the torch in Greece and bringing it to the next host city.
  - c. lowering the Olympic flag and raising the flag of the next host country.
  - d. lowering the Olympic flag and giving it to the next host country representative.
2. In the opening ceremony of the Olympic Games...
  - a. Greece marches in first.
  - b. Greece marches in last.
  - c. the host nation marches in first.
  - d. the host nation marches in second.
3. The Winter Olympics and Summer Olympics...
  - a. alternately occur every two years.
  - b. take place every four years.
  - c. have been held since World War I.
  - d. were first held in the IV cent. BC.
4. The only city that hosted the Summer Olympics three times is...
  - a. Los Angeles    b. Innsbruck    c. Athens    d. London
5. During the Olympic opening ceremony the speech of the President of the International Olympic Committee is pronounced in...
  - a. the English, German, Spanish and French languages.
  - b. French, English and the dominant language of the host city.
  - c. English and the dominant language of the host city.
  - d. French, Russian, English and the dominant language of the host city.
6. The official opening of the Olympic Games is declared by the...
  - a. President of the Organizing Committee.
  - b. President of the International Olympic Committee.
  - c. representative of the host country government.
  - d. President of the Olympic Committee of the host country.
7. The Games are declared officially closed by the...
  - a. President of the Organizing Committee.
  - b. President of the International Olympic Committee.
  - c. representative of the host country government.
  - d. President of the Olympic Committee of the host country.
8. The Olympic Oath to commit to competition in sport within the rules is taken by the...
  - a. athletes and coaches.
  - b. athletes and judges.
  - c. coaches and judges.
  - d. athletes, coaches and judges.



## Unit 13. Swifter, higher, stronger

8 How well do you know the history of the Olympic Games? Match the sentence halves. There are two extras.

1. In 1912 the International Olympic Committee took away Jim Thorpe's medals	a. lasted until the IV century A.D.
2. Canadian sprinter Ben Johnson was disqualified	b. when American Black athlete Jesse Owens won four medals.
3. All athletes must promise	c. because he ran for two countries at the same time.
4. In the last hundred years the games	d. to give their best and compete fairly.
5. The first games of the modern age	e. have often been the center of politics.
6. In 1936 Berlin Olympiad Adolf Hitler's idea of Arian supremacy backfired	f. protested against the American government.
7. The ancient Olympic Games	g. took Israeli athletes as hostages.
8. During 1972 Olympics the terrorists	h. because he had played baseball professionally before the Olympics.
9. Abebe Bikila's victory in the marathon was so special	i. because he had taken drugs.
	j. were organised by a Frenchman.
	k. because he ran barefoot.

## V. LISTENING

9 Listen to the text and say whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

- According to the author the Olympic Games boast of rich diversity of athletes.
- Sport lovers can be disappointed because it takes them several weeks to recover from the games.
- Trying to watch all possible events results in health problems.
- The author read the reports on every Olympic published in British newspapers.
- The Games in Sydney and Barcelona were the favourite ones for British media because the largest number of British fans went to see them.
- The Games in Atlanta were the least successful for Britain.
- The author mentions three Games spoilt by boycotts.
- The author has good memories of all the Summer Games he attended because he personally met some top sportsmen there.





VI. READING

MICHAEL PHELPS ON MAKING OLYMPIC HISTORY

10 Match the swimming styles with their descriptions and with the pictures below.

1. Backstroke	a) a combination of four different swimming styles in one race
2. Breaststroke	b) a swimming stroke swum on the breast, with both arms moving simultaneously, accompanied by the 'dolphin kick,' the newest swimming style swum in competition, first swum in 1933
3. Butterfly (or 'fly')	c) an ancient style of swimming; the second stroke to be swum in competitions after the front crawl
4. Freestyle	d) the slowest of the four official styles in competitive swimming; by far the most difficult to do correctly; is sometimes referred to as a 'frog kick' because of the resemblance to the movement of a frog's hind legs
5. Medley	e) the fastest swimming style, most often referred to as 'the front crawl'



11 Read the interview with Michael Phelps, the famous US Olympic champion in swimming. Some of the questions in the interview have been removed. Fill in the gaps (1–6) with the correct questions (A–H). There are two extra questions that don't fit.

- A. What was that 'secret list' everyone is talking about?
- B. Why did you stick with swimming and not baseball, lacrosse or soccer?
- C. So why did you start swimming?
- D. What went wrong in that race?
- E. Wasn't it also a psychological battle between you and Ian Thorpe — the world's best swimmer for so long?
- F. What did your sisters do in their free time?
- G. Your workouts were so intense, Bowman, your coach, became known as the mad scientist. What were the toughest workouts?
- H. What other kinds of sport did you try?

Let's start at the very beginning, could you tell us a few words about what kind of background you come from?

I come from Baltimore, a gritty red-brick but blue-collar city. My father, Fred, a policeman, and my mother, Debbie, a school teacher, separated when I was seven. My mom still works as principal at a middle school in Baltimore.

(1)

I grew up around the pool with my sisters. Both of my sisters swam. I was always there. So I thought, why not? My mom put us in the water for water safety, so we were comfortable in the water in case anything ever happened. I learned that way, and started liking it more and more.

**When you were learning, were you afraid of the water?**

I started on my back because I wouldn't put my face in. I really wasn't too keen on it.

**I read in an interview that your mom put you in sports because you had too much energy.**

Well, I was playing other sports and she was pretty much just like, "How do I wear him down?" So I was playing baseball, lacrosse, soccer and swimming all at once. When I got home **I'd be beat**.

(2)

At the age of 11 my swimming coach told me I could **make the Olympic team** in four years, so I said "Okay, I want to make the Olympic team, so that's what we're going to do." And I started training for that. I went five straight years without ever missing a workout.

**Did your plan work? Did you make the Olympic team in four years?**

Yes, I was only 15 at the time. At the Sydney Olympics, Ian Thorpe, the Thorpedo, was unstoppable. He won three golds while I finished fifth in the 200 m butterfly final. It was a different time. Thorpe was incredible while I was just proud to have made the US team. But I ended up disappointed because I wanted a medal. It was a learning experience — my first international meet and my first time out of America.

**So, did it encourage you to train even harder?**

Definitely. In the winter, at 5.30 am, when I didn't want to get up and train on some cold and dark morning I'd still make myself snap on the light and look inside my swimming cap. 'Athens' was stitched on the inside. I'd get up then. I'd grab my bag and **head for the pool**. I've been doing that 365 days year after year. I can't remember the last day I didn't train. Thanksgiving, Christmas Day, New Year's Day.

(3)

That was swimming 10,000 meters for time, which takes about two and a half hours. I just had to swim as hard as I could for two and a half hours. When you see them on paper, you're like, "I can't do this." He makes us do it so we're more confident and we know that we can do anything that we **put our mind to**. It can sound crazy when you realize years were spent **swimming lap after lap**, thousands of hours staring at a black line on the bottom of a pool.

**Did payoff come at the 2004 Olympics?**

First, there was the world championship in Barcelona. One night was very big. I went into it with the clear aim of becoming the first man **to set two world records** in two different events on the same night. When it happened it was extremely exciting. It showed that it's possible to shoot for something and accomplish it — but I was so tired at the end I could hardly climb out of the pool. I knew that Athens was going to be even more physically and mentally draining.

(4)

In Barcelona I was honoured to have the chance to race against him. He's mainly a freestyle swimmer while my strength's in the butterfly and medley. But he **took me on** in one of my events, my favoured 200 m medley. I won that, and in all won one more gold than the trio picked up by Ian but in Athens I was going to do something I'd always wanted to do — swim freestyle against Thorpe. And, yes, in Athens I won six gold medals, though we had had seven in our secret list.

(5)

Basically, it's the list my coach and I put together the year before the Olympics. On it were the times I hoped to achieve in Athens, and then in Beijing. It was my chance to make history. To win eight golds, I needed to swim 17 times in nine days. There were two races where I didn't hit my actual goal time of what I wanted. The 100 and 200 fly. It turns out I was off by nearly a second in the 200-meter butterfly, when my goggles filled with water.

(6)

Well, in the 200-meter butterfly final, my goggles filled with water virtually from the start. They started filling up more and more and more. And about 75 meters left in the race, I could see nothing. I couldn't see the black line. I couldn't see the T. I couldn't see anything. I was purely going by stroke count. And I couldn't take my goggles off because they were underneath two swim caps. Somehow, I not only won my fourth gold medal of the games, I also set a world record.

**Let's talk about your prodigious appetite. Does it remain intact? Do you still eat 12,000 calories a day?**

No, it's a myth. It's a *mere* 8,000 to 10,000 calories when I'm training. Like how much I work out, you know, I have to always just constantly shovel food in because I can lose anywhere from, you know, five to 10 pounds in a week.

**What do you tell a kid that is discouraged, hasn't found that passion yet or is struggling in school?**

I have had extreme ups and downs. The biggest thing I learned after I broke my wrist is to never give up. Nothing in life will ever **come easy**. It depends on how you **deal with those obstacles** and how you overcome those obstacles. If you can overcome them, you're a stronger person. If you make mistakes along the way, as long as you never make that same mistake again, you're a successful person.

**12 Match the highlighted phrases in the text with their synonyms:**

- a) to achieve results that are high enough for joining the national team of one's country;
- b) to go in the direction of;
- c) to be extremely tired/ exhausted;
- d) to show the best time in the world twice;
- e) to be determined to do something;
- f) to compete with/ challenge someone;
- g) to swim from one end of the swimming pool to the other non-stop;
- h) to handle difficulties;
- i) to be achieved without much effort.



## VII. VOCABULARY

### 13 A) Make possible collocations.

win	lose	break	hold	beat	defeat	score	end	set

- a game
- the record

- a competition
- a goal

- a point
- the opponent

- in a draw
- by 2 goals/ points

### B) Translate into English.

- Ми виграли змагання тільки з перевагою в одне очко.
- Арканзас щойно програв три гри поспіль.
- «Динамо» програло останній матч «Авангарду» з різницею в два голи.
- Він закріпив успіх (clinched a victory), побивши світовий рекорд у бігу на довгі дистанції.
- Вона утримує світовий рекорд протягом останніх трьох років.
- «Ліверпуль» програв з рахунком 2:3.
- «Ньюкасл» отримав поразку від торішнього чемпіона.
- Стадіон вибухнув вигуками вболівальників, коли він забив гол на останній хвилині гри.
- За результатами жеребкування Англія грає проти Франції наступного місяця.
- Матч закінчився у нічию.
- Фігурист втратив три очки через падіння.
- Боксер переміг свого супротивника нокаутом у сьомому раунді.

### 14 What sports are the idioms in the box associated with? Explain their meaning in your own words.

- to paddle one's own canoe
- to hit the bull's-eye
- to be left at the gate
- to win by a neck
- to throw in the towel
- to win by a nose
- to start the ball rolling
- to pass the baton
- to dive (right) in(to) (something)
- to be neck and neck

- to be on the ropes
- to take the wind out of sb's sails
- to test the water
- to set the pace
- to be saved by the bell
- to move the goal posts
- to back the wrong horse
- to jump the gun
- to throw sb in at the deep end
- to hit below the belt

## 15 A) Fill in the gaps with the idioms using the verbs in the correct form.

- Jessica saw that all other contestants had better skills and more experience and realized that she \_\_\_\_\_.
- If you're in a debate, wait until you're invited to speak and don't \_\_\_\_\_ by speaking before you should.
- The top two runners \_\_\_\_\_ as they crossed the finishing line, so the judges have called for a photo.
- You told our clients I was the one who ordered the wrong-size carpet. Now they are going to fire me. That's not fair! You \_\_\_\_\_.
- In her first overseas teaching job, Kathy \_\_\_\_\_ with a class of 30 kids and no training, no books, and no guidelines.
- I was going to start doing the dishes, but someone knocked on the door and I didn't have to do it. I \_\_\_\_\_.
- It is always a good idea to go to a couple of yoga classes \_\_\_\_\_ before you decide whether to buy a long-term membership at the club.
- Their restaurant was never really popular. So, when they couldn't get business even on Mother's Day, they decided it was about time to \_\_\_\_\_.
- The governor of the State of Illinois resigns this month, \_\_\_\_\_ to one of his closest associates.
- After a good start in the electoral campaign, the candidate seems to be \_\_\_\_\_ having lost support of the voters.

## B) Replace each phrase in bold with the appropriate idiom, using the words in the correct form.

- Our manager thinks the best way to introduce new staff to the job is to **give them a difficult job to do, or a serious problem to deal with** and see how they go.
- Parents hope that after their children leave college they **will be independent and won't need help from anyone else**.
- The school principal's speech on attracting new investments for the new library **was right on target and got exactly what the school needed**.
- Mr Grey asked the three candidates for the position of his daughter's English tutor to provide references. He didn't want to **make the wrong choice**.
- My boss is never satisfied. Whenever I think I've done what he wants, he **changes the rules**.
- For many years this company **has established standards** in the communications industry that their competitors are still trying to keep up with.
- This year Manchester United have won the Cup by **no more than 5 points** but last year they won it by **merely 1 point**.
- When Jeff failed his finals, he **lost hope and the will to continue his studies**. It discouraged him from trying to get into a university.
- William has always dreamt about a tree house. Now that he's found a perfect design and has bought all the building materials he is **ready to begin**.
- They **started the project enthusiastically and without delay**.

## VIII. LISTENING

16 You will hear a story about eight Olympic curiosities, the so called 'head-scratcher' sports in the Olympic history.

A) Listen to the text and fill in the table.

	Event	Introduced	Excluded	Reasons
1.				
2.				
3.			still exists	
4.				
5.				
6.				
7.				
8.				

B) Listen to the recording again and explain why each of those Olympic events seems odd.

## IX. READING AND SPEAKING

17 Scan the text and find at what Olympic Games (city and year) the following took place for the first time.

\_\_\_\_\_ The Olympic Games were broadcast on TV.

\_\_\_\_\_ An Olympic village was built.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ One swimmer won eight medals at one Olympiad.

\_\_\_\_\_ The Olympic flag and the Olympic oath were introduced.

\_\_\_\_\_ A special Olympic stadium was built.

\_\_\_\_\_ The first athlete from Africa won the gold medal.

\_\_\_\_\_ Gold, silver and bronze medals were awarded.

\_\_\_\_\_ The Soviet team competed in the Games.

\_\_\_\_\_ Women athletes competed in the Games.

\_\_\_\_\_ The Olympic champion was disqualified due to the drug scandal.

\_\_\_\_\_ The Photo finish was used.

\_\_\_\_\_ The Olympic flame was ignited at the opening ceremony.

\_\_\_\_\_ Cassius Clay (Muhammad Ali) won gold medal in boxing.

\_\_\_\_\_ The marathon was nearly won by cheating.

### History of the Modern Olympic Games

II — Paris May 14 — October 28, 1900.  
 The first of seven consecutive Olympiads whose events were spread out over months, Paris also saw women compete for the first time with Mrs Brohy and Miss Ohnier of France in croquet being the first of 22 members of the fairer sex to take part, although they were rather outnumbered by the 975 male competitors.

III — St Louis July 1 — November 23, 1904.  
 The first Games to present gold, silver and

bronze medals witnessed the debut of boxing and decathlon but also the most audacious attempt to cheat the Olympics has ever known. Thomas Hicks of the USA won the marathon but only after fellow American Fred Lorz was thrown out of the competition after it was revealed he had covered almost the entire distance in a car, leaping out just before the finish.

IV — London April 27 — October 21, 1908.  
 More than 2,000 athletes headed for London

when Rome had to pull out because money was needed in Italy to rebuild Naples after the virus erupted in 1906. The marathon distance was changed from 25 miles to 26 miles 385 yards so that it could begin in Windsor and finish under the royal box in front of Princess Mary. For the first time, a stadium was purpose-built for the Games (White City Stadium) and the swimming events took place in a pool, not in open water.

**V — Stockholm** May 5 — June 27, 1912. Athletes from all five continents competed for the first time while automatic timings on the track, the photo finish and public-address system also debuted. But it was a native American called Brightpath (competing under his western name of Jim Thorpe) who shone, winning the pentathlon and decathlon by huge margins. King Gustav declared him “the greatest athlete in the world,” but he was subsequently disqualified for being a professional sportsman who later became the first president of the NFL.

**VII — Antwerp** April 20 — September 12, 1920. The sixth Olympiad should have been staged in Berlin in 1916 but was cancelled because of the Great War. Antwerp was awarded the next Games as a mark of respect for the suffering of the Belgian people during the war. The Olympic Flag appeared for the first time and Antwerp also marked the first time the athletes took the Olympic Oath and the first time the doves of peace were released.

**IX — Amsterdam** May 17 — August 12, 1928. As each Games tried to introduce something new which would last, Amsterdam brought us the Olympic flame. Also Greece entered first at the opening ceremony and the Netherlands last and this originators-first, hosts-last routine has been used ever since. What has not been repeated was the remarkable story of Aussie rower Henry Pearce who stopped to let a family of ducks cross his boat in the quarter-final but was still good enough to recover to win the race and later the gold.

**X — Los Angeles** July 30 — August 14, 1932. Los Angeles reduced the Games to 16 days. LA 1932 also gave us the Olympic Village and the medal podium with flags being raised. The true spirit of the Games was best displayed by British fencer Judy Guinness, who could have

won gold had she not pointed out to the judges two missing strikes by her opponent, Austria's Ellen Preissner, which the panel had failed to spot.

**XI — Berlin** August 1—16, 1936. Adolf Hitler's idea to promote his Aryan supremacy views backfired spectacularly when American black athlete Jesse Owens became the star in Berlin by winning four gold medals. It was the first time the Games were on TV and the first appearance of the torch relay.

**XV — Helsinki** July 19 — August 3, 1952. Israel and the Soviet Union entered the Games for the first time. Czechoslovakia's Emil Zatopek first won the 5,000 m, followed that with the 10,000 m title and remarkably completed a clean sweep in the marathon — a treble which stands unique to this day.

**XVII — Rome** August 25 — September 11, 1960. Abebe Bikila became the first black African Olympic champion when he ignored the derision of fans and other athletes to run barefoot in the marathon and to win comfortably. But it was another black Olympic gold medallist who was to leave the longest-lasting impression on the Games and sport in general as America's Cassius Clay triumphed in boxing's light-heavyweight division before becoming more famous as Muhammad Ali.

**XXIV — Seoul** September 17 — October 2, 1988. Having come through all the political Games, the return of the Olympics to Asia was by and large a huge success but will always be remembered for one word — Stanozolol. Canadian sprinter Ben Johnson had already won the world title in Rome the previous year. Now he beat Carl Lewis for the Olympic gold only to be stripped of his medal when he tested positive for the anabolic steroid. He was the biggest name ever caught and it sparked the era of suspicion and the war against drugs cheats.

**XXVIII — Athens** August 13—29, 2004. The Games returned to their spiritual home but in the intervening 108 years, they had leaped from 14 competing nations to 201. Michael Phelps dived into the pool and into the record books as he won six swimming gold medals and became the first person ever to take home eight medals from one Olympiad.

**18** Speak about one of the Olympics using the facts from Ex. 17 which impressed you most.

**X. READING**

19 A) Use the words in brackets to make the appropriate derivatives to fill in the gaps in the text.

Scientists conducted 6,250 drug tests during the London Olympics — but is it still possible to beat the system?

Aware that the doping scandals of the 1990s that followed the era-defining (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (grace) of Ben Johnson in Seoul and the (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (realize) that much of East Germany's earlier (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (dominant) was based on institutional doping, the World Anti-Doping Agency (WADA) was set up in 1999 as a joint venture between the (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (national) Olympic Committee and governments around the world to provide a co-ordinated (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (globe) response. It drew up a (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (universe) list of banned substances, sought to (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (harmony) the rules across countries and sports and resolved to drive up testing standards across the world.

London 2012 organisers (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (proud) said that during the games scientists conducted 6,250 tests for 240 (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (ban) substances on athletes' blood and urine. Around half of all athletes were tested, including every single (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (medal). This led organisers and (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (politics) to claim that anyone cheating at those Games was caught.

Of the 26 sports included in the 2012 Games, the worst (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (offend) in terms of the rate of findings per sample (averaged across all eight years) is (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (cycle) — 3.71%. The second highest rate — 3.05% — was found among (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (box). Badminton had the lowest rate of 0.87%. (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (Football) were the most tested athletes in terms of the total number of samples (30,398), followed by athletics (25,013). While cycling has the highest average (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (find) rate over the eight year period, there has been a general decline in positive tests since 2003.

B) Fill in the gaps with prepositions where necessary.

In a much-quoted speech, the WADA director general, David Howman, drew a distinction \_\_\_\_\_ 'dopey dopers' who still have traces \_\_\_\_\_ banned substances in their system \_\_\_\_\_ major competition, and sophisticated cheats who are able to take drugs outside competition and be tested clean during it.

While sophisticated new testing methods are being developed, they are expensive and require refrigerated blood samples to be carried \_\_\_\_\_ sometimes thousands of miles \_\_\_\_\_ the labs capable \_\_\_\_\_ carrying out the tests. WADA is concerned \_\_\_\_\_ the fact that the cost is preventing many countries carrying out as many tests \_\_\_\_\_ blood doping as they should be.

All of those \_\_\_\_\_ the anti-doping frontline acknowledge they are in an 'arms race' with those willing to cheat. WADA is also calling for more help \_\_\_\_\_ governments around the world, not only to maintain their funding but to criminalise the supply \_\_\_\_\_ performance-enhancing drugs.

The focus in the war against doping is primarily \_\_\_\_\_ education of young athletes to convince them that the risks vastly outweigh \_\_\_\_\_ the rewards. WADA also works \_\_\_\_\_ Interpol and local law enforcement agencies \_\_\_\_\_ order to target the networks behind the supply of illicit substances and the pyramid of influences behind the athletes.



# XI. VOCABULARY

20 Match the Winter Olympic Sports with their icons.

1. bobsleigh
2. curling
3. alpine-skiing
4. cross-country
5. biathlon

6. speed skating
7. snowboard
8. ski jumping
9. ice hockey
10. luge

11. skeleton
12. nordic combined
13. figure skating
14. short track
15. freestyle skiing



A) \_\_\_\_\_



B) \_\_\_\_\_



C) \_\_\_\_\_



D) \_\_\_\_\_



E) \_\_\_\_\_



F) \_\_\_\_\_



G) \_\_\_\_\_



H) \_\_\_\_\_



I) \_\_\_\_\_



J) \_\_\_\_\_



K) \_\_\_\_\_



L) \_\_\_\_\_



M) \_\_\_\_\_



N) \_\_\_\_\_



O) \_\_\_\_\_

**21 A) Read the descriptions of some Winter Olympic sports and guess what they are.**

1. It is a sport related to bowls but played on ice. Teams sweep their stones towards a target, accumulating points over 10 ends.
2. It is the only male-only Winter Olympic sport consisting of ski jumping and cross-country skiing. It requires a marriage of explosive power for the ski jumping, and endurance for the cross-country race.
3. Pairs of athletes compete against each other and the clock, gracefully lapping the 400 metre track at speeds upwards of 40 metres per hour.
4. It is the most high-profile sport at the Winter Olympics, and possibly the easiest to understand — the quickest to get from the top to the bottom of the mountain course wins gold.
5. Jumps and tricks combine with traditional skiing as the competitors tackle man-made tracks packed with hills, bumps and jumps.
6. Racing as singles or pairs, competitors propel themselves down an icy track feet first on a small sled with only the shoes' spikes to act as brakes.
7. Individuals ride head first on a small sled down an icy run, the lowest total time over four runs winning.

**B) Complete the descriptions of the winter sports in the pictures using the phrases.**

- 1) the oldest Winter Olympic discipline/ consist of/ three 20-minute periods/ overtime and shoot-outs if required/ six players per team/ allow/ on the ice at any given time/ unlimited substitutions/ permit
- 2) teams of two or four competitors/ make/ four runs/ bob/ sliding down an icy track/ the lowest total time/ win
- 3) grace and technique/ combine/ competitors/ perform/ compulsory elements/ to music/ singles/ pairs/ ice dance events
- 4) the oldest type of skiing/ emerged/ the need to get around and hunt/ skiers traverse/ up to 50 kilometres/ the challenging landscape
- 5) a test of both endurance and accuracy/ combine/ cross-country skiing/ target shooting/ athletes/ cover distances/ 20 km/ stop/ a shooting range/ to fire at five targets/ as small as golf balls/ 50 m distance
- 6) skiers/ go down/ a take-off ramp/ jump/ attempt to fly/ far/ possible/ judges/ award/ points/ technique



Unit 13. Swifter, higher, stronger



## XII. LISTENING

**22** You will hear an extract from a radio programme about the sport celebrity Tatyana McFadden. Listen to the journalist and complete the notes.

The Paralympics started as the sports competition for British 1) \_\_\_\_\_ in 1948.

Now the Summer and Winter Paralympic Games are the ultimate international competitions for world class 2) \_\_\_\_\_ who help other people with disabilities get involved in sport.

The 24-year-old American Paralympian Tatyana McFadden is 3) \_\_\_\_\_ in the world.

Over the year, she has become untouchable in all 4) \_\_\_\_\_ races.

Her new challenge was the participation in the Winter Olympics 2014 5) \_\_\_\_\_

Born in Russia, her parents, unable to care for a child with a fault in the development of 6) \_\_\_\_\_, placed her in a St. Petersburg orphanage.

McFadden walked 7) \_\_\_\_\_ for the first six years of her life before being adopted by a family in Maryland, United States.

With Tatyana desperately weak, her foster mother enrolled her to in a variety of sports such as swimming, gymnastics, 8) \_\_\_\_\_, sled hockey, and track and field to help her to strengthen her muscles.

McFadden began 2014 by returning to the country of her birth to compete in the Winter Paralympic Games in Sochi where she won the medal in front of all her family including her 9) \_\_\_\_\_.

Her dream is to become a model to follow and she believes that she 10) \_\_\_\_\_ people to re-change their lives.



## XIII. SPEAKING

23 Discuss the questions in small groups. Then share your ideas.

### The Olympic Games in Ukraine?

- What are the advantages and disadvantages of being a host Olympic country/ city?
- Who chooses the place for the Games?
- What is necessary to provide and improve (tourist infrastructure, roads and airports, hotels, an Olympic village, stadiums, swimming pools, ski ways, etc)?
- What should be done to ensure safety for athletes and spectators?
- Does Ukraine have really great chances to get the Olympic host status for the Winter or Summer Games?
- What regions and cities in Ukraine do you think could host the Olympics?
- In what ways should the transportation system of Ukraine be improved in order to cater for participants and spectators, particularly those with special needs?
- How could Ukraine benefit from holding the Olympic Games?

## XIV. WRITING

24 Write an article about:

- some of the Ukrainian athletes who won gold medals in the Olympic Games;
- Ukraine's participation in the last Olympic Games;
- Ukraine's participation in the last Paralympics.



## XV. REVISION TRANSLATION

25 Translate into English.

1. Перші сучасні Олімпійські Ігри відбулися в Афінах у 1896 році. Жодна офіційна національна команда не брала участь у них, але аж 280 спортсменів, усі чоловіки, приїхали до Афін, більшість з них за власний рахунок. Хоча брали участь 14 країн, більшість атлетів були греками. Спортсмени змагалися у 43 видах програми, включаючи легку атлетику, велоспорт, плавання, гімнастику, важку атлетику, боротьбу, фехтування, стрільбу та теніс. Через історичну значущість марафону господарі Олімпіади хотіли перемогти в ньому більш, ніж у будь-якому іншому виді змагань. Тому 100 000 уболівальників були у захваті, коли грецький бігун прийшов першим.
2. Олімпійський рух використовує символіку для того, щоб представити ідеали, втілені в Олімпійській хартії. Найважливіше в Олімпійських Іграх не одержати перемогу, а брати участь, як і найголовніша річ у житті — не перемога, а боротьба. Олімпійський символ, відомий як олімпійські кільця, відображує єдність п'яти населених континентів. Іншими символами є девіз, олімпійський вогонь і олімпійський факел, прапор, гімн та клятва. Починаючи з 1968 року, в якості талісману Олімпіади обирають фігурку тварини або людини, які репрезентують культурну спадщину країни, що приймає Олімпіаду. Церемонія відкриття і закриття Ігор, парад прапорів, парад спортсменів також є вшанованими традиціями Олімпійських Ігор.

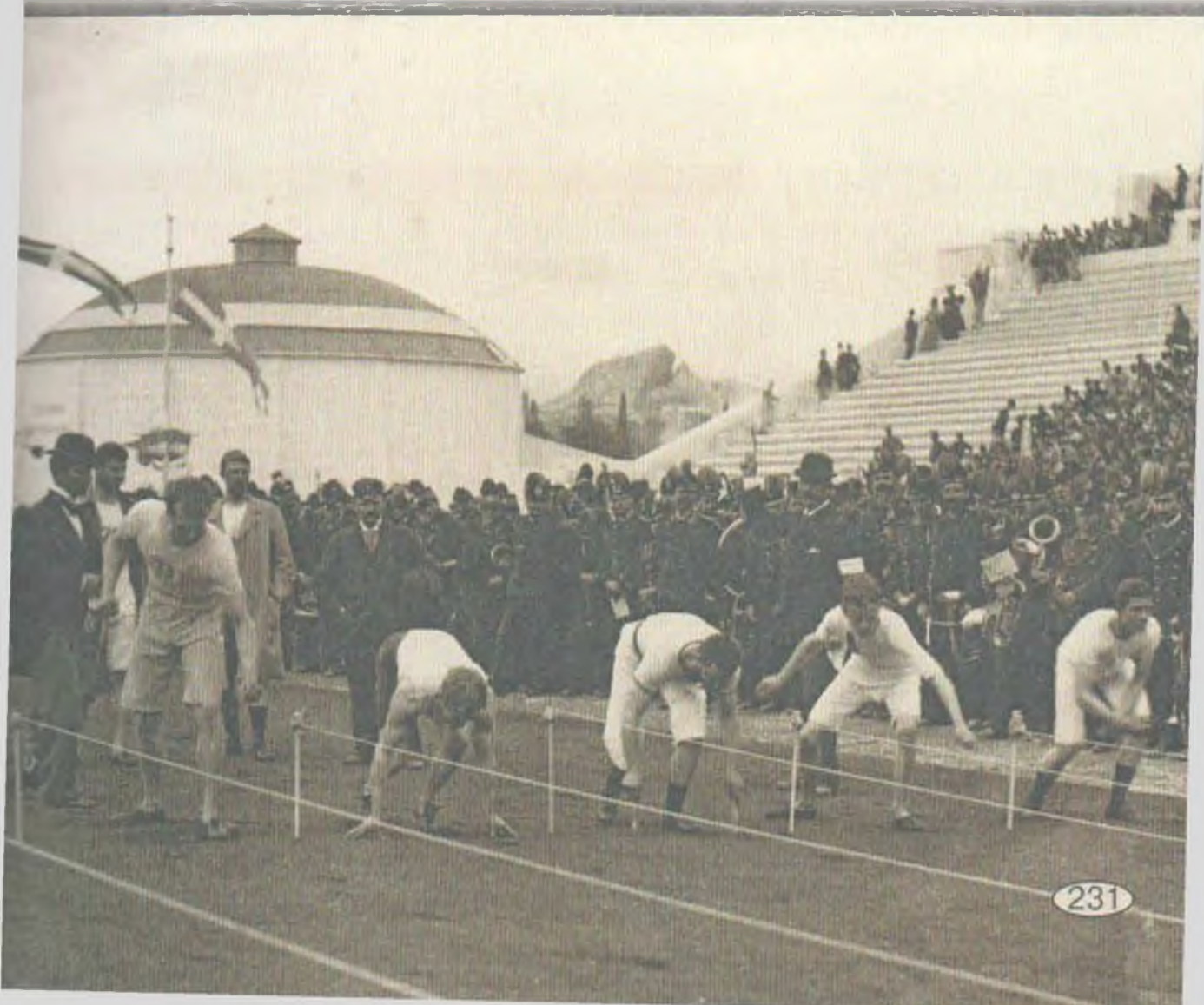
3. Під час VIII Олімпіади майбутня зірка фільму про Тарзана, Джонні Вайсмюллер (Johnny Weissmuller), виграв дві золоті медалі в басейні. Америка аплодувала йому. 80 років потому в Афінах інший американський плавець, який щойно потрапив до Олімпійської збірної, Майкл Фелпс отримав шість золотих медалей і став першою людиною у світі, яка привезла додому вісім нагород з однієї Олімпіади. У Пекині знову Фелпс заткнув усіх за пояс (stole the show), покращивши свій виступ у Афінах і отримавши вісім золотих медалей на Іграх. А в Лондоні 2012 Фелпс став самим титулованим медалістом в історії Олімпіад після того, як він виборов свою 22 олімпійську нагороду і своє четверте золото на цих Іграх.
4. У 1968 році Мехіко приймав Літні Олімпійські Ігри. Оскільки місце проведення Олімпіади було на високогір'ї (high-altitude), відбулося декілька знаменитих подій. Боб Бімон (Bob Beamon) вразив світ світовим рекордом у стрибках у довжину на 8,90 метрів, який ніхто не міг побити протягом 23 років. Дік Фосбері (Dick Fosbury) представив світу дивне сальто назад (back flip) у стрибках у висоту, і з того часу техніка стрибку Фосбері (the Fosbury Flop) стала розповсюдженою. Було введено ще одну інновацію. Починаючи з цих Ігор, тестування переможців на допінг стало обов'язковим. На жаль, війна проти допінгу ведеться з того часу не дуже успішно. Хоча певну кількість атлетів дискваліфікують щороку, з'являються нові заборонені речовини, і тести на допінг часто виявляються позитивними.



5. Визначення рівня популярності спорту — це цікаве і складне завдання. Один з важливих факторів, які треба враховувати, — це те, чи ми цікавимося кількістю вболівальників, чи кількістю людей, які дійсно регулярно займаються цим спортом. Але футбол є першим номером за обома критеріями. Це командний вид спорту, який є популярним майже в кожній країні світу. На аматорському рівні він потребує дуже мало обладнання та зусиль, щоб



опанувати основи гри. Футбол починається з таких простих дій, як забивати м'яча у ворота супротивника і заважати йому зробити те ж саме. Діти різного соціального походження (from all walks of life) починають грати у цю гру змалечку і стають її палкими прихильниками. Це також найвище оплачуваний командний вид спорту на професійному рівні.



# Unit 14

## ALL THE WORLD'S A STAGE

### I. LEAD-IN

1 Read the quotations and interpret them. Say whether you agree or not and why.

- The word theatre comes from Greek. It means the seeing place. It is the place people come to see the truth about life. The theatre is a spiritual and social X-ray of its time.

*Stella Adler*

- You need three things in the theatre — the play, the actors and the audience, and each must give something.

*Kenneth Haigh*

- The most effective moments in the theatre are those that appeal to basic and commonplace emotions — love of woman, love of home, love of country, love of right, anger, jealousy, revenge, ambition, lust, and treachery.

*Clayton Hamilton*

- Theatre is life. Cinema is art. Television is furniture.

*Author Unknown*

### II. VOCABULARY

2 Match different theatrical genres with their definitions.

1) musical	a) a play characterised by exaggerated emotions, stereotypical characters and interpersonal conflicts
2) farce	b) an amusing play that is based on the humour dealing with the unpleasant side of human life
3) operetta	c) an art form in which a story is told and emotion is conveyed primarily through singing (with instrumental music)
4) tragedy	d) a form of drama based on suffering that ends sadly, especially with the death of the main character
5) melodrama	e) a theatrical genre that provides amusement by making the behaviour and fashions of a particular group look foolish
6) comedy	f) a serious play with a happy ending
7) tragicomedy	g) a light humorous play full of extravagant and improbable situations, using deliberate absurdity or nonsense
8) opera	h) an art form that is intended to make people laugh
9) comedy of manners	i) a play with singing and dancing, in which the cast is usually actors who sing rather than classically-trained opera singers
10) black comedy	j) a light opera with spoken dialogue, songs and dances





## Unit 14. All the world's a stage

3

Look at the list of the world-famous theatre performances. Say what theatrical genres they belong to. Match the performances with the corresponding photos and reviews.

- "The Queen of Spades" by Pyotr Tchaikovsky.
- "Giselle" by Adolphe Adam.
- "The Merry Widow" by Franz Lehár.
- "Chicago" by John Kander and Fred Ebb.
- "King Lear" by William Shakespeare.



## Unit 14. All the world's a stage

- a) This masterpiece is a first-rate example of great literature that's further enlightened when set to great music. The role of Ghermann is taken by tenor Ben Heppner, and his singing and acting of the mad officer who is responsible for two deaths is one of the crowning achievements of his career. The soprano Maria Guleghina, as Lisa, is rightly acknowledged as the finest interpreter of this part. And the baritone Vladimir Stoyanov brought a warm, attractive voice but scant dramatic energy to the role of the earnest Prince Yeletsky.

*The New York Times*

- b) Spirited scenes of turn-of-the-century Parisian life, the sweeping whirl of the Viennese waltz, and beautiful and lyrical melodies have made this performance one of the most popular and enduring works of its kind. The passionate love duets, melodies and songs are beloved the world over. The plot line includes lovers' secret meetings, lavish parties, can-can dancers, and political intrigue, offering something to appeal to every member of the audience. Eastman Opera Theatre brings this masterpiece by the renowned Austro-Hungarian composer to stage for four performances beginning Thursday, April 3.

*The Guardian*

- c) It is a magnificent play. It's got everything: murder, love, greed, humour, maiming, madness, deceit, remorse and a good solid helping of death all round. This play tests the limits of how much human suffering can be encompassed in a work of literature. The eminent scholar A.C. Bradley called it "the most terrible picture that the author painted of the world." The production is gripping, inventive and assured. It negotiates the dark and complex themes elegantly and offers us fresh insights into the play.

*The Guardian*

- d) For anyone curious about classical dance, Sir Peter Wright's production offers the experience in its purest, most captivating form. It was first danced in 1841, but this tale of love, betrayal, revenge and forgiveness still has the power to hold an audience enthralled and send it home in tears.

*The Telegraph*

- e) It is now the longest running revival in West End theatre history. "Murder, greed, corruption, violence, exploitation, adultery and treachery — all those things we hold near and dear to our hearts." So begins the performance. It is the tale of Roxie Hart, a chorus girl who kills her lover as a career move; Billy Flynn, a sharp lawyer who turns Roxie into a celebrity; and Velma Kelly, a dancing jailbird with an ear for headlines and an eye for talent. The winner of six 1997 Tony Awards, including Best Musical Revival, is a wonderful reminder of what great theater can be.

*BBC Music*



## III. READING

## 4 Answer the questions.

1. Why do you think people go to the theatre?
2. What are the differences between a (live) performance (onstage) and a movie?
3. If you are a theatre-goer, what kind of live theatre do you enjoy? (comedies, farces, musicals, melodramas etc.) If you don't go to the theatre, say why.
4. What can you do to get more prepared to understand a play you are going to see before attending a theatre?

## The American Theater Goers Guide

## Why Go to the Theater?

Why go to the theater at all? What is so special about a theater performance? In a theatrical performance, there are live performers in the presence of a live audience, and the electricity generated between actors and spectators is the most exciting aspect of **attending a theater production**. In theater — unlike film or television — each performance is unique because each audience **brings different expectations and sensibilities** to the event. For example, think about a comedy onstage and a comedy in the movies. During the staged performances, the audience's response or lack of response will clearly affect **the way the actors and actresses shape their performances**. During the running of the film, the reaction of the audience in the movie house can obviously **have no impact on** the performers. A theater event exists in time and changes over time; a film exists on celluloid and does not change. Remember, then, that although a theater performance has many components — including playing space, scenery, costumes, lighting, sound, and text — its primary elements are always the performers and the audience.

When people think about why they go to the theater, there are usually three basic reasons: entertainment, community interaction, and personal growth. To begin with, for most audience members the desire to go to the theater is connected with their desire to be entertained and to escape from daily existence. **Slapstick comedies**, farces, musicals, and melodramas are examples of theatrical works meant primarily to entertain. Second, a theatrical performance is a communal experience: it brings people together for a period of time. (In fact, the origins of theater are closely related to religious ceremonies and rituals which are also communal experiences.)

Third, theater can **enrich** individual audience members intellectually, emotionally, and perhaps spiritually. It can help us to see and understand the complexities and **crosscurrents** of everyday life and can also **expand our horizons far beyond everyday life**. Indeed, some theater artists believe that the function of theater is to 'teach.'

## Preparing for Theater-going

Before you attend a theater performance, you can do some preparation that will help you **get the most out of it**. Reading about the play you are going to see can add to your enjoyment and understanding. If the play is a classic, you might find some useful information about it in a theater history book. In addition, there may be books or articles about the life and work of the playwright or about drama and theater in the period when the play was written. You may also want to read the play itself. All this can **provide background** for you as a theatergoer.

Another effective way to prepare for a theater event is to read a review of the production. A word of warning, however: do not be **unduly swayed** by the opinions expressed by the reviewer, since what you like may be completely different from what he or she prefers. Use the review only as a source of information, and go to the theater **with an open mind**.

## Buying Tickets

Buying tickets for a theater event can be done in many ways, depending on the type of theater you are attending. For example, if you want to see a **large-scale commercial production** on Broadway or in a major touring house, you can buy tickets through the box office, by telephone, or through an online ticket agency. The best seats at such a production can cost as much as

\$150 each, but **reduced-price tickets** are often available. In many cities, there are special booths selling tickets at half price, **student 'rush' tickets** are usually available on the day of the performance (sometimes just before the performance starts); and reduced-rate coupons may be offered (in New York these coupons are called twofers — originally, 'two for the price of one').

If you are going to a small theater or a noncommercial theater, you may find that tickets can be bought only at the box office, and sometimes, only on the day of the performance (this is true, for example, at some off-Broadway theaters in New York.) If seating is reserved, your ticket will tell you where you are seated. **'General admission' tickets**, on the other hand, do not **entitle** you to a specific seat, so you might want to arrive at the theater early to be sure of **getting a good location**. If you have a reservation, you should be sure to arrive on time, since many theaters will not seat **latecomers** until there is an appropriate break in the performance.

### Programs

As you enter the auditorium, you will probably receive a program from an usher who may also escort you to your seat. In the program, or playbill, you will find the title of the play, the author, the cast of characters, the actors and actresses, the designers, the director, and various other people involved in **mounting the production**. In addition, you will find information about the setting of the play (place and time), its division into acts or scenes, and the number of intermissions.

### Audience Etiquette

Western theater, particularly since the nineteenth century, has developed certain rules of behavior for audience members. At a traditional theater performance, the audience is expected to remain silent for the most part, and not to interrupt the performers. Audience members should not talk to each other, hum or sing along with music, unwrap candy or other food, search through a purse, or backpack. They should also turn off cell phones, iPods, or other electronic devices. Remember that

the actors can hear the audience noises and **distracting behavior** will have an impact on their concentration and performance. Noise and distractions also affect the experience of other spectators.

Of course, traditional audiences are not always absolutely quiet. Audiences at comedies can laugh, for instance. Audiences at musicals can applaud after a song (in fact, they're expected to). On the other hand, audiences at serious plays might not applaud until the end of the performance — and even then, an audience may **be so stunned** or so deeply moved that there will be a moment of silence before the applause begins.

### Intermissions

Intermissions serve a variety of functions. Many audience members stay in place and use the time just to stand and stretch. Others choose to leave the auditorium.

In most theaters smoking in the lobby is no longer allowed, so smokers must go outside. You'll need to keep your **ticket stub** if you leave the lobby area.

An intermission usually lasts about 15 min, and the lights in the lobby will be flashed on and off as a signal that the intermission is ending. You should return to your place when signalled to do so, because the theater may not seat you if you return late, after the performance **has resumed**.

### Keeping an Open Mind

One of the main purposes of theater is to **let you see the world from different perspectives** and experience differing viewpoints and lifestyles. Consequently, there may be times when what you see onstage will be something with which you disagree or even find offensive. In a situation like this, it is helpful to keep an open mind while you are watching the performance. It is not necessary for you to agree with or approve of what you are hearing or seeing, and you may find that after the show is over you reject everything that has been presented. However, while the performance is going on, you should try to **suspend judgment** and experience it as receptively and tolerantly as possible.

## Unit 14. All the world's a stage

5 In the text find the words and phrases in bold which are similar in meaning to the following:

- |                                                                                   |                                                                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1) unreasonably influenced;                                                       | 10) going to the theatre;                                                                     |
| 2) tickets at a lower price than usual;                                           | 11) not to form any opinions beforehand, to be unprejudiced (two expressions);                |
| 3) give a person the right to do smth;                                            | 12) responds, react differently;                                                              |
| 4) have no influence on smb;                                                      | 13) to be shocked or surprised very much;                                                     |
| 5) to improve or enhance the quality or value;                                    | 14) preparing the play for production;                                                        |
| 6) has started again after a pause;                                               | 15) performances in which actors behave in a silly way, by throwing things, falling over etc; |
| 7) conflicting tendencies;                                                        | 16) the part of the ticket kept as a record of payment.                                       |
| 8) to gain the greatest possible advantage from smth;                             |                                                                                               |
| 9) to give the information that helps to understand the situation or the subject; |                                                                                               |

6 Explain the highlighted phrases in your own words, then use them in sentences of your own.

7 Find the synonyms to the following words:

- |              |                         |           |
|--------------|-------------------------|-----------|
| • audience — | • theatre performance — | • break — |
| • interval — | • accompany —           |           |

8 Answer the questions.

1. Are you a theatre-goer? What makes you think so?
2. What are the differences between a comedy onstage and a comedy in the movies?
3. What are the basic elements of a theatre performance?
4. What did theatre originate from?
5. In what ways can theatre-going affect your life?
6. What is the difference between a student 'rush' ticket and a 'twofer'?
7. If you've bought a 'general admission' ticket, can you say where exactly your seat is?
8. If you've reserved your ticket, will your late arrival be acceptable?
9. If you don't know where your seats are, who can help you?
10. Where can you learn about the cast and the setting of the play?
11. What can distract your attention from the play?
12. If you leave the lobby during the intermission, what do you need to get back inside?
13. What is the signal which indicates that the intermission is over?
14. Why is keeping an open mind important when you go to the theatre?



## IV. VOCABULARY

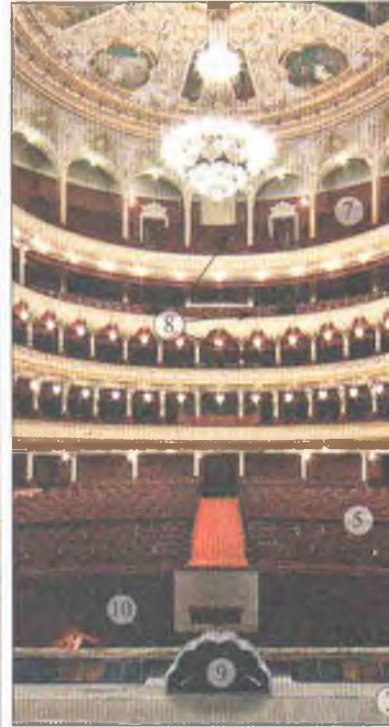
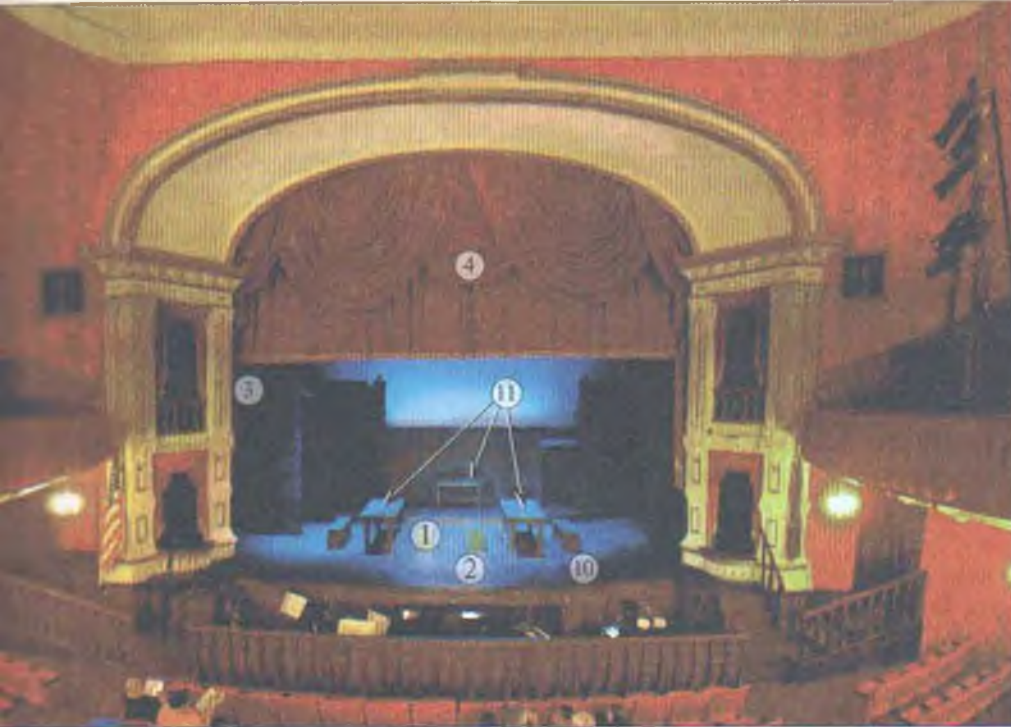
### PARTS OF A THEATRE HOUSE

- a backstage
- a balcony
- a box office
- a box
- a curtain

- a dress circle
- a lobby/ a foyer
- a pit
- a prompter's box
- props

- a proscenium arch
- a stage
- stalls
- an upper circle

9 A) Label the pictures:



9 B) Read the text and fill in the gaps with the words from the Vocabulary box.

There are as many types of theatres as there are types of performance. However, all theatre structures, regardless of type, contain certain basic elements.

The most important of these areas is the acting space generally known as the 1) \_\_\_\_\_. The audience directly faces the playing area which is separated by a portal called the 2) \_\_\_\_\_. It creates a 'window' around the scenery and performers and looks like a picture frame. It gives everyone in the audience a good view because the actors need only focus on one direction rather than continually move around the stage to give a good view from all sides. In addition to the acting space, there may be offstage spaces as well. These include wings on either side of a proscenium stage called a 3) \_\_\_\_\_ area, where 4) \_\_\_\_\_ such as pieces of furniture and scenery may be stored and actors usually await an entrance. When attending a performance you may notice a little box at the centre-front edge of the stage called the 5) \_\_\_\_\_. Next time you are at the opera house, look for it and remember that one of the most important people in the opera is offstage, cueing the singers and giving them directions.

One more significant thing which is always associated with a theatre is a 6) \_\_\_\_\_ located just behind the proscenium opening and used to hide or reveal the events taking place on stage.

In productions where live music is required, such as ballet, opera, and musicals, the orchestra is positioned in front of and below the stage in a 7) \_\_\_\_\_.

All theatres provide a space for their audience. The lower flat seating area, usually below or at the same level as the stage, is known as 8) \_\_\_\_\_. One or more raised seating platforms towards the rear of the auditorium are called 9) \_\_\_\_\_ or galleries. In larger theaters, multiple levels are stacked vertically above or behind the stalls. The first level is usually called the 10) \_\_\_\_\_ or grand circle. The highest platform, or the 11) \_\_\_\_\_ is sometimes known as *the gods*, especially in large opera houses, where the seats can be very high and a long distance from the stage. 12) \_\_\_\_\_ are typically placed immediately to the front, side and above the level of the stage. They are often separate rooms with an open viewing area where five or fewer people usually seat. These seats are considered the most prestigious of the house.

In addition, many theatres may provide areas specifically designated for the comfort of the audience. These include a 13) \_\_\_\_\_ where tickets and concessions may be sold at the 14) \_\_\_\_\_, restrooms, and other places where the audience may relax before, in between or after performances. These areas are known as the 'Front of House.'





# V. LISTENING

**10 A** You will hear six people sharing their theatre-going experience of attending the new musical "Love Never Dies — The Phantom of the Opera 2" by Andrew Lloyd Webber. While listening put the number of the speaker to mark the seats they occupied in the seating plan of the Adelphi Theatre.

**B** Listen to the speakers again and choose from what each of them says (A–G). There is one extra statement.

Speaker 1

A had a seat wide enough for two people.  
 B was close enough to see the expressions on the actors' faces and their costumes but some pieces of the set were hidden from view.

Speaker 2

C had a wonderful view though the edge of the stage was cut off, and was pleased to have a seat in the warmer area.

Speaker 3

D is an enthusiastic theatregoer who usually takes particular seats at relatively low prices.

Speaker 4

E had an excellent view to feel part of the action especially at the gripping moments.

Speaker 5

F had the best seat for its price though a little bit remote to see the faces.

Speaker 6

G didn't feel comfortable because he lacked leg-room.

## UPPER CIRCLE

O	1	2	3	4	5	6	7																			37	38	39	O					
M	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	M				
L	3	4	5	6	7																			30	31	32	33	34	35	36	L			
K	3	4	5	6	7																			29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	K		
J	2	3	4	5	6	7																			28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	J
H	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	H			
G	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	G			
F	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	F			
E	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	E			
D	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	D			
C	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	C			
B	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	B			
A	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	A			

## DRESS CIRCLE

O	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	O
N	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	N
M	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	M
L	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	L
K	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	K
J	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	J	
H	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	H
G	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	G
F	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	F
E	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	E
D	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	D
C	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	C	
B	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	B	
A	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	A	

## STALLS

X	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	X
W	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	W
V	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	V
U	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	U
T	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	T
S	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	S
R	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	R
Q	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	Q
P	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	P
O	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	O
N	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	N
M	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	M
L	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	L
K	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	K
J	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	J
H	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	H
G	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	G
F	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	F
E	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	E
D	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	D
C	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	C
B	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	B
A	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	A

## STAGE



## VI. VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

### THEATRE PROFESSIONS

- an actor/ actress
- a costume designer
- a director
- a lighting designer

- a makeup designer
- a producer
- a property/ props designer

- a scene designer
- a sound designer
- a stage manager
- a running crew

11 Read the text and choose the appropriate job title for each description.

### How Theatre Happens

The theatre is a collaborative effort of giving and doing. That means that a person cannot do theatre alone. Every member must be a part of a cohesive community. The better the community functions, the greater the potential to impact people's lives through experience. An understanding of people's roles is necessary to understand the interrelationships among community members to produce theatre and potentially create a meaningful and emotional experience for the audience. The theatre usually has a huge range of specialist skills required to bring a play to life. Each department works together over a period of months making sure the production is ready for the opening night.

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_ This person finds or offers the means to produce theatre. He or she is primarily concerned with money and as such seeks funds and usually finances anything that needs to be financed. He or she hires or assigns the director.
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_ This person supervises all creative elements of a theatre production. He or she offers a production a quality of unity by filtering all creative work through his or her own vision. He or she casts and rehearses the actors, approves all designs, and oversees the entire production.
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_ This person is creative in his or her own right. He or she must have a high sense of visual beauty and harmony and be able to translate these attributes into color, mass, form, line, and so on. He or she draws perspective drawings, and either makes a model of the set or a 3D computer design. Working drawings are highly detailed and in scale.
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_ This is a person who designs and supervises the choosing and making of props. Props are small objects such as books, weapons or dishes, used by actors during the performance.
- 5) \_\_\_\_\_ This person takes a copy of the floor-plan of the scene design and determines what kind of light will go where, at what angle, and what color to create a particular effect. Some lights serve to make the actors visible on stage. Other lights attempt to create an atmosphere or mood.
- 6) \_\_\_\_\_ The main concern of this professional is to illuminate a character's traits by what that character wears. Once designed, the drawings are handed over to the seamstress who supervises the making of the costumes.
- 7) \_\_\_\_\_ This person attempts to illuminate a character's traits by working on an actor's face, hair, hands, and any other visible body parts. Often, he or she tries to change the specific look of an actor.

## Unit 14. All the world's a stage

- 8) \_\_\_\_\_ This person's work can be an integral part of the whole concept of the production, as it helps create an atmosphere. Their task is to find or create the sounds and record them for production. They also search for music to be played at a particular time during the performance to enhance the mood and help draw the audience into a particular experience.
- 9) \_\_\_\_\_ Their main concern before the performance is to create a character. That takes physical and vocal discipline and exercise, an analysis of the play script, memorizing lines, and a commitment to the director, his or her vision, and to the rehearsal process.
- 10) \_\_\_\_\_ This person is in charge of the technical rehearsals, dress rehearsals, and performances. They supervise all aspects of the performance, including the actors. They set the stage and make everything ready before the performance begins. They call cues to the light and sound board operators during the performance, supervise set and prop changes during the performance, make sure that actors are ready, and solve any problems that might arise.
- 11) \_\_\_\_\_ These people are concerned with backstage activities. They help run props and shift the scenery if needed. They also help set the stage before the production begins, help light and sound board operators check and prepare their equipment, and help put things away after the performance ends.

**12** **Guessing Game.** One student thinks of a theatre profession. Other students try to guess it by asking Yes/No questions.

**13** If you were offered to work at the theatre, what theatre profession would you choose and why?



## VII. READING AND SPEAKING

14 Read the texts and for questions (1–20) choose from the theatres (A–E).

### Which of the theatres

has hosted different types of art events over the years?	1. _____
is involved in staging only modern popular productions?	2. _____ 3. _____
doesn't charge for a tour around its building?	4. _____
has never lacked celebrities to star in its performances?	5. _____ 6. _____
has a stage of a peculiar form and design?	7. _____
is above a place where one can have a meal?	8. _____
is a place where a monarch once fell in love?	9. _____
is housed in the newest building?	10. _____
has two different stages for various types of production?	11. _____
is considered to be influential in the theatrical world?	12. _____ 13. _____
makes its audience depend on the weather?	14. _____
boasts the most luxurious auditorium?	15. _____ 16. _____
hosts an exhibition on the premises?	17. _____
is closed to visitors if there is no performance?	18. _____ 19. _____
offers seats as well as standing tickets?	20. _____
received critical acclaim from famous writers?	21. _____

#### A. Royal Opera House

*Address:* Bow Street, Covent Garden, London

*Opening Times:* 10 am — 3.30 pm daily.

The main auditorium is open 1.5 hours before curtain-up.

This impressive building in the heart of Covent Garden has been playing host to major events of the classical music world since 1858. Today's Royal Opera House is the result of a reconstruction in the 1990s (although the main

auditorium is part of the original building). It is the place to go for high quality performances in luxurious surroundings. As one of London's most esteemed, iconic and beautiful performance venues, it's worth a visit even if you're not a ballet or opera fan. Before 1999 the theatre only opened its doors to ticket holders just before performances but today you can explore parts of the building for free during the day. For smaller scale productions such as chamber opera and

experimental dance shows there's the 400-seat Studio Theatre.

### B. Upstairs at the Gatehouse

*Address:* Hampstead Lane, Highgate Village

*Opening Times:* 11 am — 11 pm (downstairs).

The auditorium is open 30 minutes before performance starts.

This popular pub theatre in Highgate has, over the years, served as a music hall, cinema and a jazz and folk music club. Now *Upstairs at the Gatehouse*, housed in a 1895 auditorium, hosts theatrical and cabaret productions, presenting a mixture of off-beat and mainstream shows. The team behind the theatre is Ovation Theatres Limited whose directors, John and Katie Plews, have been in the business for over twenty years and are well known figures in theatrical circles. The pub that the theatre sits above, The Gatehouse, is one of the oldest in Highgate and there are claims that a licensed building has been on the site since 1337. Appropriately, the pub also has a long history of literary associations. Byron, Cruikshank and Dickens all used its services.

### C. Theatre Royal Drury Lane

*Address:* Catherine Street, Covent Garden, London

*Opening Times:* for the time of performances only.

London's oldest theatre is also its most spectacular, with an auditorium that is among the most impressive in the world. The first theatre on this site was built in 1662 in the orders of Charles II. It has been rebuilt a number of times since then, but the current auditorium incorporates many elements from as long ago as 1820. Its broad staircases, its chandeliered salon, its statues and panels speak of an older, more glamorous theatrical age. The performance history here is the history of popular theatre in Britain. From Nell Gwynne's debut, when Charles II fell in love with the 15-year-old actress, London's greatest stars have appeared beneath the Theatre Royal's gorgeously decorated arch and brought

audiences to their feet every night. After the war, the Theatre Royal has become part of the modern world of long-running musicals, with a series of hits including *Oklahoma*, *South Pacific*, *42nd Street* and *Miss Saigon*, which ran for 4,236 performances.

### D. Shakespeare's Globe Theatre

*Address:* 21 New Globe Walk, Bankside, London

*Opening Times:* Theatre: 21 April — 14 October

Exhibition: All year round, 9 am — 5 pm.

This replica of the Shakespeare's 16th century theatre was reconstructed just 200 yards from its original site. Built in wood and thatch, using techniques from 400 years ago, Shakespeare's Globe Theatre opened in 1996. Although it is not an exact replica, it is close, and plays are performed in the open air, rain or shine. The thrust stage, protruding into the audience at different unusual angles, and the fact that cheap standing tickets are available for every performance, create a close-distance relationship between actor and audience that makes it unlike any other London Theatre. If you are standing, remember to dress appropriately (there's no shelter from the elements, and on hot days most performances are accompanied by somebody fainting). Visitors can also tour the theatre and spend time at the adjacent Shakespeare's Globe Exhibition.

### E. Old Vic Theatre

*Address:* 103 The Cut, South Bank, London

*Opening Times:* for the time of performances only.

With the exception of The Globe, the *Old Vic* has had a greater influence on the history of drama than any theatre standing today. The *Vic* has played host to generation after generation of stars since it opened its doors in 1818. Charles Dickens and Bernard Shaw reviewed plays here, Laurence Olivier said it had "The most powerful actor/ audience relationship in the world," and it was the first theatre to perform the complete works of William Shakespeare as a series. To watch a play at the Old Vic is to become a part of theatrical history, and it is no wonder that the theatre has little trouble attracting the biggest stars of stage and film.

## Unit 14. All the world's a stage

The performances advertised below are on in the theatres described above. Which of the performances would you choose to see? Why? Think in terms of your interest in the venue itself, the genre and the content of the play, time convenience and price affordability.

**Venue:** Royal Opera House

**Event:** La Bohème

**Times:** Tuesday 19<sup>th</sup> at 7.30 pm, Saturday 23<sup>rd</sup> at 7 pm

**Pricing:** £9—£195

John Copley directs Puccini's legendary tale of love and anguish. Starring Carmen Giannattasio as Mimì and Joseph Calleja as Rodolfo. Conducted by Senyon Bychkov. Sung in Italian with English subtitles.

**Venue:** Upstairs At The Gatehouse

**Event:** The Bear/ The Telephone/ Hand Of Bridge

**Times:** Friday 29<sup>th</sup> 7.30 pm

**Pricing:** £14

A performance of three pieces. Walton's *The Bear* features the story of a strange encounter between a widow and her late husband's creditor. Menotti's *The Telephone* follows one man's battle with his wife's obsession with this invention. Barber's *Hand Of Bridge* tells the tale of four troubled card players.

**Venue:** Theatre Royal Drury Lane

**Event:** Shrek The Musical

**Times:** Various times during the day, every day except Mondays

**Pricing:** £20—£65

*Shrek The Musical* brings the much loved characters from the Oscar-winning animation film to life and features all new songs as well as cult Shrek anthem *I'm a Believer*. Join Shrek, our unlikely hero, and his loyal steed Donkey as they set off on a quest to rescue the beautiful (if slightly temperamental) Princess Fiona from her tower guarded by

a fire breathing love-sick dragon. On the stage of the historic Theatre, the world of fairytales is turned upside down in an all-singing, all-dancing, irresistible mix of adventure, laughter and romance.

**Venue:** Shakespeare's Globe Theatre

**Event:** Richard III

**Times:** Tuesday—Saturday 7.30 pm, Matinées Wednesday and Saturday 2 pm, Sunday 3 pm

**Pricing:** £15—£32, Yard (standing) £5

Acclaimed actor Mark Rylance returns to the celebrated role of Richard III — the determined Duke of Gloucester — who battles ruthlessly to reach his place on the throne. Heartlessly betraying anyone that comes between himself and the crown, Richard III is truly Shakespeare's most wicked bad guy. This production will adhere to the Original Practices — meaning it will be performed by an entirely male cast — as it would have been in Shakespearean times. Clothing, music, choreography and settings are explored as if it were being performed in 1593.

**Venue:** Old Vic Theatre

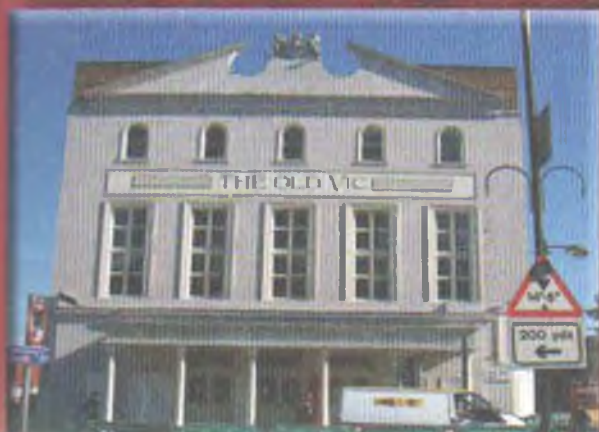
**Event:** The Duchess Of Malfi

**Times:** Monday — Saturday 7.30, Matinées Wednesday and Saturday 2.30 pm

**Pricing:** £10—£49.50

Eve Best stars as the widowed Duchess who marries her lover against the wishes of her brothers, in John Webster's tragic masterpiece. Directed by Jamie Lloyd, this great Jacobean tragedy tells the dark and bloody story of the recently widowed Duchess as she struggles to retain strength and dignity in the face of death.





## VIII. READING AND VOCABULARY

### 16 A) Work in pairs.

Student A: Read extracts 1, 3, 5 and fill in the table below marking the elements of the performance each author mentions.

Student B: Read extracts 2, 4, 6 and fill in the table below marking the elements of the performance each author mentions.

	1	2	3	4	5	6
Interpretation/ version						
Performance of the prima						
Performance of the soloist						
Performance of other dancers						
Orchestra performance						
Scenery						
Costumes						

Tchaikovsky's first ballet, *Swan Lake* is considered by many to be one of the greatest classical ballets of all time. Its romance and beauty has allowed the classic ballet to mesmerize audiences for more than 100 years. But its first production in Moscow wasn't well-received. Although several versions exist, most ballet companies stage the ballet according to the choreography of Marius Petipa and Lev Ivanov for their St. Petersburg performance of 1895. *Swan Lake* is traditionally presented in four acts. The first American production was performed by the San Francisco Ballet. Here are some extracts of the reviews by modern theatrical critics.

### REVIEW 1

This was a wonderful show, **thoroughly enjoyable**. The performance was excellent and **well deserving of the standing ovation**. Highly recommended.

This *Swan Lake* **remains a showcase** for the Mariinsky's **superb dancing**: jumps high, neat and immaculately shaped, arms **heartbreakingly expressive**. The chorus of Swans, especially in their moments of collective, luminous stillness, **remains the definition of a living work of art**.

The only negative was that we could clearly hear the thud of the dancers as they landed and the tapping of point shoes on the stage, and **this took away from the graceful effect** somewhat. This must be an issue with the stage construction.

### REVIEW 2

When does a **living treasure turn into a museum piece**? It's a question at the heart of the ballet, and especially at the heart of the Mariinsky's *Swan Lake*. I've always loved this staging, with its fairytale designs and uncluttered stage. But now, in 2011, it seems strangely **drained of life**. The story-telling looks a bit mechanical, and **some of the dancers seem to be performing in an emotional vacuum**.

Or perhaps it's the spell cast over the stage by first cast ballerina, Uliana Lopatkina. Lopatkina is, beyond argument, both singular and sublime. Her exaggeratedly pliant limbs and grandly performed adagio are **unmatched by any dancer on the planet**. To many, her interpretation of Odette, a princess locked inside an enchanted tower, remains definitive.



Certainly there are moments where Lopatkina's performance gives off the electric shock of genius, her eyes dark flashes of fear, her dancing a slow, exquisite resistance against the Prince's promise of freedom.

But there are some moments, too, when she retreats so far inside that tower of hers that the effect becomes impassive. Even dancing the black swan Odile, where she is all imperious challenge and sharp satire, Lopatkina **lacks musical spontaneity, and remains strangely unresponsive to the dancers around her.** Her partner, Daniil Korsuntsev, has lost his vitality. For the first time in my life I was pleased to see the Jester, normally a hyperactive pain, but here danced with a nice vivacity by Alexei Nedviga.

### REVIEW 3

The Bolshoi has survived the Russian revolution, plus tsars, commissars, glasnost and the economic and political chaos that accompanied freedom. Through it all **it has remained a cultural icon,** the greatest classical dance troupe on the world's stages.

For many, *Swan Lake* **is the very definition of classical ballet.** This work has a rather venerable history of its own. In our own day we have had an all-male version out of Great Britain and a Swedish gender-bender in which everybody wears tutus and everybody is bald.

The one the Bolshoi brought to Berkeley this week is a more traditional reading of the tale of the doomed love of a prince and an enchanted swan/maiden. Created by former Bolshoi artistic director Yuri Grigorovich in 1969, it became some instant food for thought. Controversial at the time was Grigorovich's attempt to add a psychological dimension to the proceedings. But, in this performance it **was less about psychology and more about dancing.** And what dancing! From the Prince's first entrance **in a series of heart-stopping** leaps to the final fluttering of the swans, the Bolshoi fully lived up to its name, which translates from Russian as 'Big.'

The corps, some 100 strong, **didn't make a false step.** The soloists **did exquisite work,** especially the five pretty princesses fighting for the Prince's affections. The Four Little Swans **brought the house down with their precision and form.** Another nice Grigorovich touch was mixing up the white swans with the black in the final scene.

And now to the main event. Her name is Odette when she is wearing a white tutu and Odile in black. Danced exquisitely by Nadezhda Gracheva, she was ethereal and mournful in the first incarnation and all confidence and mastery in the second, everything you would expect a Bolshoi prima ballerina to be and perhaps a little more.

### REVIEW 4

This was an adaptation of the famous Russian ballet specifically designed by the English Youth Ballet **to accommodate hordes of talented schoolchildren** from around the region in the classic story.

At times there were more than 70 youngsters on stage at the same time and it was a tribute to their skill, discipline, and sheer memory that they were no collisions or trips.

The ensemble performance from young dancers aged from eight to 18 was incredibly impressive given they have been in rehearsal for only a few weeks.

More than 100 students locally were chosen from almost 300 hopefuls, including 33 from the Black Country and Staffordshire.

The scale of the production was immense and the costumes were fabulous, providing, in turn, a kaleidoscope of colour and a sea of white tulle.

Special mention should go to the choreography — spectacular in its pageantry — and giving everyone plenty of stage time while tolerating no between-scene hold-ups.

The principal dancers Julianne Rice-Oxley as white swan Odette, Oliver Speers as Prince Sergei and Emma Lister as the black swan, Princess Odile, were effortlessly elegant.

## REVIEW 5

*Swan Lake* at *The Everyman* provided Cheltenham's theatre-goers with an evening of magical entertainment that proved an overwhelmingly popular performance of plentiful plies and perfect pirouettes. The stage was almost as packed as the auditorium when the Moscow City Ballet company pirouetted into *The Everyman* Theatre in January — for a breathtaking performance of one of the world's best loved ballets, *Swan Lake*.

Set to Tchaikovsky's timeless score the audience, well-versed in *Swan Lake*'s unforgettable music, would have been humming along with the ballet's memorable melodies had it not been for the stylish grace and athletic dexterity exemplified by Moscow City Ballet's dancers — which left most open-mouthed.

Re-telling the romantic tale of Prince Siegfried's undying love for the Swan Queen, Odette, the petite female principle Anastasia Gubanova was perfect, and the male principle Talgat Kazhabayev commanded the stage with royal authority, leaving the audience suitably enthralled.

Other dancers of note included the Hungarian, Spanish, Neapolitan and Polish Brides who all showed sparkle during their moments in the spotlights, whilst the Jester added doses of humour to the plot. The four little swans performing perhaps the most well-known part of the ballet lacked a little personality in their dance, but performed with uniformed discipline.

Performing within the conventional boundaries of choreography, under the direction of Victor Smirnov-Golovanov, the Moscow City Ballet stuck to their well-received traditional Russian approach to the classic — a timeless touch which made us imagine we could have been watching the same scenes unfold in a Russian palace several centuries ago, and the live orchestra added to this authenticity.

## REVIEW 6

*Swan Lake* has often been called the world's most famous ballet. Perhaps it would be more accurate to say it's the ballet world's most famous title. *Swan Lake* has been refashioned, deconstructed and generally fooled around with to the extent it bears little resemblance to the original, which reputedly was nothing to write home about.

So what is *the Swan Lake* Moscow's legendary Bolshoi Ballet opened at the Sony Centre on Tuesday evening, after an inexcusably long, 33-year absence?

Perhaps, for some, it will seem more or less traditional. But this Grigorovich's version of *Swan Lake* is less about a swan and a lake than about a man struggling with his own psyche in a no-contest battle with Fate. Add to this Grigorovich's apparent aversion to clear dance narrative and you have a dramatically flawed *Swan Lake* that balances between the appearance of tradition and a modernist trend for semi-abstraction that's echoed in designer Simon Virsaladze's sets.

The Bolshoi, for all its headline-making internal conflicts, remains a world-class company and even if the switches between the 'real' world of Prince Siegfried's palace life and the ice blue-lit scenes of his imagination become confusing, the dancing is more than enough to make this a ballet to admire.

Under normal circumstances the dual role of Odette/Odile commands the ballet. But Grigorovich's feathery beauty has little to work with. The prince is given so much more to do that it ends up being the prince's ballet.

**16 B)** Student A. Read reviews 2, 4, 6 and divide the highlighted phrases into those that render positive and negative evaluation. Explain the meaning of the phrases to your partner. Listen to his/ her explanations.

Student B. Read reviews 1, 3, 5 and divide the highlighted phrases into those that render positive and negative evaluation. Explain the meaning of the phrases to your partner. Listen to his/ her explanations.

17 Each art has terms of its own. Match the following ballet terms with their Ukrainian equivalents.

1. tutu	a. балетна труппа
2. prima ballerina	b. партитура
3. corps	c. пуанти
4. score	d. солістка, яка виконує головну партію
5. rehearsal	e. соліст, який виконує головну партію
6. troupe	f. пачка
7. point shoe	g. кордебалет
8. male principal	h. репетиція

18 Translate into English.

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. Танцівники кордебалету не зробили жодного хибного кроку і виконували всі танці з унікальною точністю.</p> <p>2. Вистава заслужувала на овацію стоячи.</p> <p>3. «Живий» оркестр додавав виставі автентичності.</p> <p>4. Солісти виконували філігранну роботу.</p> <p>5. Версія цього балетмейстера поєднала традиційний підхід і модерністську тенденцію до напівабстракції.</p> | <p>6. Майстерність танцівників одеського міського балету залишила глядацьку аудиторію з відкритими ротами.</p> <p>7. Балет переробляли так багато разів, що сучасна вистава мало нагадує оригінал.</p> <p>8. Балетні танцівники, на жаль, ніяк не проявили власну особистість, і вистава перетворилася з живого скарбу на музейний експонат.</p> <p>9. Класичний балет передбачає пачки і пуанти як у солістки, так і у всієї труппи.</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|



## IX. READING

19 Read the text and decide if the statements are true (T) or false (F).

1. The experts are not unanimous as to the origin of the theatre.
2. The first known theatres were built by ancient Romans.
3. The first theatres built on the level land appeared in Medieval Europe.
4. During the Middle Ages religious plays were staged only in churches.
5. The theatre of the time of Shakespeare looked mostly like modern theatre buildings.
6. No plot in Shakespeare's plays is original.
7. Puritans condemned and banned theatre activities.
8. In *comedia dell' arte* the characters were usually the same.
9. The German dramatists of the 19<sup>th</sup> century belonged mostly to the realistic trend.
10. Nowadays one can see plays of different genres by dramatists of various theatrical movements.



### Origins of Theatre

It is not surprising that many theories about the origin of the theatre have been advanced but, unfortunately, none can be fully verified since much of this process occurred before the dawn of recorded history. Still most historians believe that theatre developed from myth and ritual.

The first theatres we know about were built by ancient Greeks. Their theatres were not much like ours. They were all outdoors. The seats were on a sloping hillside. The stage was a circle of grass. At first the Greek theatres were used not for plays but for songs and dances in honour of the Greek gods. The songs were sung by a chorus and they told different stories of the gods. Gradually members of the chorus began to act out some episodes. This was the beginning of real plays. Later Greek writers, such as Aeschylus and Aristophanes, wrote some of the best plays that have ever been written.

Even after real plays appeared, the Greek theatres remained outdoors. There were no curtains. There were no **footlights**. There was almost no **scenery** except a **background**. But there were a few stage machines. One was for making thunder. Another was for lifting up actors who were playing the parts of gods. The actors in ancient Greek plays always wore masks.

The Romans borrowed the ideas for their theatre from the Greeks, but they built big theatres on level land. Each row of seats was raised above the row in front so that everyone could see. Roman writers wrote a lot of plays. However, the Romans came to like chariot races

and fights between men and wild animals better than plays. Plays were given up. For centuries there were almost no plays and actors in Europe. Although, all this while there were plays and actors in China and India.

During the Middle Ages the people of Europe became interested in acting again. Plays somewhat like present days pageants (acting out religious and historical events) were given in churches. Many of these performances told stories from the Bible. Not until the late Middle Ages were performances of religious plays given outside of churches. But once the transition was made, productions became extremely elaborate, often extending for many days and drawing on the resources of the entire community. As in Greece and Rome, the theatre became once more a cooperative effort of church, state, and citizens.

Many of the modern ideas of plays and of acting developed in Italy, France, and England. The development of a public professional theatre in Italy was connected with *comedia dell'arte* (comedy of professional players). The two fundamental characteristics of *comedia dell'arte* were **improvisation** and **stock characters**. The actors worked from the **plot** outline, on the basis of which they improvised dialogue and action, and each performer always played the same character with its fixed **attributes** and costume.

Along with regular theatres small movable theatres became popular. There were show boats

on rivers and caravan shows on land. In some of the **movable theatres** the actors were puppets.

In the middle of the 16<sup>th</sup> century in England several dramatists appeared who bridged the gap between the learned and popular audiences. Their successful blending of classical and medieval devices with compelling stories drawn from many sources established foundations upon which Shakespeare and his contemporaries built. Not until the time of Shakespeare did plays and theatres come to be anything like ours. Even in Shakespeare's time no women ever acted in plays. Women's parts were played by boys.

Shakespeare is credited with thirty-eight plays most of which were based on borrowed stories (history, mythology, fiction, plays etc) but the playwright reworked them until they became distinctly his own. Apparent diversity is given unity: a number of plots are interwoven, the action ranges freely in time and space, and the enormous range of characters appear as living individuals rather than mere stage figures. Shakespeare was by far the most comprehensive, sensitive, and dramatically effective playwright of his day and, maybe, of all times.

The theatrical history in the 17<sup>th</sup> and 18<sup>th</sup> centuries was stormy. Puritans sought to stamp out all theatrical activity, in the period of Restoration the theatres were legalized again but plays had to **pass the scrutiny of a censor**.

Consequently, playgoers were offered more plays from the past than from recent years, and new plays constituted the smallest portion of the **repertory**.

The 19<sup>th</sup> century brought radical political and social changes. In theatre history first romanticism with its idealistic views and yearnings for a natural man dominated, especially in plays by German dramatists, and then realism began to replace the romantic vision. The main slogans of realism were: art must depict truthfully the real world, truth can be attained only through direct observation, only contemporary life can be directly observed, the observer should be impersonal and objective.

The 20<sup>th</sup> century with its huge social changes, wars and revolutions, and the beginning of the 21<sup>st</sup> century brought about quite a lot of theatrical experiments resulting in stunning diversity of theatrical genres and forms. Artistic movements came and went away with bewildering rapidity. All the technological means of the space age were adapted for theatrical purposes, barriers between arts were broken down, and **multimedia** events of all sorts began to flourish.

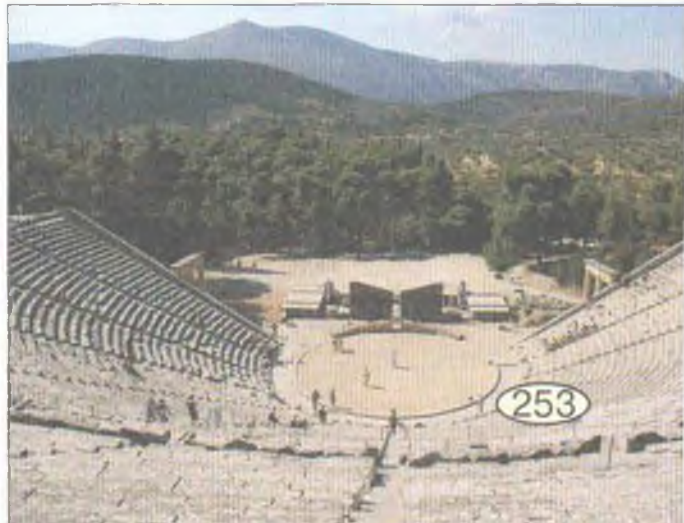
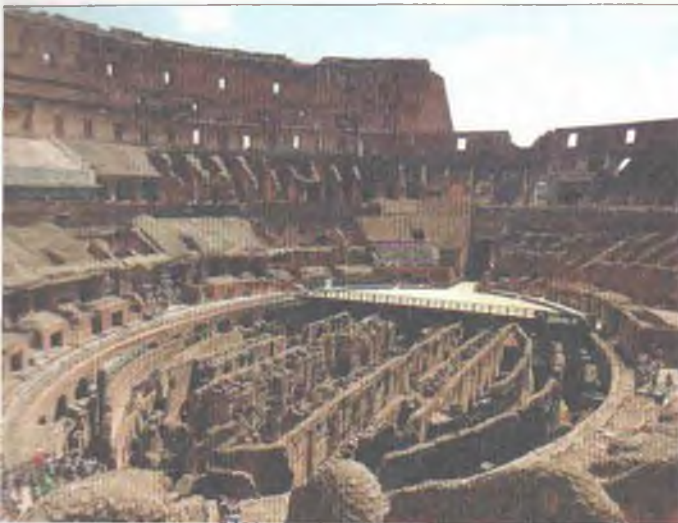
But in spite of all experiments, of the developments in cinema, video, TV, there are **ardent theatre-goers**. There are great plays, great directors and great actors who make spectators feel a real magic of the theatre.

20 Explain the highlighted words and phrases from the text in your own words.

21 Give a brief outline of the history of the theatre dwelling upon the following points:

- Period of time
- Features of the theatre design
- Predominant kind of plays

- Attitude to theatre productions
- Any specifics you want to underline



## X. LISTENING

22 Listen to the tour guide who is talking about the Globe theatre and complete the sentences.

At the Globe theatre the performances were usually done during the afternoon since there was no  
1) \_\_\_\_\_.

The area 2) \_\_\_\_\_ where a rope and pulley were set up and actors were lifted into the air was called 'flies.'

The most important part of the performance was 3) \_\_\_\_\_.

4) \_\_\_\_\_ was used to symbolize the death on the stage.

5) \_\_\_\_\_ were raised to let people know what kind of play was to be performed that day.

The cheapest ticket cost 6) \_\_\_\_\_.

During the performance the spectators could walk around, eat roasted hazelnuts and drink  
7) \_\_\_\_\_ and cider.

The audience booed at 8) \_\_\_\_\_ and cheered for the good ones.

In Shakespeare's time there were no 9) \_\_\_\_\_ actors because acting was not considered as an honourable job for women.

The costumes of the noble characters were made of 10) \_\_\_\_\_ or lace whereas the lower class representatives wore the clothing made of 11) \_\_\_\_\_ and linen.



## XI. SPEAKING

- 23** Student A is sharing his/her impressions about the performance of the touring company in their city/town with Student B and they are planning another visit to the theatre. Make up a dialogue following the instructions.

### STUDENT A

1. You want to share an exciting piece of news with Student B. You were lucky to get a ticket for the performance of the touring company in your city/ town.
2. Respond with enthusiasm.
3. Give your impressions about the plot, acting, scenic effects, music. Praise the work of one of the theatre professionals you admired most.
4. Give the answer: Mention the only one thing you were disappointed with — the person next to you was breaking the rules of behaviour during the performance. Describe what he/she was doing wrong. Ask Student B if he/she often goes to the theatre.
5. Suggest going to the theatre together and discuss what performance you could see.
6. Thank Student B and discuss the seats you can afford.

### STUDENT B

1. Express your interest and ask questions to find out more information about what company it was and where the event took place.
2. Ask what Student A liked most about the play.
3. Ask what seat Student A had and if he/she was pleased with it and why.
4. Say how often you attend theatre productions and speak about your preferences (kinds of theatres, genres, actors, etc).
5. Agree and choose the event and the date. Suggest buying tickets.
6. Suggest going somewhere before or after the performance.

## XII. WRITING

- 24** Write a letter to your friend. Tell him what theatrical event you are going to attend at the weekend. Compare the favourable review you read about it and your group-mates' poor impressions of the performance. What are your expectations after such contradictory comments? Promise to write about your impressions next week.

## XII. REVISION TRANSLATION

### 25 Translate into English.

1. Немає нічого кращого за живу театральну виставу, яка збагачує вас інтелектуально, емоційно і духовно. В театрі — на відміну від кіно або телебачення — кожна вистава унікальна, тому що глядачі кожного разу привносять різні очікування і відчуття, різний рівень сприйнятливості. Одним із головних завдань театру є надати можливість побачити світ з різних сторін і дізнатися про різноманітні точки зору і способи життя. Але деякі люди ходять до театру тільки заради розваги або щоб уникнути буденності. Якою б не була причина, театр все ще залишається можливістю розширити горизонти поза межі повсякденного життя.
2. Театр — це результат співпраці багатьох театральних робітників, метою яких є справити на глядачів найсильніше і найбільш значуще враження. Так, продюсер відповідає за збір коштів для здійснення театральної постановки; режисер відповідає за всі творчі елементи спектаклю; художник-декоратор і реkwизитор займаються розробкою ескізів та макетів декорацій, а також підбором і виготовленням усього реkwизиту, необхідного для вистави. Художники по світлу знають, як найкраще використовувати освітлення, щоб створити певну атмосферу або настрій. Художник по костюмах відповідає за дизайн костюмів і аксесуарів для того, щоб підкреслити риси характеру персонажів. Хоча театральна постановка складається з багатьох компонентів, таких як простір сцени, декорації, костюми, освітлення, звук і текст, її основними складовими є актори та публіка. Актори вдихають життя в персонажів на сцені, аналізуючи сценарій, запам'ятовуючи роль і демонструючи відданість режисеру і його баченню п'єси.
3. Королівська Опера — це одна з найбільш шанованих, культових та чарівних театральних сцен Лондона, та її варто відвідати, навіть якщо ви не є шанувальником балету або опери. Фасад, фойє і глядацька зала існують ще з 1858 року, але усі інші елементи будівлі сучасного театру зазнали суттєвої реконструкції в 1990-ті роки. Королівська Опера вміщує більше 2000 глядачів та має 4 яруси лож, балконів та галерею. Авансцена завширшки 12,20 метрів та заввишки 14,80 метрів. Глядацька зала дуже висока і має традиційну форму підкови, так що є багато різних місць, з яких добре видно сцену. Найкраще видно сцену з середини партеру і бельєтажу. Трохи гірше видно сцену з бокових місць у партері і балкону першого ярусу. Ціна на квитки може варіюватися від 4 до 200 фунтів. Загальне правило: чим краще місце, тим вище ціна. Місця у партері, бельєтажі та ложах найбільш дорогі, але часто наявні квитки по знижених цінах.
4. Непідвласна часу постановка найулюбленішого балету Чайковського *Лускунчик* у виконанні Королівської балетної трупи була чудовою і заслуговувала на овацію стоячи. Двоє талановитих солістів продемонстрували вишуканість у виконанні ряду стрибків, від яких завмирало серце, і підтримок, від яких захоплювало подих. Танцюристи були надзвичайно елегантними і вишукано граціозними і дуже вразили публіку. Ця вистава подарувала глядачам вечір чарівної насолоди.